Model AL-P2 Machine Code: M132

Field Service Manual

Safety Notices

Important Safety Notices

Prevention of Physical Injury

- 1. Before disassembling or assembling parts of the main machine and peripherals, make sure that the power cord of the main machine is unplugged.
- 2. The wall outlet should be near the machine and easily accessible.
- 3. Note that some components of the machine and the paper tray unit are supplied with electrical voltage even if the main power switch is turned off.
- 4. If any adjustment or operation check has to be made with exterior covers off or open while the main switch is turned on, keep hands away from electrified or mechanically driven components.
- 5. If the Start key is pressed before the machine completes the warm-up period (the Start key starts blinking red and green alternatively), keep hands away from the mechanical and the electrical components as the machine starts making prints as soon as the warm-up period is completed.
- 6. The inside and the metal parts of the fusing unit become extremely hot while the machine is operating. Be careful to avoid touching those components with your bare hands.

⚠ WARNING

 To prevent a fire or explosion, keep the machine away from flammable liquids, gases, and aerosols.

Health Safety Conditions

- Toner and developer are non-toxic, but if you get either of them in your eyes by accident, it may cause temporary eye discomfort. Immediately wash eyes with plenty of water. If unsuccessful, get medical attention.
- This machine, which uses a high voltage power source, can generate ozone gas. High ozone density is harmful to human health. Therefore, the machine must be installed in a well-ventilated room.

Observance of Electrical Safety Standards

- 1. This machine and its peripherals must be serviced by a customer service representative who has completed the training course on those models.
- The NVRAM on the system control board has a lithium battery which can explode if replaced incorrectly. Replace the NVRAM only with an identical one. The manufacturer recommends

replacing the entire NVRAM. Do not recharge or burn this battery. Used NVRAM must be handled in accordance with local regulations.

Handling Toner

- Work carefully when removing paper jams or replacing toner bottles or cartridges to avoid spilling toner on clothing or the hands.
- If toner is inhaled, immediately gargle with large amounts of cold water and move to a well ventilated location. If there are signs of irritation or other problems, seek medical attention.
- If toner gets on the skin, wash immediately with soap and cold running water.
- If toner gets into the eyes, flush the eyes with cold running water or eye wash. If there are signs of irritation or other problems, seek medical attention.
- If toner is swallowed, drink a large amount of cold water to dilute the ingested toner. If there are signs of any problem, seek medical attention.
- If toner spills on clothing, wash the affected area immediately with soap and cold water. Never use hot water! Hot water can cause toner to set and permanently stain fabric.
- Always store toner and developer supplies such as toner and developer packages, cartridges, and bottles (including used toner and empty bottles and cartridges) out of the reach of children.
- Always store fresh toner supplies or empty bottles or cartridges in a cool, dry location that is not
 exposed to direct sunlight.

WARNING

Do not use a vacuum cleaner to remove spilled toner (including used toner). Vacuumed toner may
cause a fire or explosion due to sparks or electrical contact inside the cleaner. However, it is
possible to use a cleaner designed to be dust explosion-proof. If toner is spilled over the floor,
sweep up spilled toner slowly and clean up any remaining toner with a wet cloth.

Safety and Ecological Notes for Disposal

- Do not incinerate toner bottles or used toner. Toner dust may ignite suddenly when exposed to an open flame.
- 2. Dispose of used toner, the maintenance unit which includes developer or the organic photoconductor in accordance with local regulations. (These are non-toxic supplies.)
- 3. Dispose of replaced parts in accordance with local regulations.
- 4. When keeping used lithium batteries in order to dispose of them later, do not put more than 100 batteries per sealed box. Storing larger numbers or not sealing them apart may lead to chemical reactions and heat build-up.

Laser Safety

The Center for Devices and Radiological Health (CDRH) prohibits the repair of laser-based optical units in the field. The optical housing unit can only be repaired in a factory or at a location with the requisite equipment. The laser subsystem is replaceable in the field by a qualified Customer Engineer. The laser chassis is not repairable in the field. Customer engineers are therefore directed to return all chassis and laser subsystems to the factory or service depot when replacement of the optical subsystem is required.

∴ WARNING

Use of controls, or adjustment, or performance of procedures other than those specified in this
manual may result in hazardous radiation exposure.

WARNING

• Turn off the main switch before attempting any of the procedures in the Laser Optics Housing Unit section. Laser beams can seriously damage your eyes.

CAUTION MARKING:

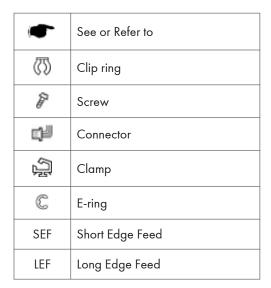


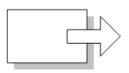
3d-laser_decal

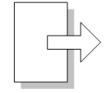
Conventions in this Manual

Symbols and Abbreviations

This manual uses several symbols and abbreviations. The meaning of those symbols and abbreviations are as follows:







Short Edge Feed (SEF)

Long Edge Feed (LEF)

Cautions, Notes, etc.

The following headings provide special information:

MARNING

 FAILURE TO OBEY WARNING INFORMATION COULD RESULT IN SERIOUS INJURY OR DEATH.

ACAUTION

• Obey these guidelines to ensure safe operation and prevent minor injuries.

Note

• This information provides tips and advice about how to best service the machine.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Safety Notices	1
Important Safety Notices	1
Safety and Ecological Notes for Disposal	2
Laser Safety	3
Conventions in this Manual	4
Symbols and Abbreviations	4
Cautions, Notes, etc	4
1. Product Information	
Specifications	13
Machine Configuration	14
Printer	14
Guidance for Those Who are Familiar with Predecessor Products	16
Overview	17
Component Layout	17
Paper Path	18
Drive Layout	19
2. Installation	
Installation Requirements	
Environment	21
Machine Level	22
Minimum Space Requirements	22
Power Requirements	23
Main Machine Installation	24
Installation Overview	24
Power Socket for Peripheral	25
Installation Flow Chart	26
Moving the Machine	26
Transporting the Machine	26
1200-sheet LCT Installation (D631)	28
Component Check	28
Installation Procedure	28
Side Fence Position Change	31
Bridge Unit Installation (D634)	33

Installation Procedure	
1000-sheet Finisher (D588)	39
Accessory Check	39
Installation Procedure	40
3000-sheet Finisher (D636)	43
Accessory Check	43
Installation Procedure	44
Punch Unit Installation (D570)	49
Component Check	49
Installation Procedure	50
Output Jogger Unit Installation (B703)	55
Accessory Check List	55
Installation Procedure	55
Tray Heater	58
Installation Procedure	58
Tray Heater (Optional Paper Feed Unit)	60
Component Check	60
Installation Procedure	60
External USB Keyboard Installation	68
Installation Procedure	68
Controller Options	70
Overview	70
Application Merge	73
3. Preventive Maintenance	
PM Tables	77
4. Replacement and Adjustment	
General Cautions	79
Laser Unit	
Used Toner	
Special Tools and Lubricants	
Special Tools	
ubricants	80

Exterior Covers	81
Front Door, Upper and Lower Inner Cover	81
Left Cover	82
Rear Cover	82
Right Rear Cover	83
Top Right and Top Rear Cover	84
Operation Panel	84
Paper Exit Cover	86
Output Tray	87
Laser Unit	89
Caution Decal Locations	89
Laser Unit	90
Polygon Mirror Motor	91
Laser Synchronization Detector	91
LD Unit	92
PCDU	95
PCDU (Photoconductor and Development Unit)	95
Drum	96
Pick-off Pawls	98
Charge Roller and Cleaning Roller	99
Drum Cleaning Blade	100
ID Sensor	100
Development	102
Development Filter	102
Development Roller	102
Developer	105
TD Sensor	107
Transfer	109
Transfer Belt Unit	109
Transfer Belt	109
Toner Overflow Sensor	112
Transfer Belt Cleaning Blade	112
Paner Feed	113

Paper Feed Unit	113
Pick-Up, Feed and Separation Rollers	114
Tray Lift Motor	115
Relay, Tray Lift, Paper End and Paper Feed Sensors	115
Registration Sensor	116
Fusing	119
Fusing Unit	119
Web Roller Unit	119
Brake Pad	120
Web Holder Roller and Web Rollers	121
Pressure Roller Cleaning Roller	124
Thermostats	125
Thermistor	126
Hot Roller Strippers	126
Fusing Lamps	127
Hot Roller and Pressure Roller	129
Paper Exit	131
Paper Exit Unit	131
Fusing Exit, Paper Overflow, and Paper Exit Sensors	131
Junction Jam Sensor	132
Paper Exit Motor	132
Duplex	134
Duplex Unit	134
Right Door Cover	137
Duplex Door Sensor	137
Duplex Entrance Sensor	138
Duplex Exit Sensor	139
Duplex/By-pass Motor	141
Duplex Inverter Motor	142
By-pass	144
By-pass Paper Size Sensor/By-pass Paper Length Sensor	
By-pass Paper End Sensor	146
By-pass Pick-up, Feed and Separation Roller, Torque Limiter	147

By-pass Feed Clutch	148
Drive Area	149
Paper Feed Clutch	149
Development Paddle Motor	149
Transfer/Development Motor	150
Drum Motor	151
Fusing Motor	151
Web Motor	152
Paper Feed Motor	153
Transfer Belt Contact Motor	153
Registration Motor	154
Toner Supply Motor	154
Electrical Components	156
Controller Unit	156
Controller Board	156
After Installing the Controller Board	159
Mother Board	159
BCU	162
Bridge Board	164
IOB	164
PSU	165
High Voltage Power Supply	165
Fusing Exhaust Fan	166
Controller Fan	166
SD USB Board	167
LCDC Board	168
Print Adjustments	170
Overview	170
Printing	170
Touch Screen Calibration	174
5. Service Tables	
Service Program Mode	
Service Program Mode Operation	

Service Program Mode Tables	177
Service Program Mode Tables	179
SP Tables	179
Service Main SP Tables	180
SP1-xxx	180
Engine Main SP Tables-1	189
SP1-xxx: Feed	189
Engine Main SP Tables-2	198
SP2-xxx: Drum	198
Engine Main SP Tables-3	203
SP3-xxx: Process	203
Engine Main SP Tables-4	204
Engine Main SP Tables-5	205
SP5-xxx: Mode	205
Engine Main SP Tables-6	252
SP6-xxx: Peripherals	252
Engine Main SP Tables-7	259
SP7-xxx: Data Log	259
Engine Main SP Tables-8	273
SP8-XXX: Data Log2	273
Engine Main SP Tables-9	296
Input Check Table	296
Output Check Table	305
3000-Sheet Finisher (D636)	311
Updating the Firmware	313
Before You Begin	313
Updating Firmware	313
Handling Firmware Update Errors	316
Uploading/Downloading NVRAM Data	318
Uploading NVRAM Data (SP5-824)	318
Downloading NVRAM Data (SP5-825)	319
Self-Diagnostic Mode	321
Self-Diagnostic Mode at Power On	321

Self-Diagnostic Test Flow	322	
Detailed Self-Diagnostic Mode	323	
Using the Debug Log		
Overview	324	
Switching On And Setting Up Save Debug Log	324	
SMC List Card Save Function	330	
Overview	330	
Procedure	330	
File Names of the Saved SMC Lists	332	
Error Messages	333	
6. Troubleshooting		
Service Call Conditions		
Summary	335	
SC Code Descriptions	336	
Electrical Component Defects	397	
Sensors	397	
Switches	400	
Blown Fuse Conditions	401	
Fuses	402	
7. Energy Saving		
Energy Save		
Energy Saver Modes	403	
Energy Save Effectiveness	404	
Paper Save	406	
Effectiveness of Duplex/Combine Function	406	

1. Product Information

Specifications

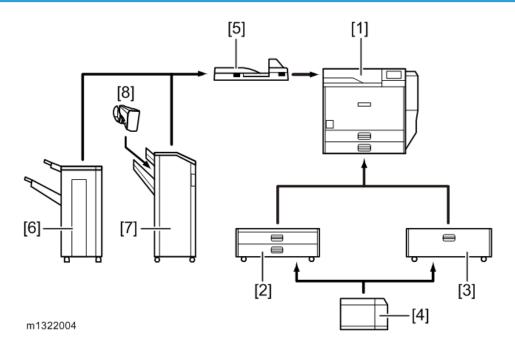
See "Appendices" for the following information:

- General Specifications
- Optional Equipment

٦

Machine Configuration

Printer



Key: Symbol: U: Unique option, C: Option also used with other products

	ltem	Callout	Key	Machine Code
Main Frame	M132	[1]	-	M132

7

ltem		Callout	Key	Machine Code
	Two-Tray Paper Feed Unit	[2]	С	D580
	2000-sheet LCT	[3]	С	D581
	1200-sheet LCT	[4]	С	D631
	Bridge Unit	[5]	С	D634
	1000-sheet Finisher (See Note 1)	[6]	С	D588
External	3000-Sheet Finisher (See Note 1)	[7]	С	D636
Options	-Punch Unit (See Note 2)	-	С	D570-00 (2/3-hole) (NA)
	-Punch Unit (See Note 2)	-	С	D570-01 (2/4-hole) (EU)
	-Punch Unit (See Note 2)	-	С	D570-02 (4-hole) (Scandinavia)
	-Output Jogger Unit (See Note 2)	[8]	С	B703
	HDD	-	U	M416
	Memory Unit 512 MB	-	С	D594
	IPDS Unit	-	С	M416
	Netware	-	С	M416
Internal	VM Card	-	С	D640
Options	Font SD Card	-	С	D641 (EU)
	Gigabit Ethernet	-	С	G874 (EU) M394 (NA)
	IEEE 802.11a/g, g	-	С	M344
	IEEE 1284	-	С	B679

NOTE:

- 1. The finisher requires the bridge unit and two-tray paper feed unit or 2000-sheet LCT. The 1000-sheet finisher and 3000-sheet finisher cannot be installed together.
- 2. The punch unit and output jogger unit requires the 3000-sheet finisher.

Guidance for Those Who are Familiar with Predecessor Products

The M132 series are successor models to the G179 series. If you have experience with the predecessor products, the following information will be of help when you read this manual.

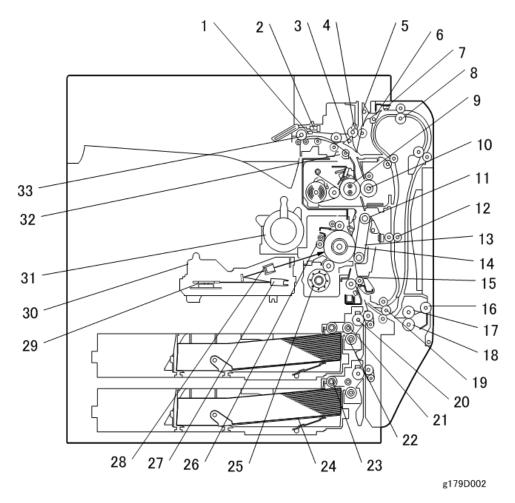
Different Points from Predecessor Products

	M132	G179
Controller Type	GW+ Controller	GW Controller
Operation Panel	4.3" touch panel includes USB/SD slot	4-line LCD
USB2.0/SD Slot	Standard	Not supported
Light Detect Function	Available	Not supported
SMC data	SD card down load or printing	Printing only
Safety Shut Down Function	Available	Not Available
PDF Direct	Standard	Not supported
Data Overwrite Security	Standard	Option
HDD Encryption	Standard	Option

٦

Overview

Component Layout

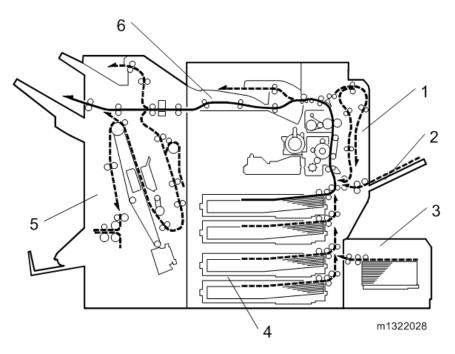


1	Paper Exit Sensor	17	By-pass Feed Roller
2	Paper Overflow Sensor	18	By-pass Separation Roller
3	Junction Gate 1	19	Duplex/by-pass transport roller
4	Junction Jam Sensor	20	Upper Relay Belt
5	Duplex Inverter Gate	21	Feed Roller
6	Junction Gate 2	22	Separation Roller

Ш

7	Duplex Entrance Sensor	23	Pick-up Roller
8	Duplex Inverter Roller	24	Bottom Plate
9	Hot Roller	25	Development Unit
10	Pressure Roller	26	Charge Roller
11	Transfer Belt Cleaning Blade	27	Fθ Mirror
12	Duplex Transport Roller	28	Barrel Toroidal Lens (BTL)
13	Transfer Belt	29	Polygonal Mirror Motor
14	OPC Drum	30	Laser Unit
15	Registration Roller	31	Toner Bottle Holder
16	By-pass Pick-up Roller	32	Fusing Exit Sensor
		33	Exit Roller

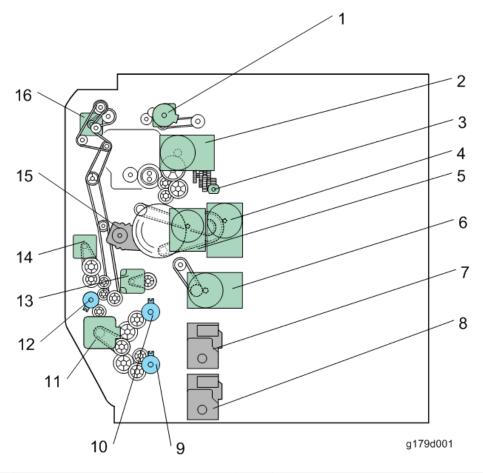
Paper Path



1 Duplex Unit

2	By-pass Tray
3	Large Capacity Tray (LCT: 1200-sheet)
4	Paper Tray Unit
5	Two-Tray Finisher
6	Bridge Unit

Drive Layout



1	Paper Exit Motor	9	Paper Feed Clutch 2
2	Fusing Motor	10	Paper Feed Clutch 1
3	Web Motor	11	Feed Motor

Ш

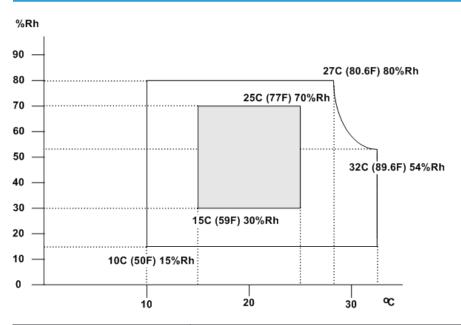
4	Transfer/Development Motor	12	By-pass Paper Feed Clutch
5	Drum Motor	13	Registration Motor
6	Development Paddle Motor	14	Duplex/By-pass Motor
7	Tray Lift Motor 1	15	Transfer Belt Contact Motor
8	Tray Lift Motor 2	16	Duplex Inverter Motor

2. Installation

Installation Requirements

- Install the machine in a safe place for keeping security.
- Make sure that the operation instructions are kept at a customer's hand.

Environment



Temperature Range:	10°C to 32°C (50°F to 90°F)
Humidity Range:	15% to 80% RH
Ambient Illumination:	Less than 1,500 lux (do not expose to direct sunlight.)
Ventilation:	Room air should turn at least 30 m3/hr/person
Ambient Dust:	Less than 0.10 mg/m3 (2.7 x 10/6 oz/yd3)

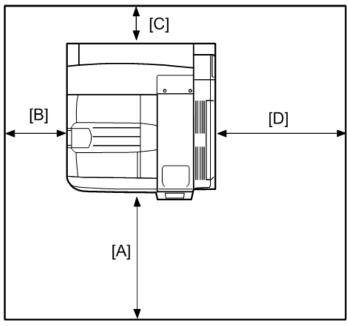
- 1. Avoid areas exposed to sudden temperature changes:
 - 1) Areas directly exposed to cool air from an air conditioner.
 - 2) Areas directly exposed to heat from a heater.
- 2. Do not place the machine where it will be exposed to corrosive gases.
- 3. Do not install the machine at any location over 2,000 m (6,500 ft.) above sea level.
- 4. Place the main machine on a strong and level base. Inclination on any side should be no more than 5 mm (0.2").
- 5. Do not place the machine where it may be subjected to strong vibrations.

Machine Level

Front to back:	Within 5 mm (0.2") of level
Right to left:	Within 5 mm (0.2") of level

Minimum Space Requirements

Place the main machine near the power source, providing clearance as shown:



m1322005

• Front [A]: Over 75 cm (29.6")

• Left [B]: 10 cm (4")

• Rear [C]: 10 cm (4")

• Right [D]: 55 cm (21.7")



• The 75 cm (29.6") recommended for the space at the front is for pulling out the paper tray only. If the operator stands at the front of the main machine, more space is required.

Power Requirements

ACAUTION

- Make sure that the wall outlet is near the main machine and easily accessible. Make sure the plug
 is firmly inserted in the outlet.
- · Avoid multi-wiring.
- Be sure to ground the machine.
- 1. Input voltage level:

North America 120 V to 127 V, 60 Hz: More than 12 A Europe/Asia 220 V to 240V, 50 Hz/60 Hz: More than 7 A

2. Permissible voltage fluctuation:

	For printing images	For operating
North America	+8.66 / -10 %	+8.66 / -15 %
Others	+/-10 %	+/-15 %

3. Never set anything on the power cord.

2

Main Machine Installation

Installation Overview

The installation procedures of the following items are in the Operating Instructions:

Main Machine and Hardware Options

- Printer M132 (main machine) Installation
- Paper Feed Unit: D580
- LCIT PB3140: D581

Controller Options

- HDD: M416
- Data Storage Card: D594
- IEEE1284 Interface Board: B679
- IEEE802.11a/g Interface Unit: M344
- Gigabit Ethernet: G874 (EU only), M394 (NA only)
- VM Card: D640
- IPDS Unit: M416
- SD Card for Netware Printing: M416
- SD Card for fonts: D641 (EU only)



 The bridge unit (D634) and either the 2,000-sheet LCT (D581) or the paper tray (D580) must be installed before the finisher SR3120 (D636) or SR3090 (D588) is installed.

The installation procedures of the following options are in this service manual:

Hardware Options

- LCIT RT3020: D631
- Bridge Unit: D634 (for Finisher SR3120 and SR3090)
- Finisher SR3120: D636
 - Punch Unit: D570 (for Finisher SR3120)
 - Jogger Unit: B703 (for Finisher SR3120)
- Finisher SR3090: D588

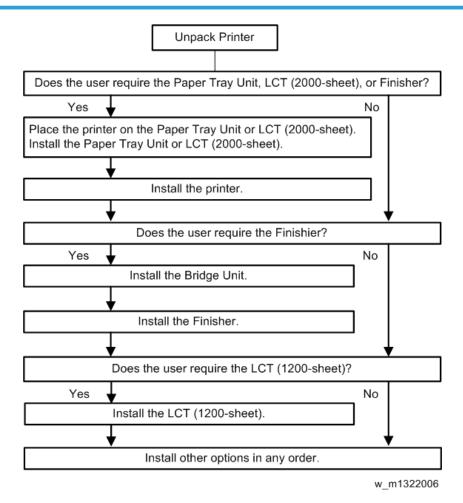
Power Socket for Peripheral



• Rating voltage for peripheral: Make sure to plug the cable into the correct socket.



Installation Flow Chart



Moving the Machine

This section shows you how to manually move the machine from one floor to another floor. See the section "Transporting the Machine" if you have to pack the machine and move it a longer distance.

1. Remove all trays from the optional paper feed unit or LCT.

Transporting the Machine

- 1. Make sure there is no paper left in the paper trays. Then fix down the bottom plates with a sheet of paper and tape.
- 2. Do one of the following:

- Attach shipping tape to the covers and doors.
- Shrink-wrap the machine tightly.

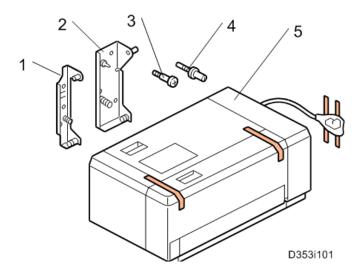
2

1200-sheet LCT Installation (D631)

Component Check

Check the quantity and condition of the components against the following list.

No.	Description	Q'ty
1	Front Bracket	1
2	Rear Bracket	1
3	Stud Screw	4
4	Joint Pin	2
5	LCT	1



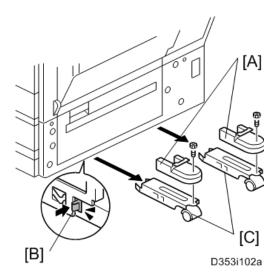
Installation Procedure

ACAUTION

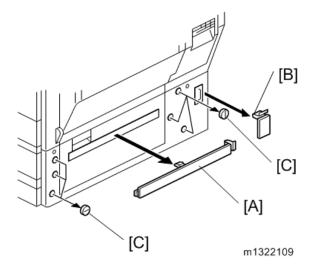
• Unplug the main machine power cord before starting the following procedure.



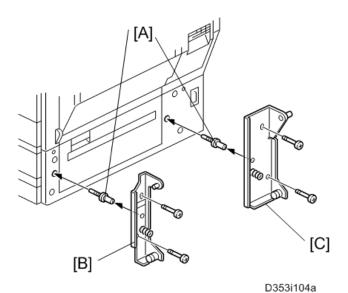
• The Paper Tray Unit (D580) or LCT 2000-sheet (D581) must be installed before installing this 1200-sheet LCT.



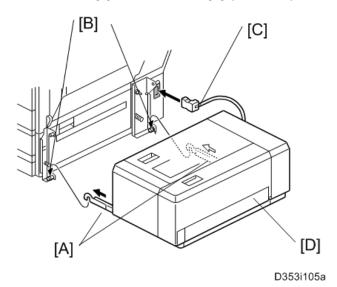
- 1. Unpack the LCT and remove the tapes.
- 2. Remove the stand covers [A].
- 3. Release the locks [B] of the front and rear caster stands.
- 4. Remove the caster stands [C].



5. Remove the paper path cover [A], connector cover [B] and six hole covers [C].



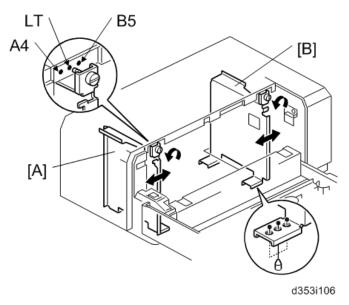
- 6. Insert the joint pins [A].
- 7. Attach the front [B] and rear brackets [C]. (\slashed{P} x2 each)



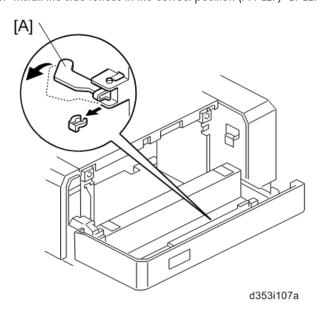
- 8. Pull out the front and rear rails [A], and then hang them on each bracket [B].
- 9. Connect the LCT cable [C] to the main machine.
- 10. Slide the LCT [D] into the main machine.
- 11. Make sure that the front and rear sides of the LCT are closely attached to the main machine.

Side Fence Position Change

- 1. Open the right door of the LCT.
- 2. Push the down switch to lower the tray bottom plate until it reaches its lowest position.



- 3. Remove the front and rear side fences [A, B] (x 1 each).
- 4. Install the side fences in the correct position (A4 LEF/LT LEF/B5 LEF).



5. Pull the end fence [A] for B5 size paper as shown ((() x 1) if the side fences are adjusted for B5 size paper.

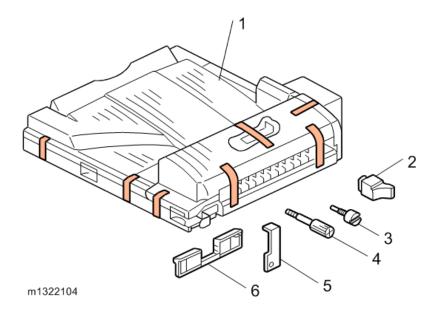
- 6. Close the right door.
- 7. Turn on the main power switch, and then go into the SP mode.
- 8. Input the correct paper size for the 1200-sheet LCT with SP5181-017.

Bridge Unit Installation (D634)

Component Check

Check the quantity and condition of the components against the following list.

No.	Description	Q'ty
1	Bridge Unit	1
2	Frame Cover	1
3	Knob Screw	1
4	Long Knob Screw	1
5	Holder Bracket Cover	1
6	Guide	2



Installation Procedure

ACAUTION

• Unplug the power cord of the main machine before starting the following procedure.



- If you will install the finisher unit (D588, D636) on the machine, install it after installing the bridge unit (D634).
- 1. Remove all tapes.

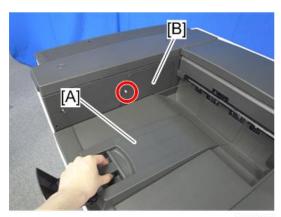


m1322040

2. If the sensor feeler [A] is out, fold it into the machine.

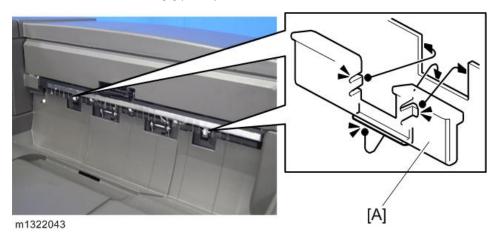


3. Remove the operation panel cover [A] ($\slash\hspace{-0.6em}P \times 1$).

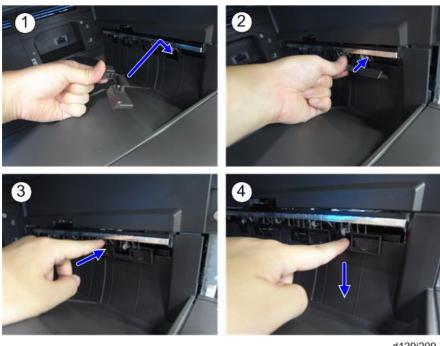


m1322042

- 4. Remove the inner tray [A].
- 5. Remove the connector cover [B] ($\ensuremath{\widehat{\mathcal{F}}}$ x 1).



6. Attach the two guides [A] to the cutouts in the paper exit.



- d129i209
- 1) Place the lower hook of the guide in the cutout of the paper exit.
- 2) Attach the guide as shown until the two side hooks hold the paper exit.
- 3) Press the guide.
- 4) Press down the guide as shown.



m1322044

7. Install the bridge unit [A] in the machine.



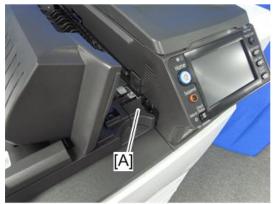
m1322045

8. Secure the bridge unit with the long knob screw [A].



m1322046

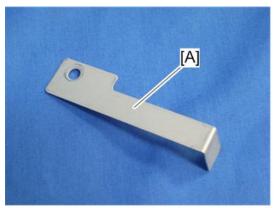
- 9. Open the bridge unit cover [A].
- 10. Secure the bridge unit with knob screw [B].



m1322047

11. Attach the frame cover [A].

- 12. Close the bridge unit cover.
- 13. Reinstall the machine.
- 14. Install the optional finisher (refer to the finisher installation procedure).



m1322048



• The holder bracket [A] is used in the installation procedure of the finisher (D588, D636). Do not install it at this time.



m1322049

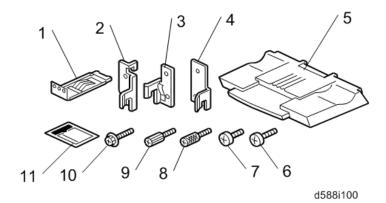
- 15. Pull out the extension tray [A] only if the 1000-sheet finisher (D588) will be installed on the main machine.
- 16. Turn on the main power switch of the machine.
- 17. Check the bridge unit operation.

1000-sheet Finisher (D588)

Accessory Check

Check the quantity and condition of the accessories against the following list.

No.	Description	Q'ty	For this model
1	Grounding Plate	1	Yes
2	Rear Joint Bracket	1	Not used
3	Front Joint Bracket	1	Yes
4	Rear Joint Bracket	1	Yes
5	Сору Тгау	1	Yes
6	Screw - M3 x 8	1	Yes
7	Screw - M4 x 13	4	Yes
8	Knob Screw - M3 x 8	1	Yes
9	Knob Screw - M4 x 10	1	Yes
10	Screw - M4 x 25	3	Not used
11	Staple Position Decal	1	Not used

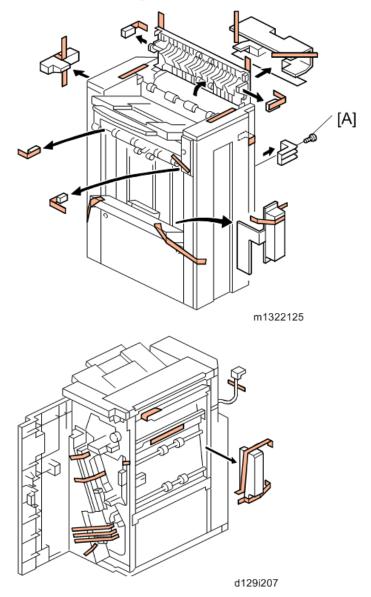


Installation Procedure

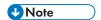
ACAUTION

• Unplug the main machine power cord before starting the following procedure.

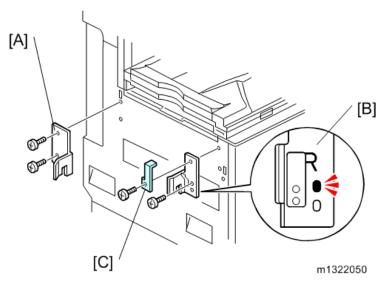
If this finisher is installed, the Bridge Unit (D634) and Paper Feed Unit (D580) or LCT (D581) must be installed before installing this finisher.



1. Unpack the finisher and remove the tapes.



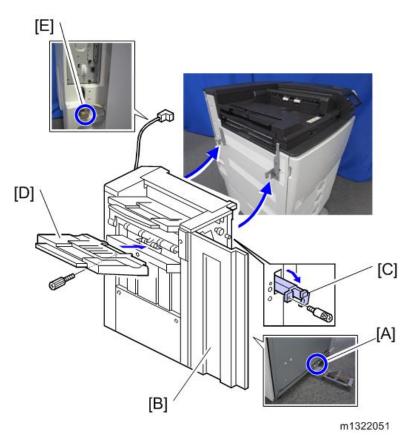
• Be sure to keep screw [A]. It will be needed to secure the grounding plate in step 3.



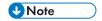
2. Install the rear joint bracket [A] (\mathscr{F} x 2; M4 x 13) and front joint bracket [B] (\mathscr{F} x 2; M4 x 13).



• Holder bracket [C] must be placed outside the front joint bracket [B]. This bracket is provided with the Bridge Unit (D634).



3. Install the grounding plate [A] on the finisher (\mathscr{F} x 2; M3 x 8)



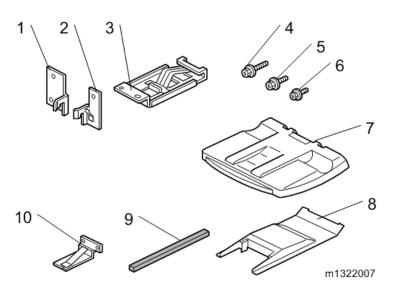
- Use the screw removed in step 1 and the screw from the accessory box.
- 4. Open the front door [B]. Then pull the locking lever [C].
- 5. Align the finisher on the joint brackets, and lock it in place by pushing the locking lever.
- 6. Secure the locking lever (F x 1; knob M3 x 8) and close the front door.
- 7. Install the copy tray [D] (\mathscr{F} x 1; knob M4 x 10).
- 8. Connect the finisher cable [E] to the main machine as shown above.
- 9. Turn on the main power switch and check the finisher operation.

3000-sheet Finisher (D636)

Accessory Check

Check the quantity and condition of the accessories against the following list.

No.	Description	Q'ty
1	Rear joint bracket	1
2	Front joint bracket	1
3	Ground (earth) plate	1
4	Tapping screws - M4 x14	4
5	Tapping screws - M3 x 8	1
6	Tapping screws - M3 x 6	6
7	Upper output tray	1
8	Support Tray	1
9	Cushion (with double-sided tape)	1
10	Small Ground (earth) plate	2



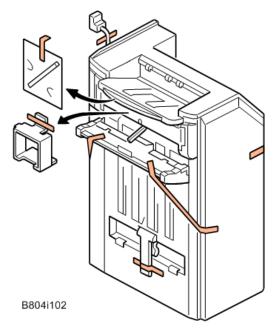
Installation Procedure

ACAUTION

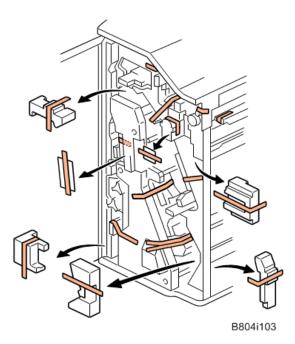
• Unplug the main machine power cord before starting the following procedure.

If this finisher is installed on this machine, the following options must be installed before installing this finisher.

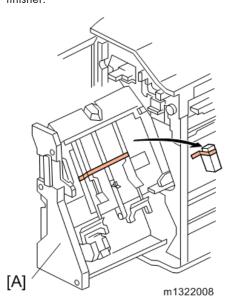
- Bridge Unit (D634)
- Paper Feed Unit (D580) or LCIT (D581)



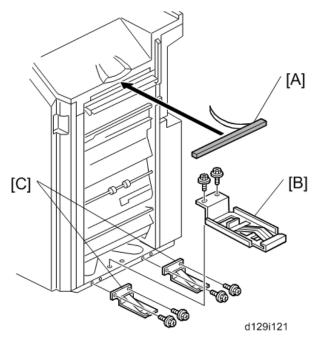
1. Unpack the finisher and remove all tapes and packing materials from the finisher.



2. Open the front door, and then remove all tapes and packing materials from the inside of the finisher.



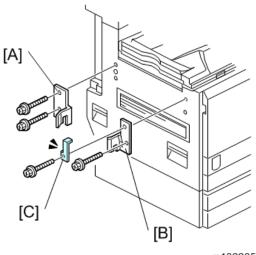
3. Pull out the jogger unit [A], and then remove all tapes and retainers.



4. Attach the cushion [A] to the finisher.



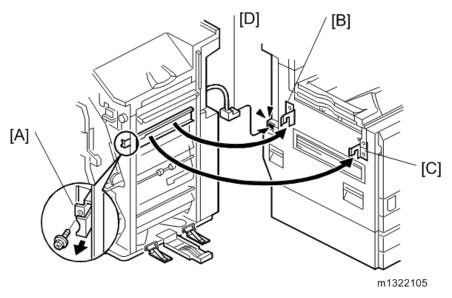
- Make sure that the cushion is placed within 0 to 1 mm from the edge of the cover.
- 5. Install the ground plate [B] on the finisher ($\mathscr{F} \times 2$; M3 × 6).
- 6. Install the small ground plates [C] on the finisher(F x 2; M3 x 6 each).



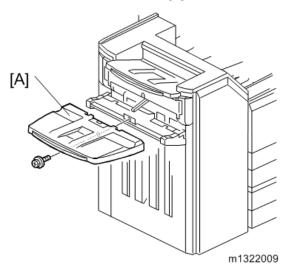
- 7. Attach the rear joint bracket [A] (\mathscr{F} x 2; M4 x 14).
- 8. Attach the front joint bracket [B] and the holder bracket [C] (\nearrow x 2; M4 x 14).



• Holder bracket [C] must be placed outside the front joint bracket [B]. This bracket is provided with the Bridge Unit (D634).



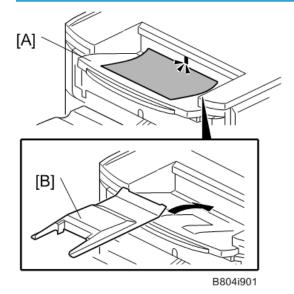
- 9. Pull the lock lever [A] (x 1).
- 10. Slowly push the finisher to the left side of the machine, keeping its front door open until the brackets [B] [C] go into their slots.
- 11. Push the lock lever [A], and then secure it ($\mathcal{F} \times 1$).
- 12. Close the front door of the finisher.
- 13. Connect the finisher connector [D] to the machine.



14. Install the upper output tray [A] (\mathscr{F} x 1; M3 x 8).

- 15. Turn on the main power switch of the machine.
- 16. Check the finisher operation.

Support Tray Installation



If a stacking problem occurs several times on the upper output tray [A], put the support tray [B] on the tray as shown.

2

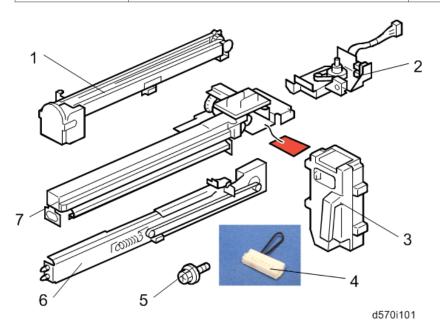
Punch Unit Installation (D570)

The Punch Unit D570 can be installed in the 3000-Sheet Finisher D636.

Component Check

Check the quantity and condition of the components against the following list.

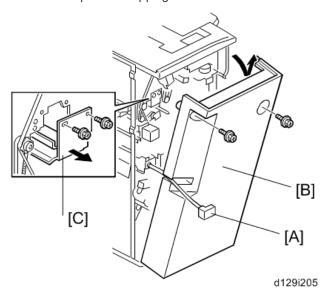
No.	Description	Q'ty
1	Punch-out Waste Unit	1
2	Slide Drive Unit	1
3	Punch Waste Hopper	1
4	Wire harness: short-circuit	1
5	Screws (M3 x 6)	5
6	Side-to-Side Detection Unit	1
7	Punching Unit	1



Installation Procedure

ACAUTION

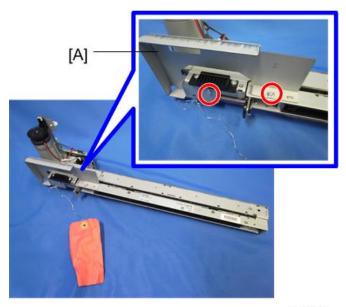
- Unplug the main machine power cord before starting the following procedure. If the 3000-sheet finisher has been installed, disconnect it and pull it away from the machine.
- 1. Remove all tapes and shipping retainers.



- 2. If the finisher is connected to the machine, disconnect the power connector [A] and separate the finisher from the machine.
- 3. Remove the rear cover [B] (\mathscr{F} x 2) and open the front door.

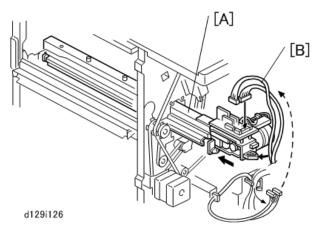


- At the base of the back cover, be sure to disconnect the tabs that fasten the cover to the frame.
- 4. Remove the guide plate [C] (x 2).

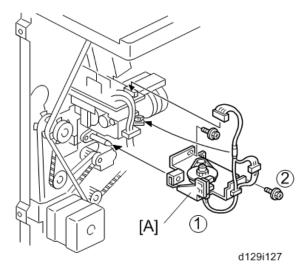


d129i204

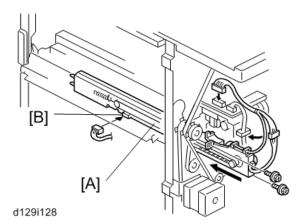
5. Remove the shipping retainer [A] ($\slash\hspace{-0.6em}P \times 2)$ from the punch unit.



- 6. Move the punch unit [A] along its rails into the finisher. Make sure that the pin engages correctly at the front and rear.
- 7. Connect the cables [B] of the finisher to the connectors (CN601 and CN602) on the punch unit board (x 2, x 1).
 - The cables [B] are coiled and attached to the PCB.



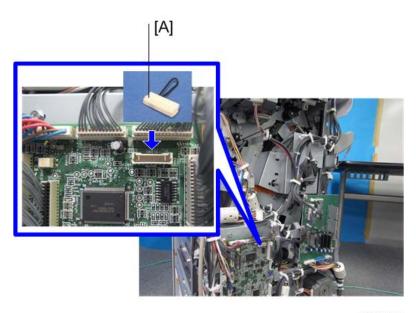
- 8. Attach the slide drive unit [A] to the finisher and connect it to the punch unit (x 2, 1). Push in the slide drive unit at 1 when you attach the screw 2.
- 9. Make sure that the punch unit moves freely and is not blocked by the screws.



- Put the side-to-side detection unit [A] in the machine. Make sure that the two pins are engaged correctly at the front.
- 11. Make sure that the side-to-side detection unit moves smoothly on its rails. If it does not, make sure that the rails are aligned with their grooves.
- 12. Attach the side-to-side detection unit and connect it at the rear (F x 2, 🛱 x 1, 🟴 x 1).
- 13. Pull the short connector out of the connector [B], then connect the cable of the finisher ($\mathbb{Z}^2 \times 1$).

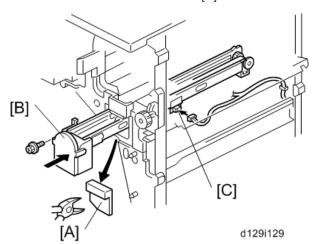


• This is the 3-pin connector.



d129i133

14. Connect "Wire harness: short-circuit" [A] to the CN110 connector.

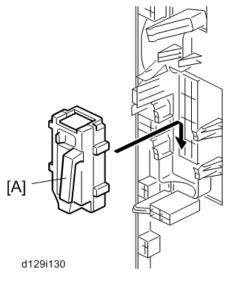


- 15. At the front, use a pair of wire cutters to remove the part [A] of the cover.
- 16. Install the punch-waste transport unit [B] in the finisher.
- 17. Make sure that the punch-waste transport unit moves smoothly on its rails. If it does not, make sure that the rails are aligned with the grooves.
- 18. Remove the short connector from the connector [C].



• This is the 4-pin connector.

19. Connect the cable to connector [C] and attach the punch-waste transport unit ($\mathscr{F} \times 1$, $\overset{\square}{\Longrightarrow} \times 1$).



- 20. Set the hopper [A] in its holder.
- 21. Reassemble the finisher, and then install it on the main machine.
- 22. Connect the power cord to the outlet, and then turn the main power switch on.
- 23. Check the punch unit operation.

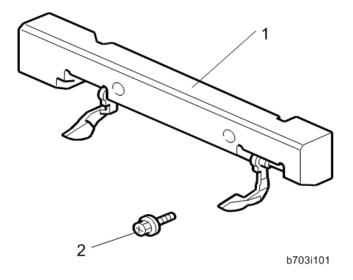
2

Output Jogger Unit Installation (B703)

Accessory Check List

Check the accessories and their quantities against this list.

No.	Description	Q'ty
1	Jogger Unit	1
2	Tapping Screws M3x6	2

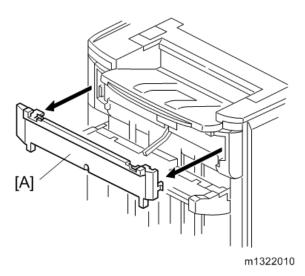


Installation Procedure

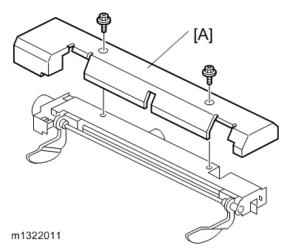
The Output Jogger Unit B703 is installed only on the 3000-Sheet Finisher D636.

⚠ WARNING

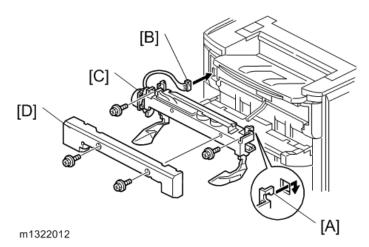
- Always switch the machine off and unplug the machine before doing any of the following procedures.
- 1. Turn the main machine switch off.
- 2. Disconnect the finisher from the main frame.



3. Use the flat head of a screwdriver to remove the left upper cover [A].



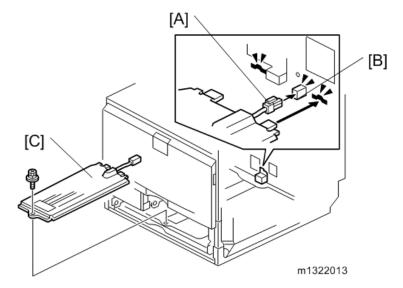
4. Remove the cover plate [A] (x 2). Keep the screws.



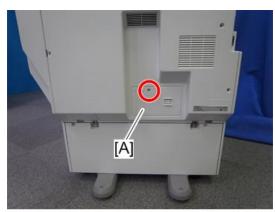
- 5. While holding the jogger unit with the connector on the left, put the hooks on the frame of the jogger unit [A] into the holes in the left and right side of the finisher frame.
- 6. Connect connector [B] to the socket (🔎 x 1).
- 7. Attach the jogger unit [C] to the finisher ($\mathscr{F} \times 2$).
- 8. Reattach the jogger unit cover [D] to the jogger unit (F x 2).

Tray Heater

Installation Procedure



- 1. Remove trays 1 and 2 from the machine.
- 2. Connect the connector [A] of the heater to the connector [B] of the main machine.
- 3. Install the heater [C] inside the machine ($\slash\hspace{-0.6em}P \times 1$).



m1322014

4. Remove the connector cover [A] (x 1).

2



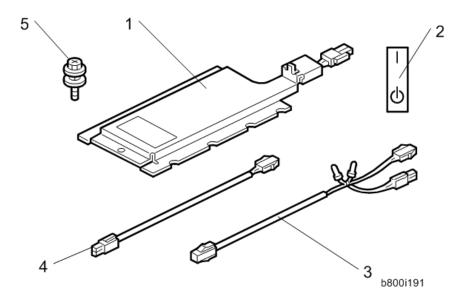
m1322015

- 5. Release the heater relay connector [A] ($\stackrel{\frown}{\bowtie} \times 1$).
- 6. Connect the heater relay connector to the connector [B] (front side) of the main frame ($\frak{\cappa} x\ 1$).
- 7. Reassemble the machine.

Component Check

No.	Description	Q'ty	For this model
1	Tray heater	1	Yes
2	On-standby decal	1	Not used
3	Harness 2	1	Not used
4	Harness 1	1	Yes
5	Screw M4 x 10	2	Yes
-	Installation procedure	1	Yes

Tray Heater (Optional Paper Feed Unit)



Installation Procedure

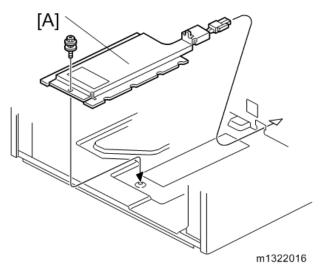
ACAUTION

• Unplug the machine power cord before starting the following procedure.

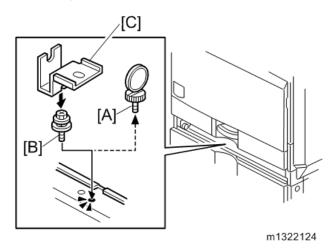
2

For installing the tray heater in the D580 (Two-tray paper feed unit)

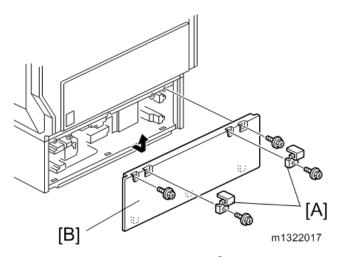
1. Pull out the two trays from the optional paper feed unit.



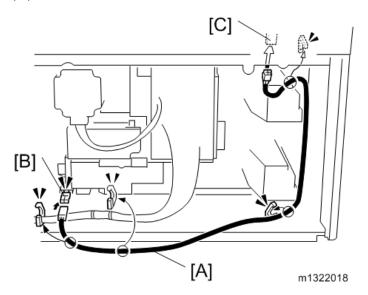
- 2. Install the tray heater [A] in the optional paper feed unit (\mathscr{F} x 1).
- 3. Pull out tray 2 from the mainframe.



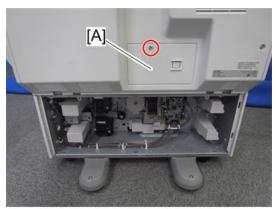
4. Replace the shoulder screw [A] with the washer screw [B], using the securing bracket [C] (\mathscr{F} x 1).



5. Remove the two securing brackets [A] (x 1 each), and then the rear cover [B] of the optional paper feed unit (x 2).

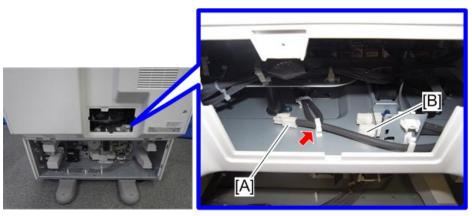


- 6. Connect the harness [A] to the connector [B] of the tray heater.
- 7. Route the harness [A] as shown and clamp it with four clamps ($\stackrel{\frown}{\bowtie}$ x 4).
- 8. Connect the harness [A] to the connector [C] of the mainframe.



m1322019

9. Remove the connector cover [A] (*x 1).



m1322020

- 10. Release the optional heater relay connector [A] (x 1).
- 11. Connect the optional heater relay connector to the connector [B] (rear side) of the main frame (x 1).
- 12. Reassemble the mainframe and optional paper feed unit.

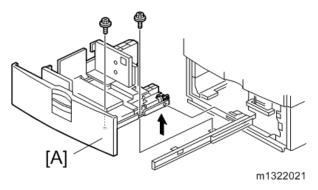
For installing the tray heater in the D581 (LCT)

- 1. Remove the rear cover of the mainframe ($\slash\hspace{-0.6em}P \times 6$).
- 2. Pull out the LCT drawer.

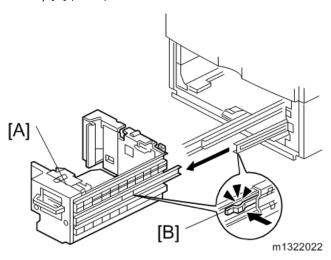


• If the right tray comes out with the left tray, push the right tray into the LCT.

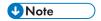
63



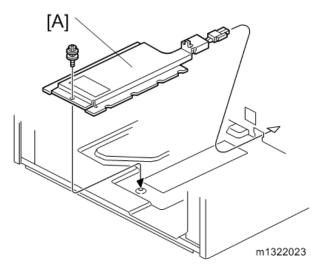
3. Left tray [A] (🖟 x 2)



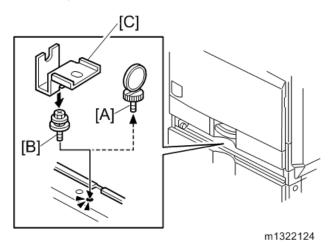
4. Remove the right tray [A] while pressing down the stopper [B].



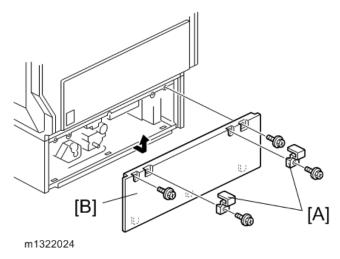
• When reinstalling the right tray, set the right tray on the guide rail and carefully push the tray in, making sure to keep the tray level.



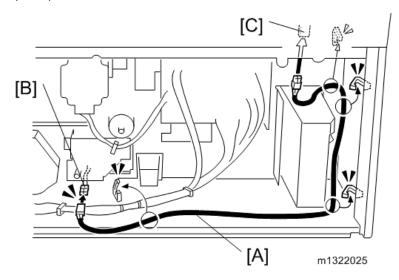
- 5. Install the tray heater [A] in the optional LCT (\mathscr{F} x 1).
- 6. Pull out tray 2 from the mainframe.



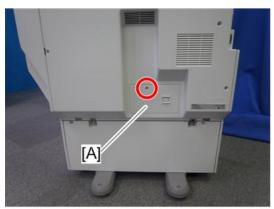
7. Replace the shoulder screw [A] with the washer screw [B], using the securing bracket [C] (\mathscr{F} x 1).



8. Remove the two securing brackets [A] ($\mathscr{F} \times 1$ each), and then the rear cover [B] of the optional LCT ($\mathscr{F} \times 2$).

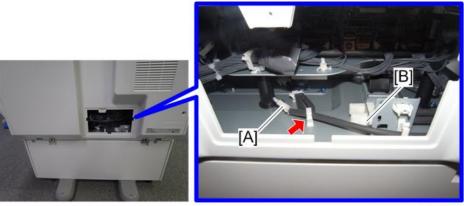


- 9. Connect the harness [A] to the connector [B] of the tray heater.
- 10. Route the harness [A] as shown and clamp it with four clamps ($\nearrow x 4$).
- 11. Connect the harness [A] to the connector [C] of the mainframe.
- 12. Reassemble the rear cover of the optional LCT.



m1322026

13. Remove the connector cover [A] (\mathscr{F} x 1).



m1322027

- 14. Release the optional heater relay connector [A] (🛱 x 1).
- 15. Connect the optional heater relay connector to the connector [B] (rear side) of the main frame (x 1).
- 16. Reassemble the mainframe and optional LCT.

External USB Keyboard Installation

Installation Procedure

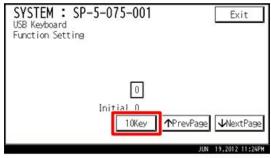
Customers can use an external USB keyboard when the software keyboard is shown on the operation panel, if an external USB keyboard is connected to the USB port at the side of the operation panel or the controller box USB port.

If customers would like to use an external USB keyboard, execute the following steps to enable this feature.

1. Connect the external keyboard to the USB port at the right side of the operation panel or the controller box USB port.



- The external keyboard that is available in this machine is principally for the Windows OS. However, no compatibility check is done, and there is no warranty.
- 2. Enter the SP mode.
- 3. Select "Engine" SP.
- 4. Select "5075 USB Keyboard".



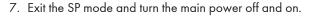
w_m1322107

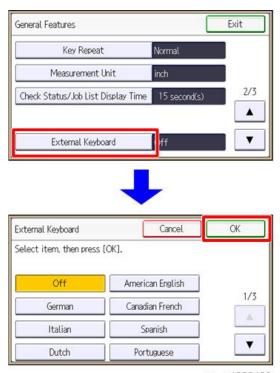
5. Press [10Key] to open the number entry screen.



w m1322119

6. Enter "1" then press [OK]. This switches the USB Keyboard feature on.





w_m1322120

- 8. Select a language type for the external USB keyboard with [User Tools] > [System Settings] > [General Features] > [External Keyboard].
- 9. Press [OK] to set it.
- 10. Turn the main power off and on.

Controller Options

Overview

This section describes the installation procedures for controller options for M132 series machines.

Controller Options

No.	ltem	Slots	
G874	Gigabit Ethernet Board Type A (EU only)		
M394	Gigabit Ethernet Board Type C (NA only)		
M344	IEEE 802.11a/g Interface Unit Type L -or- IEEE 802.11g Interface Unit Type M -or- IEEE 802.11g Interface Unit Type P	Board Slot. Only one of these boards can be installed at one time.	
B679	IEEE 1284 Interface Board Type A		
M416	IPDS Unit Type 8300	SD Card Slot 1 (Upper Slot)	
D640	VM Card Type U	SD Card Slot 1 (Upper Slot)	
M416	SD Card for NetWare printing Type N	SD Card Slot 1 (Upper Slot)	
D641	SD Card for Fonts Type D (EU only)	SD Card Slot 1 (Upper Slot)	
M416	Hard Disk Drive Option Type 8300	Controller Board	
D594	Memory Unit Type L 512MB		

UNote

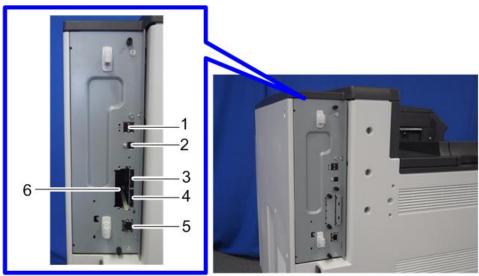
• If more than one SD card application is required, the applications must be moved to one SD card with SP5873-1. For more details about merging applications from SD card Slot 2 (Lower Slot) to Slot 1 (Upper Slot), see "Application Merge" in this section.

Board, SD Card Slots

The machine controller box has one board slot and two SD card slots.

Only one interface board option can be installed.

Only two SD cards are available for applications and maintenance.



m1322053

No.	Name	Description
1	USB-A	Both USB slots are used for a card authentication device.
2	USB-B	Built-in for connection of USB devices (USB 2.0)
3	SD Card Slot 1 (Upper Slot)	For options provided on SD cards. The application SD card can be installed in Slot 1 (Upper Slot). If two or more applications are to be used, move the applications to the same SD card with SP5873-1.
4	SD Card Slot 2 (Lower Slot)	For servicing.
5	Ethernet	Standard LAN connection point. 100BASE-TX/10BASE-T LAN • Orange LED: Lights when 100BASE-TX is operating. • Green LED: Lights when 10BASE-TX is operating.
6	Board Slot	Optional interface boards are installed here.



- Only two SD Card slots are available for applications.
- To install more applications, they must be moved onto one SD Card.

• Board Slot:

The following optional interface boards are available. There is only one board slot so only one can be installed.

No.	Interface Board
G874	Gigabit Ethernet Board Type A (EU)
M394	Gigabit Ethernet Board Type C (NA)
	IEEE 802.11a/g Interface Unit Type L
	-or-
M344	IEEE 802.11g Interface Unit Type M
	-or-
	IEEE 802.11g Interface Unit Type P
B679	IEEE 1284 Interface Board Type A



• Only one of these boards can be installed at one time.

SD Card Slot:

The following options are provided on SD cards.

- Two SD card slots are available.
- Options provided on SD cards should be installed in Slot 1 (Upper Slot). If more than one
 application is required, applications can be moved onto one SD card with SP5873-1.

No.	SD Card Applications
M416	IPDS Unit Type 8300
M416	SD card for NetWare printing Type N
D641	SD Card for Fonts Type D (EU only)
D640	VM Card Type U

Application Merge

Overview

This machine has two SD card slots only. However, more than two optional applications are supplied for this machine. Always keep SD card Slot 2 (Lower Slot) vacant for servicing. Because of this, SD card merge is required if a customer wants to use many applications.

The service program "SD Card Appli Move" (SP5-873) lets you to copy application programs from one SD card to another SD card.

You can move application programs from Slot 2 (Lower Slot) to Slot 1 (Upper Slot).

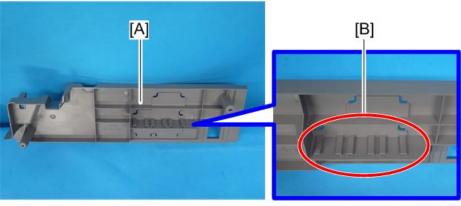
Important Notes about SD Card Appli Move

1. Consider the following limitations when you try to merge SD cards.

The destination SD card should have the largest memory size of all the application SD cards. Refer to the following table for the memory size of each SD card.

SD Card Options	SD Card Size
IPDS Unit Type 8003	128 MB
SD card for NetWare printing Type N	128 MB
VM Card Type U	256 MB
SD Card for Fonts Type D (EU only)	128 MB

- 2. The data necessary for authentication is transferred with the application program from an SD card to another SD card. Authentication fails if you try to use the SD card after you copy the application program from one card to another card.
- 3. Do not use the SD card if it has been used by the user on the computer. Normal operation is not guaranteed when such an SD card is used.



m1322098

- 4. Remove the lower inner cover [A] (p.81 "Front Door, Upper and Lower Inner Cover"), and then keep the SD card in the place [B] after you move the application program from one card to another card. This is done for the following reasons:
 - The SD card can be the only proof that the user is licensed to use the application program.
 - You may need to check the SD card and its data to solve a problem in the future.
- 5. Before storing the card from which an application has been copied, label it carefully so that you can identify it easily if you need to do the undo procedure later.

Move Exec

The menu "Move Exec" (SP5-873-001) lets you copy application programs from the original SD card to another SD card.



- Do not turn ON the write protect switch of the system SD card or application SD card on the
 machine. If the write protect switch is ON, a download error (e.g. Error Code 44) occurs during a
 firmware upgrade or application merge.
- 1. Turn the main switch off.



m1322095

- 2. Remove the SD card slot cover [A] (x 1).
- 3. Make sure that an SD card is in SD Card Slot 1 (Upper Slot). The application program is copied into this SD card.
- 4. Insert the SD card (having stored the application program) to SD Card Slot 2 (Lower Slot). The application program is copied from this SD card.
- 5. Turn the main switch on.
- 6. Start the SP mode.
- 7. Select SP5-873-001 "Move Exec."
- 8. Touch "Execute".
- 9. Follow the messages shown on the operation panel.
- 10. Turn the main switch off.
- 11. Remove the SD card from SD Card Slot 2 (Lower Slot).
- 12. Turn the main switch on.
- 13. Enter the printer user mode. Then print the configuration page.

Check that the application programs run normally.

• User Tools > Printer Features > List / Test Print > Configuration Page

All installed options are shown in the "System Reference" column.

14. Turn the main switch off again, and then reattach the SD card slot cover.

Undo Exec

The menu "Undo Exec" (SP5-873-002) lets you copy back application programs from an SD card to the original SD card. You can use this program when, for example, you have mistakenly copied some programs by using Move Exec (SP5-873-001).



- Do not turn ON the write protect switch of the system SD card or application SD card on the
 machine. If the write protect switch is ON, a download error (e.g. Error Code 44) occurs during a
 firmware upgrade or application merge.
- 1. Turn the main switch off.
- 2. Insert the original SD card in SD Card Slot 2 (Lower Slot). The application program is copied back into this card.
- 3. Insert the SD card (having stored the application program) to SD Card Slot 1 (Upper Slot). The application program is copied back from this SD card.
- 4. Turn the main switch on.
- 5. Start the SP mode.
- 6. Select SP5-873-002 "Undo Exec."
- 7. Touch "Execute".
- 8. Follow the messages shown on the operation panel.
- 9. Turn the main switch off.
- 10. Remove the SD card from SD Card Slot 2 (Lower Slot).



- This step assumes that the application programs in the SD card are used by the machine.
- 11. Turn the main switch on.
- 12. Make sure that the machine can recognize the option.
- 13. Enter the printer user mode. Then print the configuration page.

Check that the application programs run normally.

• User Tools > Printer Features > List / Test Print > Configuration Page

All installed options are shown in the "System Reference" column.

14. Turn the main switch off again, and then reattach the SD card slot cover.

-

3. Preventive Maintenance

PM Tables

See "Appendices" for the following information:

• PM Tables

4. Replacement and Adjustment

General Cautions

CAUTION

• To avoid damage to the transfer belt, drum, or development unit when it is removed or re-installed, never turn off power switch while electrical components are active.

ACAUTION

• Turn off the main power switch and unplug the machine before attempting any of the procedures in this section.

Laser Unit

- 1. Do not loosen the screws that secure the LD drive board to the laser diode casing. Doing so would throw the LD unit out of adjustment.
- 2. Do not adjust the variable resistors on the LD unit, as they are adjusted in the factory.
- 3. The polygon mirror and F-theta lenses are very sensitive to dust. Do not open the optical housing unit
- 4. Do not touch the glass surface of the polygon mirror motor unit with bare hands.
- 5. After replacing the LD unit, do the laser beam pitch adjustment.

Used Toner

Dispose of used toner in accordance with local regulations. Never throw toner into an open flame, for toner dust may ignite.

Special Tools and Lubricants

Special Tools

Part Number	Description	Q'ty
A2309003	Adjustment Cam – Laser Unit	1
A2309004	Positioning Pin – Laser Unit	1
B6455010	SD Card 128MB	1
B6455020	SD Card 1GB	1
G0219350	Loop Back Connector: Parallel * 1	1
B6795100	Plug - IEEE1284 Type C	1

^{* 1 &}quot;Loop Back Connector: Parallel" requires "Plug - IEEE1284 Type C".



• A PC (Personal Computer) is required for creating the Encryption key file on an SD card when replacing the controller board for a model in which HDD encryption has been enabled.

Lubricants

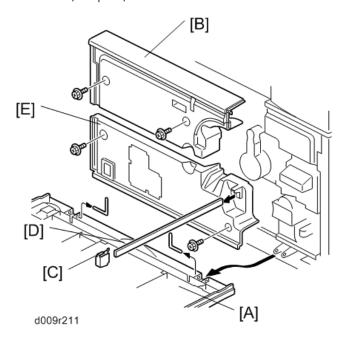
Part Number	Description	Q'ty
A2579300	Grease Barrierta – S552R	1
52039502	Silicone Grease G501	1

4

Exterior Covers

Front Door, Upper and Lower Inner Cover

1. Left Cover (p.82)



2. Open and remove the front door [A] (pin x 2).

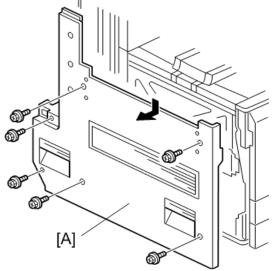
Upper Inner Cover

- 1. Open the front door [A].
- 2. Upper inner cover [B] (* x 2)

Lower Inner Cover

- 1. Remove the front door [A] (pin x 2)
- 2. Shield glass cover [C]
- 3. Shield glass [D] (x 2)
- 4. Lower inner cover [E]

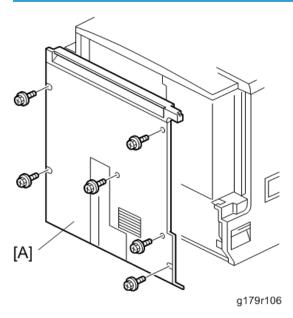
Left Cover



g179r201

1. Left cover [A] (F x 6)

Rear Cover



1. Rear cover [A] (x 6)

4

Right Rear Cover

- 1. Rear cover (p.82)
- 2. Top right and top rear cover (p.84)



m1322069

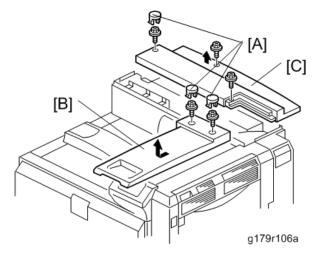
3. Open the right door [A].



m1322070

4. Right rear cover [A] (*\bar{P} \times 4)

Top Right and Top Rear Cover



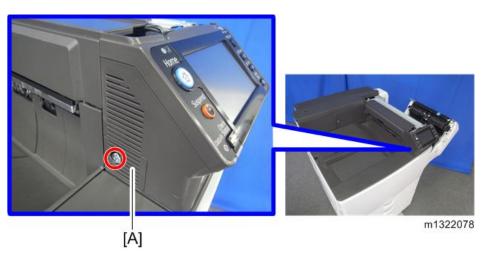
- 1. Remove the screw caps [A].
- 2. Top right cover [B] (x 2)
- 3. Top rear cover [C] (x 3)

Operation Panel

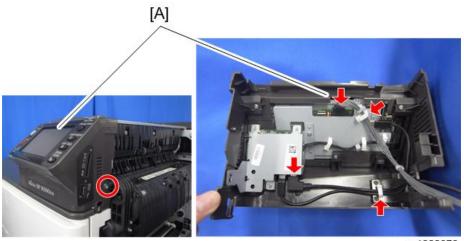


m1322077

- 1. Open the right door [A].
- 2. Top right cover (p.84 "Top Right and Top Rear Cover")



3. Operation panel cover [A] (x 1)



m1322079

4. Operation panel unit [A] (\mathscr{F} x 1, \square x 2, $\overset{\square}{\bowtie}$ x 2)





m1322080

Operation panel bracket [A] (small x 3)



m1322081

[Ă]

6. Operation panel [A]

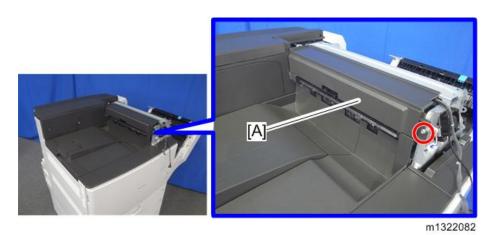
When Installing the New Operation Panel

Do the touch screen calibration after you replace the operation panel. (** p.174 "Touch Screen Calibration")

Paper Exit Cover

- 1. Top right cover (p.84 "Top Right and Top Rear Cover")
- 2. Operation panel unit (p.84 "Operation Panel")

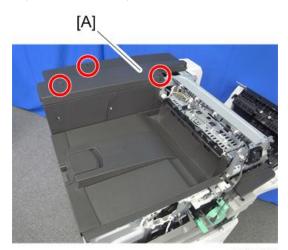




3. Paper exit cover [A] (x 1)

Output Tray

- 1. Left cover (p.82)
- 2. Upper inner cover (p.81 "Front Door, Upper and Lower Inner Cover")
- 3. Paper exit cover (p.86)

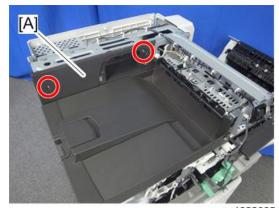


m1322083

4. Top rear cover [A] (screw cap x 1, F x 3)

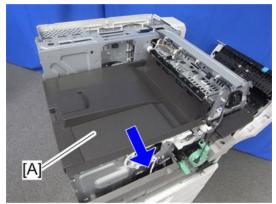
m1322084

5. Connector cover [A] (x 1)



m1322085

6. Inner rear cover [A] (Fx 2)



m1322086

7. Output tray [A]

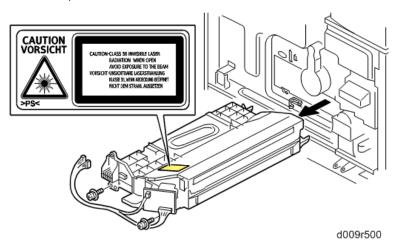
Laser Unit

MARNING

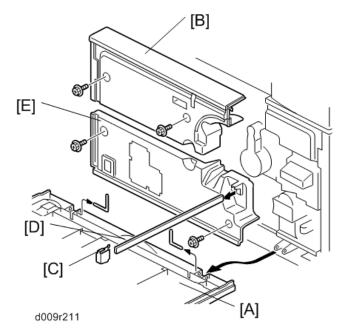
• Turn off the main power switch and unplug the machine before attempting any of the procedures in this section. Laser beams can seriously damage your eyes.

Caution Decal Locations

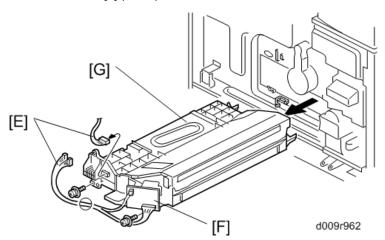
Two caution decals are located in the laser section as shown below. (See the next page for removal instructions.)



Laser Unit



- 1. Open the front door.
- 2. Front door [A] (pins x 2)
- 3. Upper inner cover [B] (x 2)
- 4. Glass cap [C]
- 5. Shield glass [D]
- 6. Lower inner cover [E] (Fx 2)



7. Laser unit connectors [E] (🚅 x 3, 🖨 x 1)

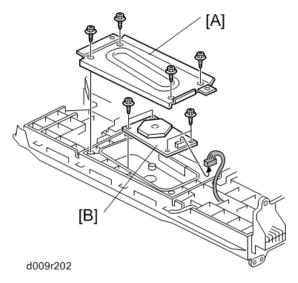
Δ

- Do not disconnect the harnesses on the LD board [F] unless the LD unit has to be replaced.
 This board is precisely adjusted in the factory.
- 8. Laser unit [G] (x 2)



• When sliding out the laser unit, do not hold the LD board. Hold the laser unit.

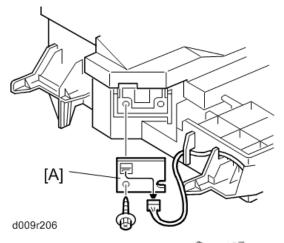
Polygon Mirror Motor



- 1. Laser unit (p.90)
- 2. Laser unit cover [A] (x 4)
- 3. Polygon mirror motor [B] ($\mathscr{F} \times 4$, $\overset{\blacksquare}{\longrightarrow} \times 1$)
- 4. After replacing the polygon mirror motor, do the image adjustment (** p.170 "Print Adjustments").

Laser Synchronization Detector

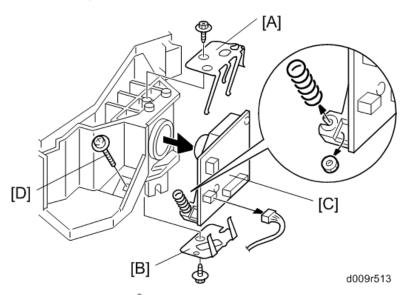
1. Laser unit (p.90)



2. Laser synchronization detector [A] (x1, x1)

LD Unit

1. Laser unit (p.90)



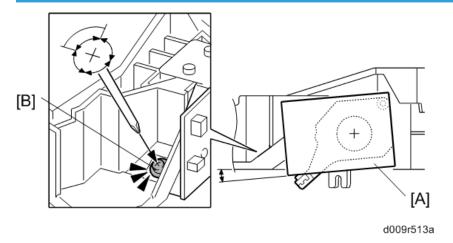
- 2. Upper spring plate [A] (x 1)
- 3. Lower spring plate [B] (Fx 1)



• To avoid damaging the LD board, hold it securely when disconnecting the connectors. Hold the laser unit casing.

5. After replacing the LD board, do the "Laser Beam Pitch Adjustment" (described in the following section). Keep the lower inner cover removed before doing this adjustment because you need to adjust the adjustor screw [D] on the LD unit with a screwdriver.

Laser Beam Pitch Adjustment

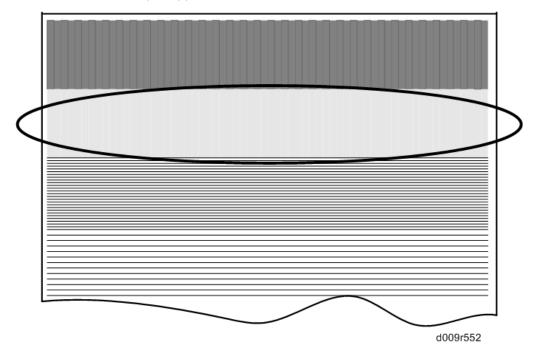


- 1. Install a (new) LD unit [A] with the left side of the LD unit being lower than the right side. (This makes this adjustment easier.)
- 2. Print the test pattern "Hounds Tooth Check (Horizontal)" (No. 16 in SP2109-001).
- 3. Check if the vertical stripes appear on the second pattern (counted from the leading edge) of the printout.
 - Correct: No vertical stripes appear (see the sample following this procedure.)
 - Wrong: Vertical stripes appear (see the sample following this procedure.)
- 4. Turn the adjustor screw [B] by 90 degrees clockwise (counterclockwise).

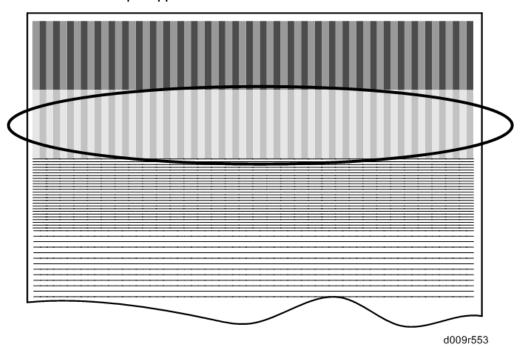


- If the image of the printout is getting worse, try reverse rotation (clockwise ←→ counterclockwise)
- 5. Print the test pattern and check it out.
- 6. Try steps 2 to 4 again until you get an image with no vertical stripes.
- 7. Reassemble the machine after completing this adjustment.

Correct: No vertical stripes appear



Incorrect: Vertical stripes appear

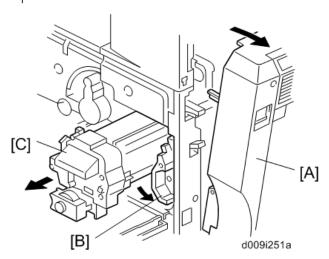


4

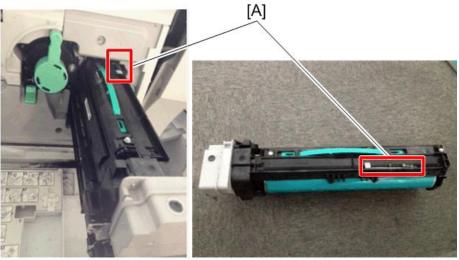
PCDU

PCDU (Photoconductor and Development Unit)

1. Open the front door.



- 2. Open the right door [A].
- 3. Release the lock lever [B].
- 4. Pull out the PCDU [C] and place it on a clean flat surface.



m1322113

- When you pull out the PCDU, push the security lock [A] of the PCDU. If the lock is not pressed, the PCDU will be stuck in the machine and cannot be pulled out completely. The lock prevents the PCDU from coming out accidentally.
- You don't need to push the security lock when installing a PCDU.
- 5. Spread a large piece of paper on a flat surface.



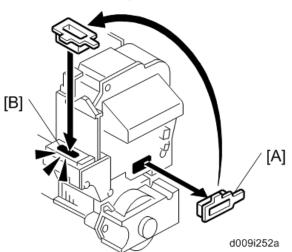
 Make sure the area is free of pins, paper clips, staples, etc. to avoid attraction to the magnetic development roller.

Reinstallation

Open the right cover before you install the PCDU in the machine.

Drum

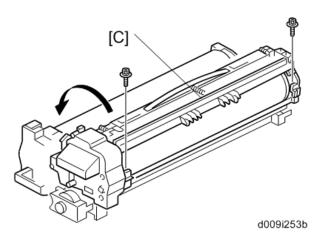
1. Remove the PCDU (p.95)



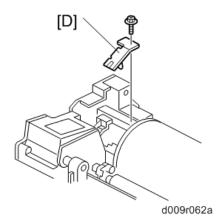
- 2. Toner cap [A]
- 3. Insert cap [A] into the opening of the PCDU [B].



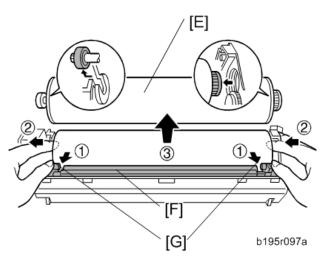
• Make sure that the cap is inserted completely into the opening.



4. Open the PCDU [C] ($\widehat{\mathbb{F}}$ x 2).



5. Bracket [D] (🗗 x 1)



ACAUTION

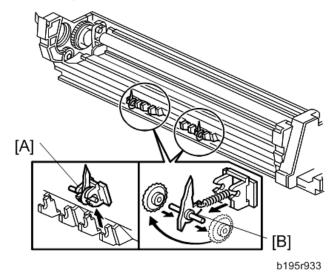
• Never touch the drum surface with bare hands.

Re-installation

- 1. Replace the drum and close the PCDU (\mathscr{F} x 2).
- 2. Put the opening cap [A in the previous procedure] back in its original place.
- 3. After replacing the drum, do these SPs:
 - SP 2001: Charge Bias Setting make sure that this is at the default setting
 - SP 3001-2: P Sensor Initial Setting (P sensor = ID Sensor)
 - SP 2805: Process Setting
 - SP 2810-1: Grayscale Setting

Pick-off Pawls

1. Drum (p.96)



- 2. Pawl assembly [A]
- 3. Pick-off pawl [B] (spring x 1, spur x 1)

4

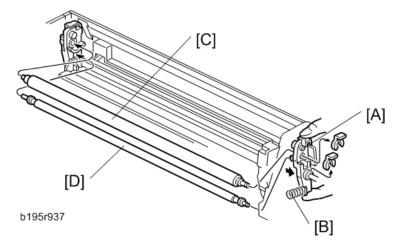
Pick-off Pawl Position Adjustment

If the pick-off pawl has marked the drum with a line, the pick-off pawl position can be adjusted using either method:

- · Changing the spur position
- Changing the pick-off pawl assembly position

Charge Roller and Cleaning Roller

1. Drum (p.96)



- 2. Push the charge roller holder [A] toward the front of the drum ((() x 2) and remove the spring [B].
- 3. Charge roller [C].



- Disengage the charge roller on the right side to remove it. Try to avoid touching the charge roller.
- 4. Cleaning roller [D]



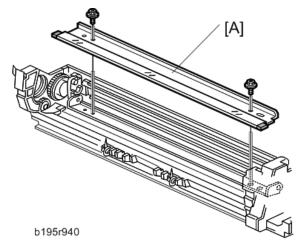
- Disengage the cleaning roller on the left to remove it.
- 5. After replacing the charge roller and cleaning roller, check the value of SP2001-001. If it is not at the standard value (1500), set SP2001-001 to "1500".



 If this is not done, the carrier will be attracted to the drum because the charge roller voltage will be too high.

Drum Cleaning Blade

- 1. Drum (p.96)
- 2. Charge roller and cleaning roller (p.99)



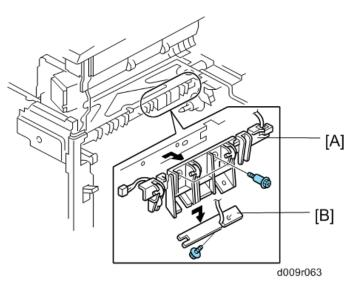
3. Remove drum cleaning blade [A] (\mathscr{F} x 2)

Re-installation

Put toner on the edge of cleaning blade and the mylar at the back side of cleaning blade before reinstalling this blade.

ID Sensor

- 1. PCDU (p.95)
- 2. Fusing unit (p.119)



- 4. ID sensor [B] (🖟 x 1)

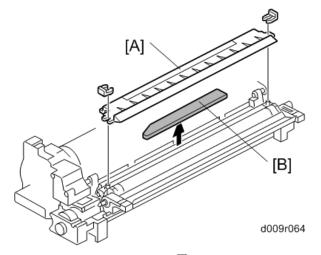


• Do SP3-001-002 to initialize the ID sensor after replacing.

Development

Development Filter

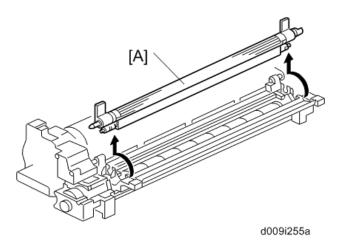
- 1. PCDU (p.95)
- 2. Open the PCDU. (p.96 "Drum")



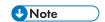
- 3. Upper development cover [A] ((() x2)
- 4. Development filter [B]

Development Roller

- 1. PCDU (p.95)
- 2. Open the PCDU. (p.96 "Drum")
- 3. Upper development cover (p.102 "Development Filter")



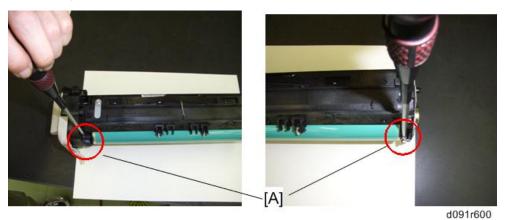
4. Development roller [A]



• Work carefully to avoid scratching or nicking the development roller.

Cleaning Procedure

1. PCDU (p.95)

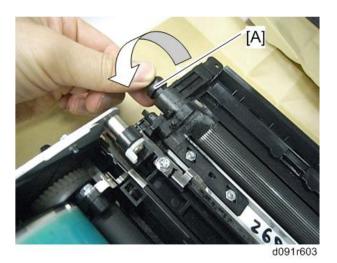


2. Remove the two screws [A] and open the PCDU as shown above.





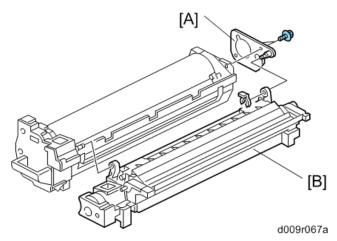
- 4. Fold up a sheet of copy paper [A] to fit the width of the uncovered area of the development roller, as shown below.
- 5. Slide the paper [A] along the length of the roller to clean the toner off the surface.



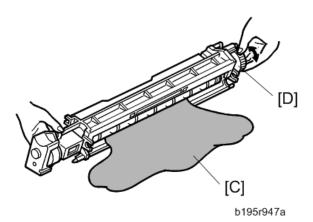
- 6. Rotate the development roller [A] in the direction of the arrow until the section you cleaned is no longer visible.
- 7. Repeat steps 5 and 6 until you have cleaned the entire surface of the roller.
- 8. Reassemble the PCDU and install the PCDU into the machine.

Developer

- 1. PCDU (p.95)
- 2. Open the PCDU. (p.96 "Drum")
- 3. Development roller (p.102)



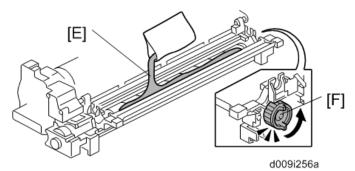
- 4. Joint bracket [A] (₹ x 2, Ѿ x 1)
- 5. Development unit [B]



- 6. Tip out the old developer [C].
- 7. Turn drive gear [D] to ensure that no developer remains in the unit or on the developer roller.



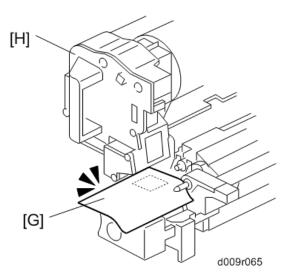
- Dispose of the used developer in accordance with local regulations. Work carefully to avoid scratching or nicking the development roller.
- 8. Clean the development roller with a dry cloth.



- 9. Pour approximately 1/3 of the developer [E] evenly along the length of the development unit.
- 10. Rotate the drive gear [F] to work the developer into the unit.
- 11. Repeat steps 8 and 9 until all toner is in the unit and level with the edges.
- 12. Re-install the development roller.



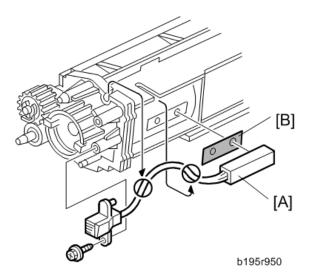
Make sure that the seals at the both sides of the development roller are set inside the case
after you re-install the development roller.



- 13. Place a piece of paper [G] over the toner entrance hole. This prevents used toner falling from the drum into the development unit during the TD sensor initial setting and interfering with the Vref setting (toner density reference voltage)
- 14. Secure the drum [H] to the development unit, to close the PCDU (\mathcal{F} x 2).
- 15. Install the PCDU in the machine and close the front and right doors.
- 16. Turn on the main power switch, and wait for the machine to warm up.
- 17. Do SP2801 to initialize the TD sensor and enter the developer lot number.
- 18. After performing the TD sensor initial setting, remove the sheet of paper from the PCDU.

TD Sensor

- 1. PCDU (p.95)
- 2. Empty all developer from the development unit. (p.105 "Developer")



- 3. Seal
- 4. TD sensor [A] (x1)



- The TD sensor is attached to the casing with double-sided tape [B]. Pry it off with the flat head of a screwdriver. Use fresh double-sided tape to re-attach the sensor.
- 5. Pour new developer into the development unit and perform the TD sensor initial setting using SP2-801.



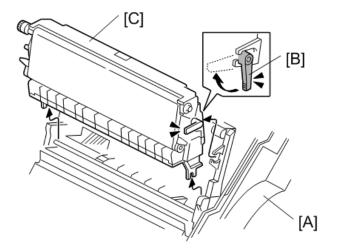
 When performing the TD sensor initial setting, cover the toner entrance hole with a piece of paper.

Transfer

Transfer Belt Unit



• To avoid exposing the drum to strong light, cover it with paper if the right cover will be open for a long period.



d009r025

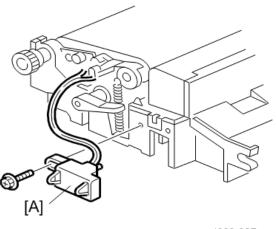
- 1. Open the right door [A].
- 2. Release the lever [B].
- 3. Transfer belt unit [C]



• Avoid touching the transfer belt surface.

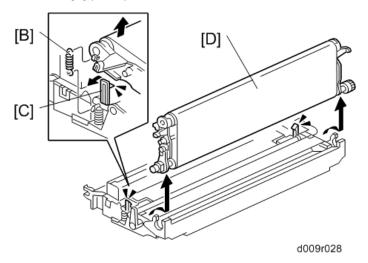
Transfer Belt

1. Transfer belt unit (p.109)

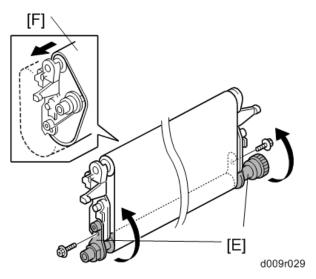


d009r027

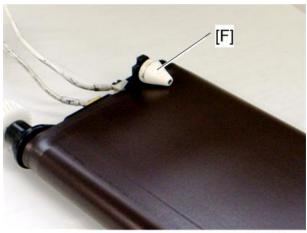
2. Connector [A] (x 1)



- 3. Remove the springs (front and rear) [B].
- 4. Release the hooks (front and rear) [C].
- 5. Transfer belt with rollers [D]



6. Lay the transfer belt with rollers on a flat clean surface, and fold the unit [E] to release the tension on the belt ($\mathcal{E} \times 2$).



d017i029a

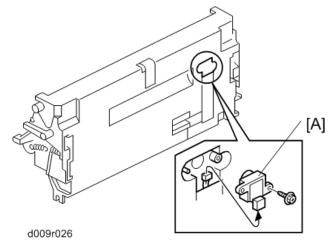
7. Transfer belt [F]



- Avoid touching the transfer belt surface.
- Before installing the new transfer belt, clean all the rollers and shafts with alcohol to prevent the belt from slipping.
- When reinstalling the transfer belt, make sure that the belt is under the pin [F].
- To avoid damaging the transfer belt during installation, manually turn the rollers and make sure that the new transfer belt is not running over the edges of any of the rollers.

Toner Overflow Sensor

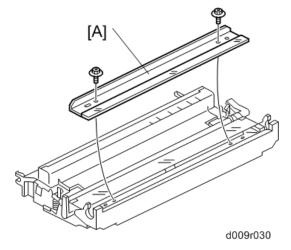
1. Transfer belt unit (p.109)



2. Toner overflow sensor [A] ($\mbox{\it P} \times 1$, $\mbox{\it III} \times 1$)

Transfer Belt Cleaning Blade

- 1. Transfer belt unit (p.109)
- 2. Transfer belt (p.109)



3. Transfer belt cleaning blade [A] (\mathscr{F} x 2)



• Avoid touching the edge of the new blade. Check the new blade for dust or damage.

Paper Feed

Paper Feed Unit

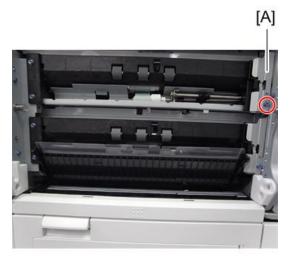
Tray 1 and Tray 2

- 1. Right rear cover (p.83)
- 2. Duplex unit (p.134)
- 3. Pull out tray 1 and tray 2.



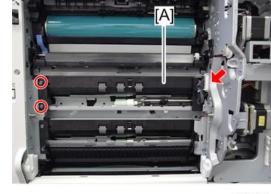
d129r855

4. Paper guide plate [A] (hook x 2)



d129r806

5. Harness cover [A] (x 1)



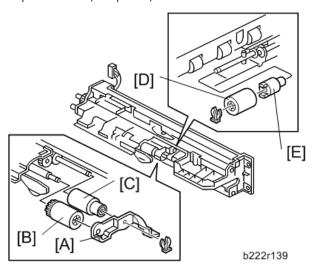
d129r807

6. Paper feed unit [A] (₹ x 2, ■ x 1)

Pick-Up, Feed and Separation Rollers

Tray 1 and Tray 2

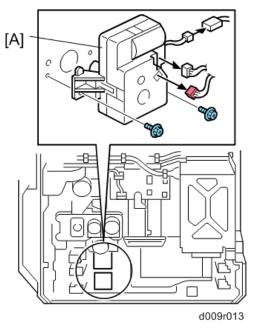
1. Paper feed unit (p.113)



- 3. Pick-up roller [B]
- 4. Feed roller [C]
- 5. Separation roller [D] and torque limiter [E] (${\color{orange}\overline{\mathbb{O}}} \times 1$)

Tray Lift Motor

1. Rear cover (p.82)

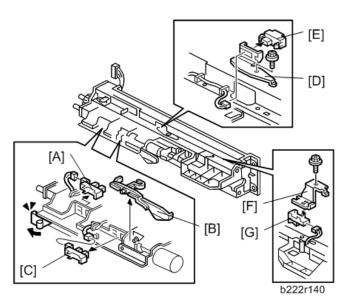


2. Tray lift motor 1 or 2 [A] (\mathscr{F} x 2, $\overset{\text{quantum}}{}$ x 3)

Relay, Tray Lift, Paper End and Paper Feed Sensors

Tray 1 and Tray 2

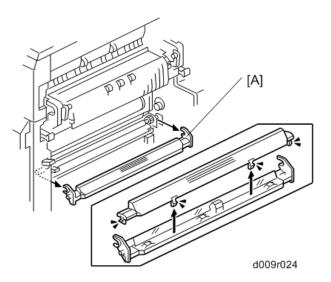
- 1. Right rear cover (p.83)
- 2. Duplex unit (p.134)
- 3. Paper feed unit (p.113)



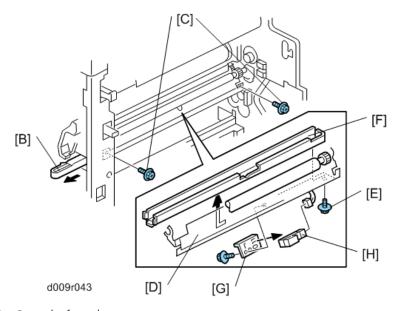
- 4. Tray lift sensor [A] (🕮 x 1)
- 5. Paper end feeler [B] and paper end sensor [C] (hook, 💖 x 1 each)
- 6. Relay sensor bracket [D] (* x 1)
- 7. Relay sensor [E] (🕮 x 1, hook)
- 8. Paper feed sensor bracket [F] (Fx 1)
- 9. Paper feed sensor [G] (🗐 x 1, hook)

Registration Sensor

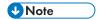
- 1. Right rear cover (p.83)
- 2. Duplex unit (p.134)
- 3. Paper feed unit for tray 1 (p.113 "Paper Feed Unit")
- 4. Paper Trays 1 and 2



5. Paper dust box [A]



- 6. Open the front door.
- 7. Pull out the paper dust container [B].
- 8. Remove two screws [C].



- This makes the paper guide [D] tilt a little bit. Now you can access the screw [E].
- 9. Dust container rail [F] ([E] x 1)
- 10. Sensor bracket [G] (x 1)



- You can only access the screw on the sensor bracket from the inside (paper tray location) of the machine.
- 11. Registration sensor [H] (🕮 x 1, hooks)

Reinstall the registration sensor

It is very difficult to secure the sensor bracket to the frame. First attach the sensor bracket with tape temporarily.

Δ

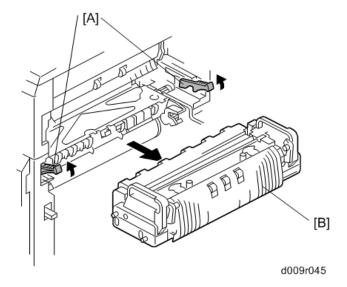
4

Fusing

Fusing Unit



- Turn off the main switch and wait until the fusing unit cools down before beginning any of the procedures in this section. The fusing unit can cause serious burns.
- 1. Turn off the main power switch.
- 2. Open the right door.



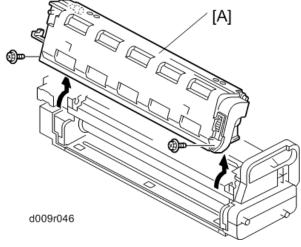
- 3. Pull up the lock levers [A].
- 4. Pull the fusing unit [B] until you hear a click.



- The lock levers lock the fusing unit again at this time to prevent the fusing unit from falling down.
- 5. Pull up the lock levers [A] again, and then remove the fusing unit [B].

Web Roller Unit

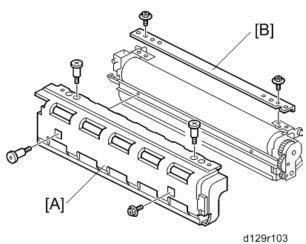
1. Fusing unit (p.119)



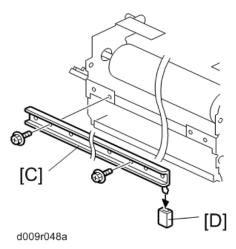
2. Web roller unit [A] (*x 2)

Brake Pad

1. Web roller unit (p.119)



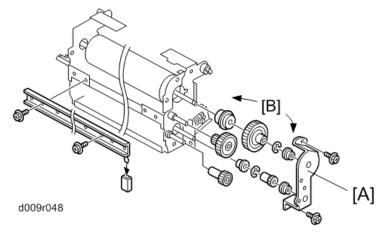
- 2. Web left cover [A] (Fx 1, stepped screw x 3)
- 3. Web top frame [B] (* x 2)



- 4. Web left frame [C] (* x 2)
- 5. Brake pad [D]

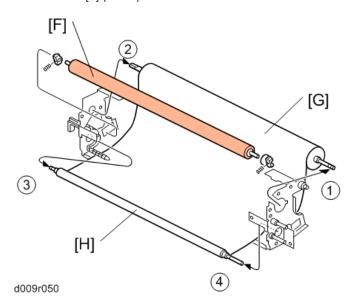
Web Holder Roller and Web Rollers

- 1. Web roller unit (p.119)
- 2. Web left cover (p.120 "Brake Pad")
- 3. Web top frame (p.120 "Brake Pad")
- 4. Web left frame (p.120 "Brake Pad")



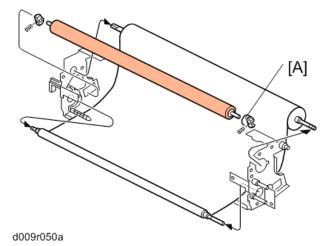
- 5. Front gear bracket [A] (Fx 2)
- 6. All gears and bushings (rear side) [B] (\mathbb{C} x 2)

- 7. Rear gear bracket [C] (x 2)
- 8. All gear and bushings (rear side) [D] (\mathbb{C} x 2, spring x 1)
- 9. Front bracket [E] (Fx 2)



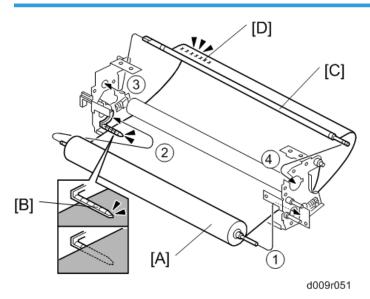
- 10. Web holder roller [F] (holder x 2, spring x 2)
- 11. Web take up roller [G] (1 \rightarrow 2)
- 12. Web supply roller [H] ($3 \rightarrow 4$)

Installing a new web holder roller

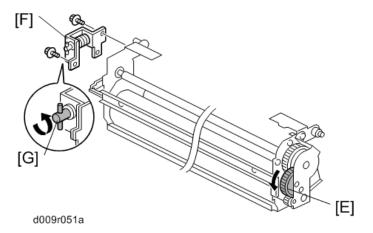


The holder [A] has a one-way clutch. Make sure that the holder [A] is set at the front side.

Installing new web rollers



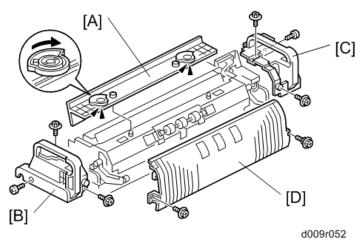
- 1. Install the web supply roller [A] first ($\mathfrak{I} \to \mathfrak{D}$). Make sure that the web sheet is under the pin [B].
- 2. Install the web take up roller [C] ($^{\textcircled{3}} \rightarrow ^{\textcircled{4}}$). Make sure that the printed number [D] is outside the web take up roller.
- 3. Reinstall the rear gear bracket (p.121 "Web Holder Roller and Web Rollers").
- 4. Reinstall the front and rear gears and bushings (p.121 "Web Holder Roller and Web Rollers").
- 5. Reinstall the rear gear bracket (p.121 "Web Holder Roller and Web Rollers").



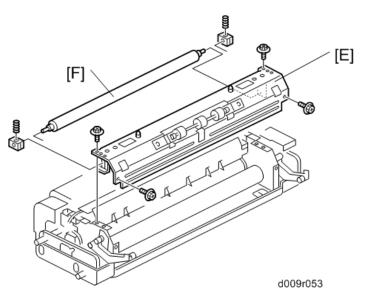
- 6. Turn the rear gear [E] in the arrow direction to remove the slack in the web sheet.
- 7. Reinstall the front gear bracket [F] (p.121 "Web Holder Roller and Web Rollers").
- 8. Turn the coupling [G] in the arrow direction to remove the slack in the web sheet.
- 9. Reinstall the web unit.
- 10. If you install a new cleaning web, reset SP 7806-008 (press "Execute" on the LCD).

Pressure Roller Cleaning Roller

1. Fusing unit (p.119)



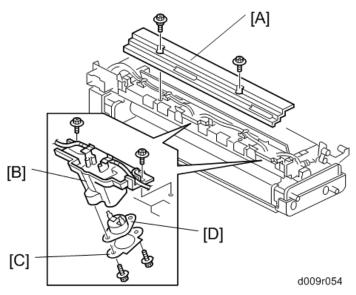
- 2. Fusing exit guide [A] (lock x 2)
- 3. Fusing front upper cover [B] (Fx 3)
- 4. Fusing rear upper cover [C] (F x 3)
- 5. Fusing outer guide [D] (front: Fx 1, rear: stepped screw x 1)



- 6. Cleaning roller unit [E] (*F x 4)
- 7. Pressure roller cleaning roller [F] (spring x 2, holder x 2)

Thermostats

- 1. Fusing unit (p.119)
- 2. Web roller unit (p.119)



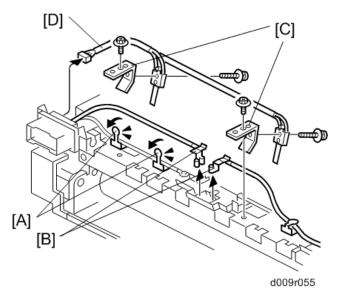
- 3. Fusing top cover [A] (front: $\mathscr{F} \times 1$, rear: stepped screw x 1)
- 4. Thermostat holder [B] (F x 2)

Thermistor

1. Fusing unit (p.119)

2. Web roller unit (p.119)

3. Fusing top cover (p.125 "Thermostats")



4. Pull the two tabs [A].

5. Disconnect the two terminals [B].

6. Sensor stays [C] (x 1 each)

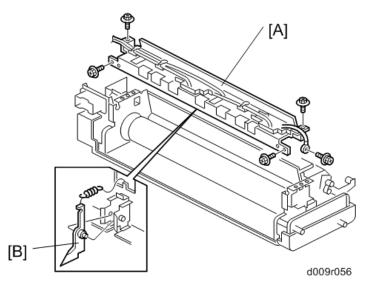
7. Thermistors [D] (x 2, 1)

Hot Roller Strippers

1. Fusing unit (p.119)

2. Web roller unit (p.119)

3. Fusing top cover (p.125 "Thermostats")



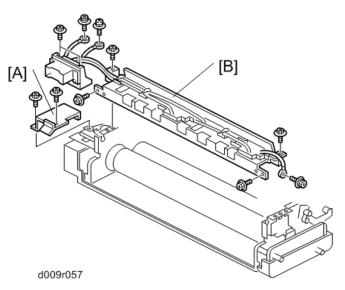
4. Fusing top frame [A] (*\bar{\bar{\rho}} \times 5)



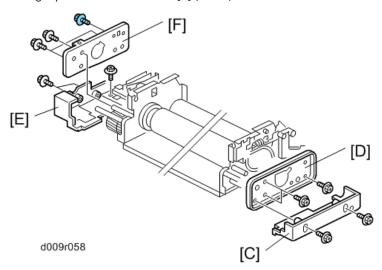
- The cords on this frame are still connected to the fusing unit at this time. Be careful not to damage the cords when removing the hot roller stripper [B].
- 5. Hot roller stripper [B] (spring x 1)

Fusing Lamps

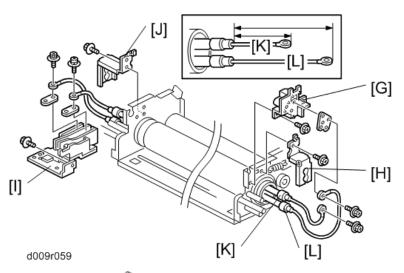
- 1. Fusing unit (p.119)
- 2. Web roller unit (p.119)
- 3. Fusing top cover (p.125 "Thermostats")



- 4. Connector cover [A] (x 2)
- 5. Fusing top frame with connector [B] ($\mathscr{F} \times 9$)



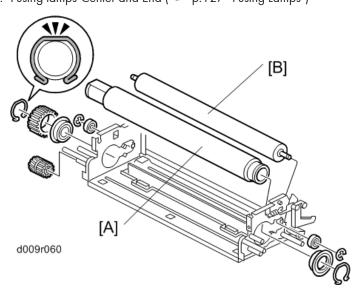
- 6. Fusing front lower cover [C] (*x 2)
- 7. Fusing front frame [D] (Fx 3)
- 8. Fusing rear lower cover [E] (*F x 2)
- 9. Fusing rear frame [F] (F x 5)



- 10. Terminal bracket [G] (*F x 4)
- 11. Front holder bracket [H] (x 1)
- 12. Terminal base [1] (* x 3)
- 13. Rear holder bracket [J] (** x 1)
- 14. Fusing lamp-Center (550W) [K]
- 15. Fusing lamp-End (750W) [L]

Hot Roller and Pressure Roller

1. Fusing lamps-Center and End (p.127 "Fusing Lamps")



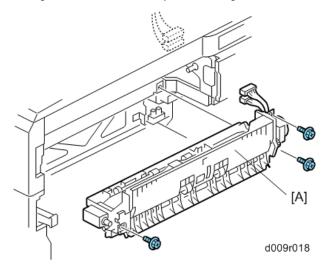
- 2. Hot roller [A] (snap ring \times 2, gear \times 2, bushing \times 2)
- 3. Pressure roller [B] (© x 2, bushing x 2)

4

Paper Exit

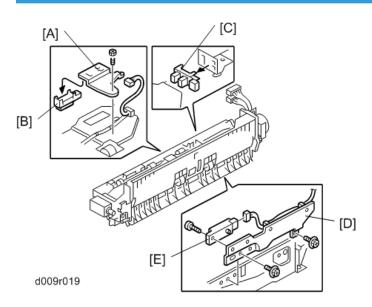
Paper Exit Unit

- 1. Fusing unit (p.119)
- 2. Fusing exhaust fan duct (p.166 "Fusing Exhaust Fan")



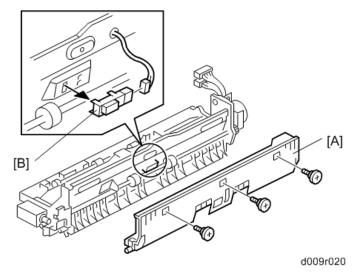
3. Paper exit unit [A] (** x 3, *** x 2)

Fusing Exit, Paper Overflow, and Paper Exit Sensors



- 2. Sensor bracket [A] (x 1)
- 3. Paper exit sensor [B] (🕮 x 1, hooks)
- 4. Paper overflow sensor [C] (🔎 x 1, hooks)
- 5. Sensor bracket [D] (x 2)
- 6. Fusing exit sensor [E] ($F \times 1$, I = 1

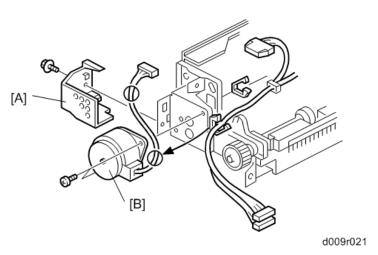
Junction Jam Sensor



- 1. Paper exit unit (p.131)
- 2. Paper guide [A] (🗗 x 3)
- 3. Junction jam sensor [B] (🔎 x 1)

Paper Exit Motor

1. Paper exit unit (p.131)

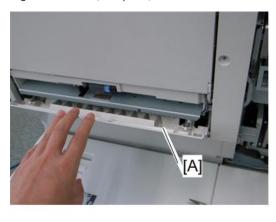


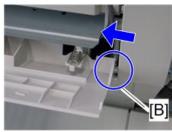
- Motor cover [A] (x 1)
 Exit motor [B] (x 2, x 2, x 1)

Duplex

Duplex Unit

1. Right rear cover (p.83)





d009r554

- 2. Open the lower right cover [A] at the duplex unit.
- 3. Release the tab [B] and remove the lower door (spring x 2).
- 4. Open the right door.





d009r555

5. Release the front link [C] ($\sqrt[6]{x}$ 1).

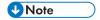


d009r557

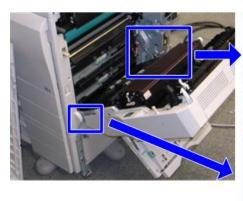
6. Keep the right door fully open.



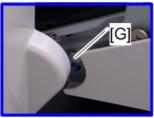
7. Push up the duplex unit a little bit, while pressing the bracket [D] to lock the spring [E].



• Do not let the duplex unit open fully before releasing the wire (step 8). Otherwise, the lock for the spring [E] is released.





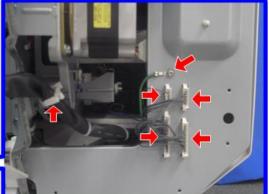


d009r558

4

- 8. Wire [F] (🖾 x 1)
- 9. Push the projection [G].





m1322089

10. Duplex unit (🔎 x 3, 🖨 x 1, ground cable x 1)

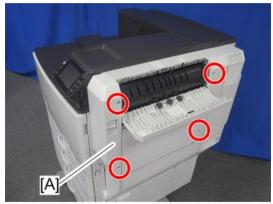
4

Right Door Cover



m1322087

1. Open the duplex door [A] and by-pass tray.

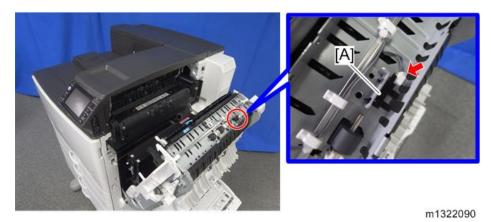


m1322088

2. Right door cover [A] (x 4)

Duplex Door Sensor

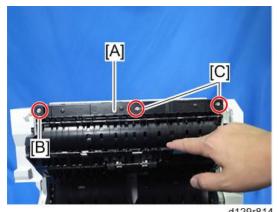
1. Right door cover (p.137)



2. Duplex door sensor [A] (💷 x 1, hook)

Duplex Entrance Sensor

- 1. Right door cover (p.137)
- 2. Open the right door.



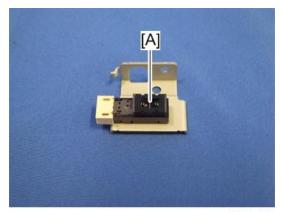
0128

3. Duplex entrance guide [A] ([B]: $\Re x1$, [C]: Stepped screw x 2)



d129r815

4. Duplex entrance sensor bracket [A] (*x 1, * 1)

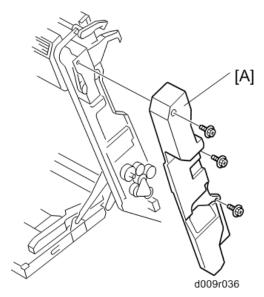


d129r816

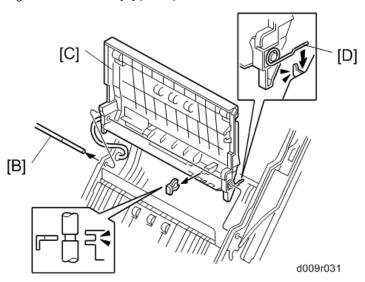
5. Duplex entrance sensor [A] (hooks)

Duplex Exit Sensor

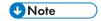
1. Transfer belt unit (p.109)



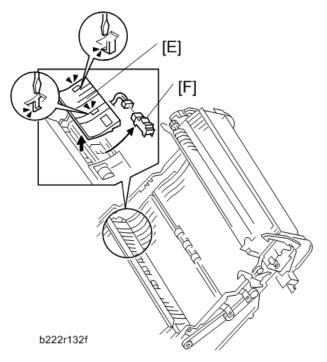
2. Right door rear cover [A] (*\bar{k} x 3)



- 3. Remove the shaft [B] (\heartsuit x 1).
- 4. Transfer belt unit holder [C] (🟴 x 1, 🗐 x 1)



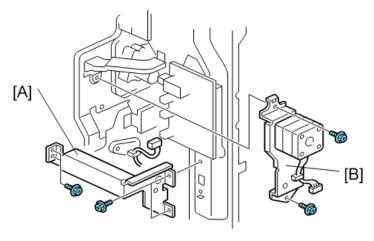
• When re-installing the transfer belt unit holder, make sure that the spring [D] correctly hooks onto the frame.



- 5. Guide plate [E] (two hooks)
- 6. Duplex exit sensor [F] (🗐 x 1, hooks)

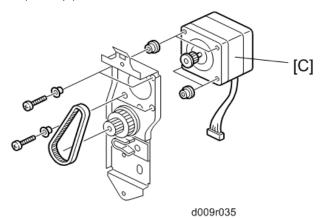
Duplex/By-pass Motor

- 1. Rear cover (p.82)
- 2. Right rear cover (p.83)



d009r034

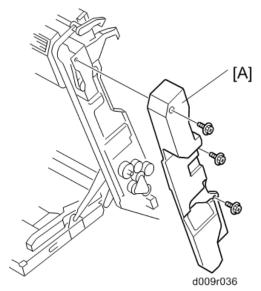
4. Duplex/By-pass motor bracket [B] (₱ x 2, 💵 x 1)



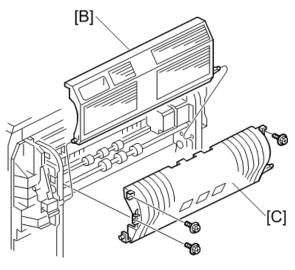
5. Duplex/By-pass motor [C] (\mathscr{F} x 4, bushing x 8, timing belt x 1)

Duplex Inverter Motor

- 1. Right door cover (p.137)
- 2. Open the right door.

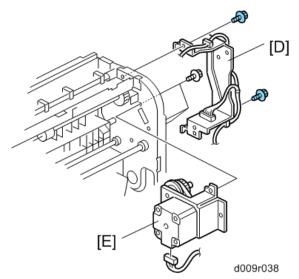


3. Right door rear cover [A] (*x 3)



d129r100

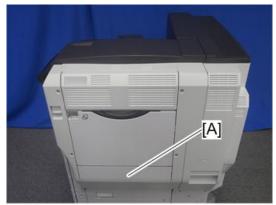
- 4. Duplex door [B]
- 5. Duplex guide plate [C] (x 3)



- 6. Bracket [D] (F x 2)
- 7. Duplex inverter motor [E] (x 3, 1 x 1)

By-pass

By-pass Paper Size Sensor/By-pass Paper Length Sensor



m1322091

1. Open the lower right cover [A].



d129r808

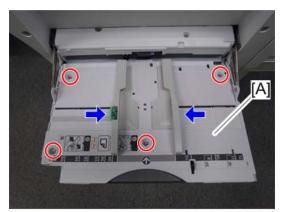
2. Disconnect the connector and clamp.

Δ



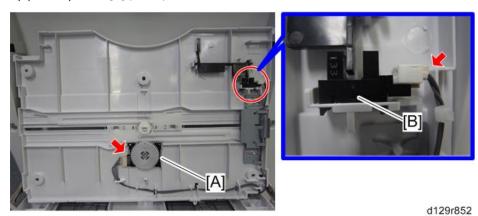
m1322092

3. Open the by-pass tray [A].



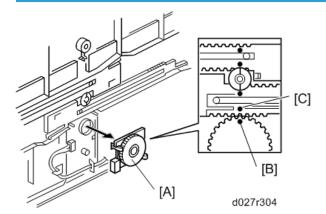
d129r875

- 4. Move the side fences to the center.
- 5. By-pass tray cover [A] (* x 4)



- 6. By-pass paper size sensor [A] (🗐 x 1)
- 7. By-pass paper length sensor [B] (🕮 x 1)

When reinstalling the by-pass paper size sensor



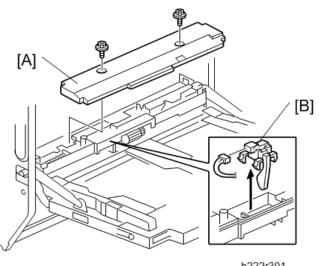
- 1. Adjust the projection [A] of the left side fence bar (it must be centered).
- 2. Install the by-pass paper size detection switch so that the hole [B] in this switch faces the projection [C] of the left side fence bar.
- 3. Reassemble the machine.
- 4. Plug in and turn on the main power switch.
- 5. Check this switch operation with SP5803-024 (By-pass: Paper Size Sensor< Input Check).

- Display on the LCD -

Paper Size	Display	Paper Size	Display
A3 SEF	00001110	A5 SEF	00001011
B4 SEF	00001100	B6 SEF	00000011
A4 SEF	00001101	A6 SEF	00000111
B5 SEF	00001001	Smaller A6 SEF	00001111

By-pass Paper End Sensor

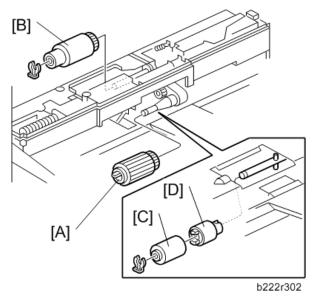
1. Right door cover (p.137)



- b222r301
- 2. By-pass feed unit cover [A] (** x 2).
- 3. By-pass paper end sensor [B] (🗐 x 1, hooks)

By-pass Pick-up, Feed and Separation Roller, Torque Limiter

- 1. Right door cover (p.137)
- 2. By-pass feed unit cover (p.146 "By-pass Paper End Sensor")

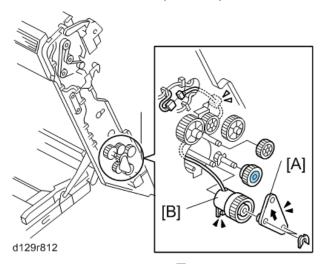


- 3. By-pass pick-up roller [A] (hook)
- 4. By-pass feed roller [B] (🖾 x 1)

- 5. By-pass separation roller [C] (🕅 x 1)
- 6. Torque limiter [D]

By-pass Feed Clutch

- 1. Open the right door.
- 2. Right door rear cover (p.139 "Duplex Exit Sensor")
- 3. Transfer belt unit (p.109)
- 4. Transfer belt unit holder (p.139 "Duplex Exit Sensor")



- 5. By-pass feed clutch holder [A] ((() x 2)
- 6. By-pass feed clutch [B] (🔎 x 1, 🚔 x 1)

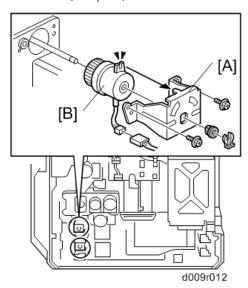
4

Drive Area

Paper Feed Clutch

Tray 1 and Tray 2

1. Rear cover (p.82)

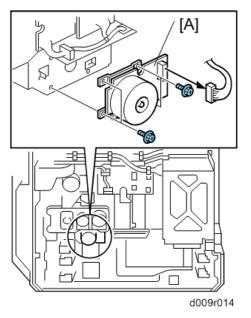


- 2. Clutch bracket [A] (*x 2, (x 1, bushing x 1)
- 3. Paper feed clutch [B] (x 1)

Development Paddle Motor

1. Rear cover (p.82)

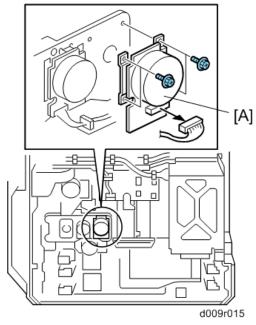




2. Development paddle motor [A] (\mathscr{F} x 4, $\overset{\blacksquare}{\mathbb{Z}}$ x 1)

Transfer/Development Motor

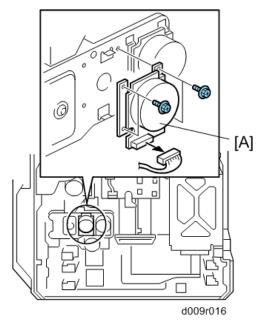
1. Rear cover (p.82)



2. Transfer/development motor [A] (x 4, x 1)

Drum Motor

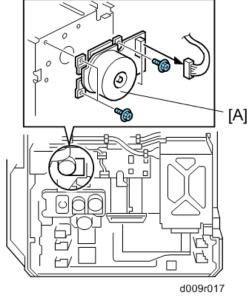
1. Rear cover (p.82)



2. Drum motor [A] (x 4, 1 x 1)

Fusing Motor

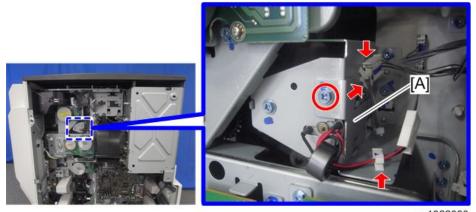
1. Rear cover (p.82)



2. Fusing motor [A] (** x 4, *** x 1)

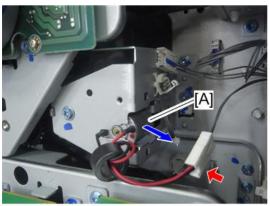
Web Motor

1. Rear cover (p.82)



m1322093

2. Bracket [A] (₹x 1, ♣x 2, ♣x 1)

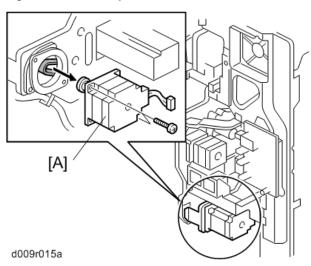


m1322094

3. Web motor [A] (x 1)

Paper Feed Motor

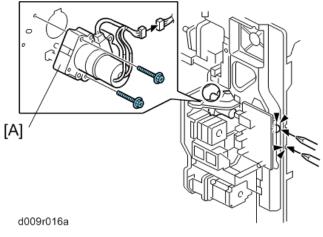
- 1. Rear cover (p.82)
- 2. Right rear cover (p.83)



3. Paper feed motor [A] (** x 2, *** x 1)

Transfer Belt Contact Motor

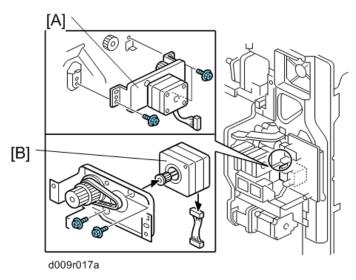
- 1. Rear cover (p.82)
- 2. Right rear cover (p.83)



3. Transfer belt contact motor [A] ($\mathscr{F} \times 2$, $\overset{\text{quantum}}{\longrightarrow} \times 1$)

Registration Motor

- 1. Rear cover (p.82)
- 2. Right rear cover (p.83)

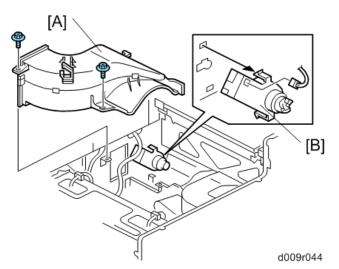


- 3. Registration motor bracket [A] (*\begin{align*} x 3, \quad \quad x 1)
- 4. Registration motor [B] (*\begin{align*} x 2, \quad \quad x 1)

Toner Supply Motor

1. Left cover (p.82)

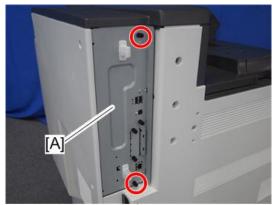
- 2. Upper inner cover (p.81 "Front Door, Upper and Lower Inner Cover")
- 3. Output Tray (p.87)



- 4. Exhaust duct [A] (** x 2)
- 5. Toner supply motor [B] (hooks, 🕮 x 1)

Electrical Components

Controller Unit



m1322059

1. Controller unit [A] (Fx 2)

Controller Board

ACAUTION

- The battery on the control board can explode if replaced incorrectly.
- Dispose of the old battery in accordance with the instructions.

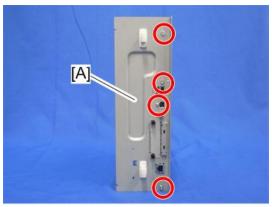
Before Replacing the Controller Board in the Model without HDD

When you replace the controller board in a machine without a HDD, address book data can be copied from an old controller board to a new controller board using an SD card.

Copy the address book data to an SD card from the flash ROM on the controller board with SP5846-051 if possible.

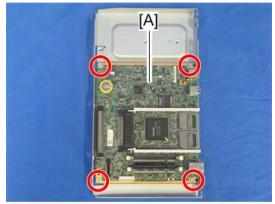
Replacement Procedure

- 1. Controller unit (p.156)
- 2. HDD unit (if it has been installed.)



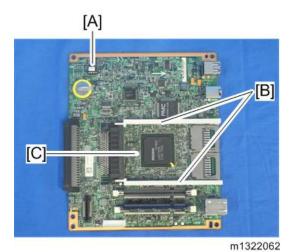
m1322064

3. Controller right bracket [A] (*x 4)



m1322060

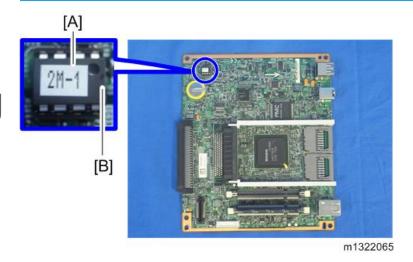
4. Controller board assembly [A] (** x 4)



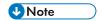
5. NVRAM [A]

- 6. Interface rails [B] (hooks each)
- 7. DIMM-RAM (If it is installed.)
- 8. Controller board [C]

When Installing the New Controller Board



- 1. Remove the NVRAM [A] from the old controller board.
- 2. Install it on the new controller board after you replace the controller board.
- 3. Replace the NVRAM if the NVRAM on the old controller board is defective.



- Make sure the NVRAM is correctly installed on the controller board. Insert the NVRAM in the NVRAM slot with the "half-moon" pointing [B] to the right side.
- Make sure you print out the SMC reports ("SP (Mode Data List)" and "Logging Data") before
 you replace the NVRAM.

CAUTION

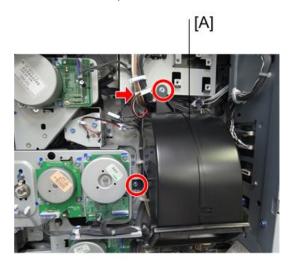
- Keep NVRAM away from any objects that can cause static electricity. Static electricity can damage NVRAM data.
- Make sure the NVRAM is correctly installed on the controller board.
- Make sure that the DIP-switch settings on the old controller board are the same for the new controller board. Do not change the DIP switches on the controller board in the field.

After Installing the Controller Board

- For a model without a HDD, do SP5846-052 to copy back the address book to the flash ROM on the controller board from the SD card to which you have already copied the address book data if possible.
- 2. If the customer is using the data encryption feature, the encryption key must be restored.
- 3. Do the touch screen calibration. (p.174 "Touch Screen Calibration")
- 4. Turn the main power switch off/on.

Mother Board

- 1. Rear cover (p.82)
- 2. Controller unit (p.156)

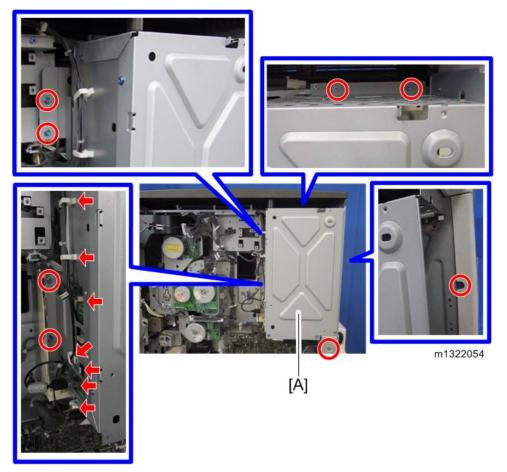


d129r104

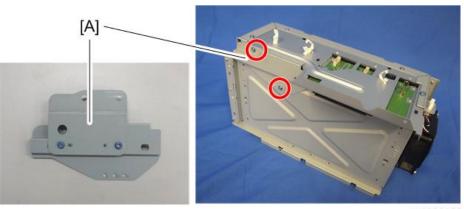
3. Exhaust fan duct [A] (x 2, 1)



4. Screw of the top rear cover (Fx 1)

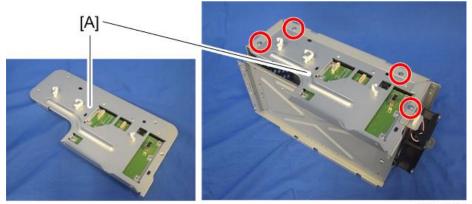


5. Controller box [A] (₹ x 8, 🚅 x 4, 🛱 x 3)



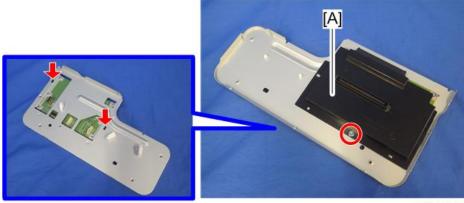
m1322055

6. Controller light bracket [A] (x 2)



m1322056

7. Controller box right cover [A] (\mathscr{F} x 4)



m1322057

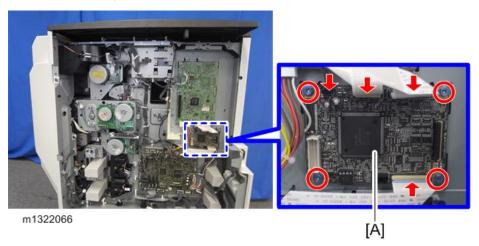
8. Mother board bracket [A] (Fx 1, hook x 2)

m1322058

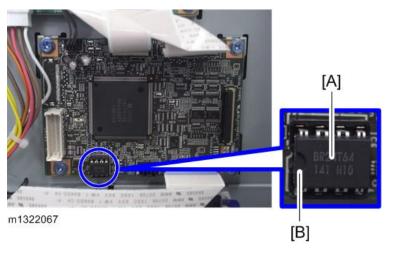
9. Mother board [A] (* x 6)

BCU

1. Controller box (p.159 "Mother Board")



2. BCU [A] (x 4, 4 x 4)



- 3. Remove the NVRAM [A] from the old board and install it on the new board.
- 4. Set the DIP switches on the new BCU board to the same settings as the old board.



 Make sure the NVRAM is correctly installed on the BCU. Insert the NVRAM in the NVRAM slot with the "half-moon" pointing [B] to the left side.

When installing the new BCU

- 1. Remove the NVRAM from the old BCU.
- 2. Install the NVRAM on the new BCU after you replace the BCU.
- 3. Reassemble the machine.
- 4. Turn on the main power switch.
- 5. Enter the serial number with SP5-811-004.
- 6. Turn the main power switch off and on.
- 7. Do the touch screen calibration. (p.174 "Touch Screen Calibration")



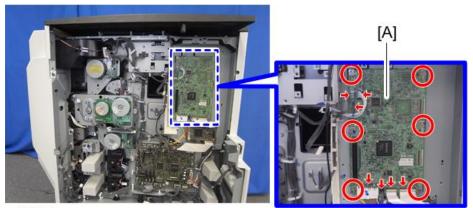
Make sure you print out the SMC reports ("SP (Mode Data List)" and "Logging Data") before you
replace the NVRAM.

ACAUTION

 Keep NVRAM away from any objects that can cause static electricity. Static electricity can damage NVRAM data.

Bridge Board

1. Controller box (p.159 "Mother Board")

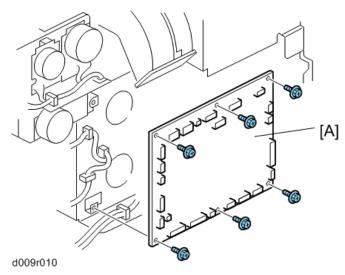


m1322068

2. Bridge board [A] (x 6, 1 x 7)

IOB

1. Rear cover (p.82)

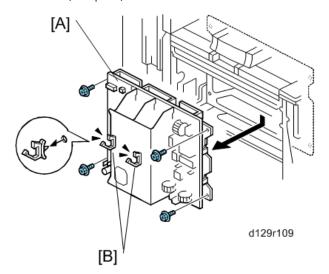


2. IOB [A] (x 6, 🕮 x all)

4

PSU

1. Left cover (p.82)

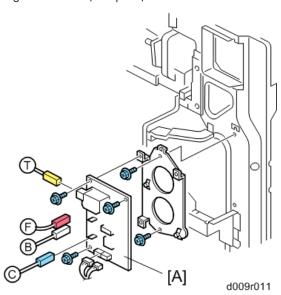


RTB 21 Avoid touching the ares of the PSU which may be charged.

- 2. PSU [A] (x 4, 1 x all)
- 3. Two clamps [B] (These clamps will be used for the new PSU.)

High Voltage Power Supply

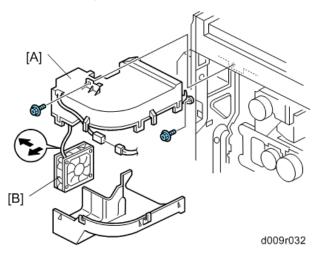
- 1. Rear cover (p.82)
- 2. Right rear cover (p.83)



3. High voltage power supply board [A] (*x 5, * x all)

Fusing Exhaust Fan

1. Rear cover (p.82)



- 2. Fusing exhaust duct [A] (F x 2, III x 1)
- 3. Separate the duct (hooks).
- 4. Fusing exhaust fan [B]

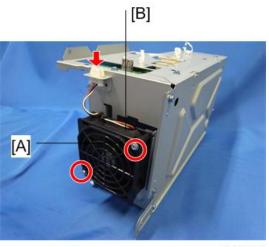
When installing the fusing exhaust fan

Make sure that the fusing fan is installed with its decal facing the right side of the machine.

Controller Fan

1. Controller box (p.159 "Mother Board")





d129r117

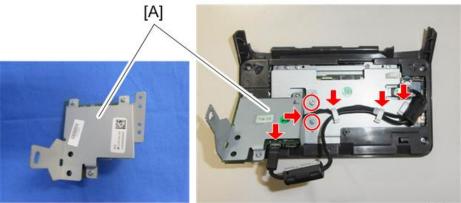
- 2. Fan cover [A] (x 2)
- 3. Controller fan [B] (🚅 x 1)

When installing the controller fan

Make sure that the controller fan is installed with its decal facing upward.

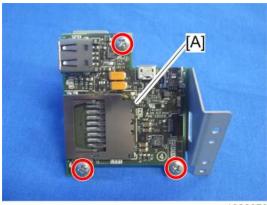
SD USB Board

1. Operation panel (p.84)



m1322072

2. SD USB board bracket [A] (small 🖗 x 2, 🗐 x 2, 🗐 x 3)

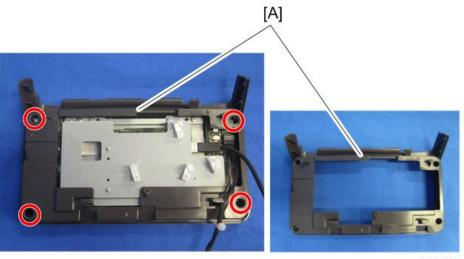


m1322073

3. SD USB board [A] (🗗 x 3)

LCDC Board

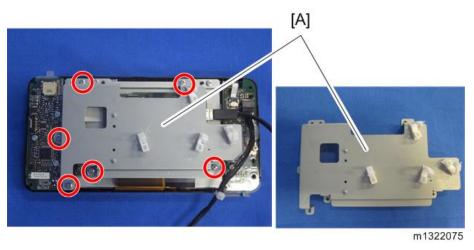
1. SD USB Board (p.167)



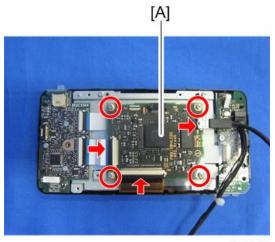
m1322074

2. Operation panel inner bracket [A] (small \mathscr{F} x 4)





3. LCDC bracket [A] (small F x 6)



m1322076

4. LCDC board [A] (small 🖗 x 4, 📢 x 3)

When Installing the New LCDC Board

Do the touch screen calibration after you replace the LCDC board. (**p.174 "Touch Screen Calibration")

Print Adjustments

Overview

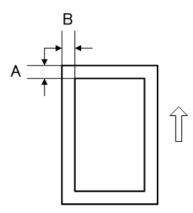
Perform these adjustments after replacing any of the following:

- Polygon Mirror Motor
- Paper Side Fence
- Memory All Clear

Printing

- 1. Make sure paper is installed correctly in each paper tray before you start these adjustments.
- 2. Use the Trimming Area Pattern (SP2-109-1, No. 14) to print the test pattern for the following procedures.

Registration - Leading Edge/Side-to-Side



b195r827

 Check the leading edge registration [A] for each paper type and paper feed station, and adjust it with following SP modes.

	SP No.	Specification
Tray: Plain	SP1-001-1	
Tray: Thick 1	SP1-001-2	
Tray: Thick 2	SP1-001-3	
By-pass: Plain	SP1-001-4	0.100
By-pass: Thick 1	SP1-001-5	0 ±9.0 mm
By-pass: Thick 2	SP1-001-6	
Duplex: Plain	SP1-001-7	
Duplex: Thick 1	SP1-001-8	

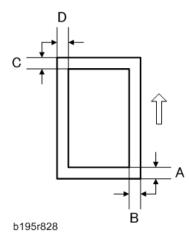
2. Check side-to-side registration [B] for each paper feed station, and adjust with the following SP modes.

	SP No.	Specification
By-pass	SP1-002-1	
Tray 1	SP1-002-2	
Tray 2	SP1-002-3	
Tray 3	SP1-002-4	0 ±4.0 mm
Tray 4	SP1-002-5	
LCT	SP1-002-6	
Duplex	SP1-002-7	

Blank Margin



• If the leading edge/side-to-side registration cannot be adjusted within specifications, adjust the leading/left side edge blank margin.



1. Check the trailing edge [A], right edge [B], leading edge [C] and left edge [D] blank margins, and adjust them with the following SP modes.

	SP No.	Specification	
Leading Edge	SP2-103-1	20 [004-00]	
Trailing Edge	SP2-103-2	3.0 mm [0.0 to 9.0 mm]	
Left	SP2-103-3	2.0 mm [0.0 to 9.0 mm]	
Right	SP2-103-4		
Duplex: Trailing Edge: L Size: Plain	SP2-103-5	1.0 mm [0.0 to 4.0 mm]	
Duplex: Trailing Edge: M Size: Plain	SP2-103-6	0.8 mm [0.0 to 4.0 mm]	
Duplex: Trailing Edge: S Size: Plain	SP2-103-7	0.6 mm [0.0 to 4.0 mm]	
Duplex: Left: Plain	SP2-103-8	0.2 [0.0 to 1.5]	
Duplex: Right: Plain	SP2-103-9	0.3 mm [0.0 to 1.5 mm]	
Duplex: Trailing Edge: L Size: Thick	SP2-103-10	0.8 mm [0.0 to 4.0 mm]	
Duplex: Trailing Edge: M Size: Thick	SP2-103-11	0.6 mm [0.0 to 4.0 mm]	

	SP No.	Specification
Duplex: Trailing Edge: S Size: Thick	SP2-103-12	0.4 mm [0.0 to 4.0 mm]
Duplex: Left: Thick	SP2-103-13	0.1 [0.0 to 1.5]
Duplex: Right: Thick	SP2-103-14	0.1 mm [0.0 to 1.5 mm]

• L Size: Paper length is 297.1 mm or more.

• M Size: Paper length is 216.1 to 297 mm

• S Size: Paper length is 216 mm or less.

Main Scan Magnification

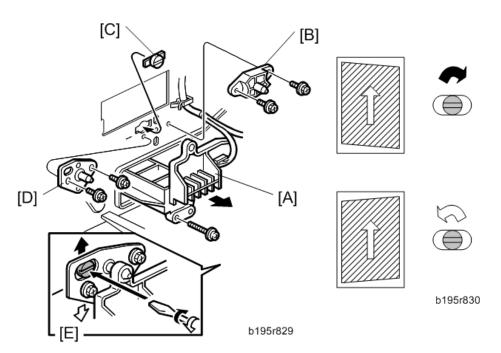
- 1. Use SP2-109-001 no 5 (Grid Vertical Line) to print a single dot pattern.
- 2. Check magnification, and then SP2-102-001 (Magnification Adjustment Main Scan) to adjust magnification if required. Specification: ±1%.

Parallelogram Image Adjustment

Do the following procedure if a parallelogram prints while adjusting the printing registration or printing margin using a trimming area pattern.

The following procedure should be done after adjusting the side-to-side registration for each paper tray station.

Use SP2-109-001 No. 14 (Trimming Area) to determine whether a parallelogram image appears. If the parallelogram pattern appears, perform the following procedure.



- 1. Laser unit [A]
- 2. Bracket [B] (x2)
- 3. Install adjustment cam [C] (P/N: A2309003).
- 4. Secure positioning pin [D] (P/N A2309004) with the two screws removed with the bracket [B]. Do not tighten the screws at this time.
- 5. To adjust the position of the laser unit [E]
 - 1) Adjust the laser unit position by turning the adjustment cam. (See the illustration above.)
 - 2) Tighten the adjustment bracket.
 - 3) Print the trimming area pattern to check the image. If the results are not satisfactory, repeat steps 5-1) to 5-3).

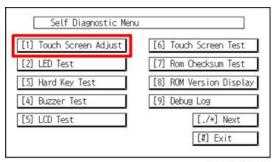
Touch Screen Calibration

Do the following procedure to calibrate the touch screen after you clear the memory, replace the operation panel, LCDC board or NVRAM, or if the touch panel detection function is not working correctly.



- Do not attempt to use items [2] to [5], and [7] on the Self Diagnostic Menu. These items are for design use only.
- 1. Turn on the main switch.

2. Press the "Simple Screen" key 4 times, the "Suspend" key one time, and then the "Simple Screen" key 4 times to open the Self Diagnostic menu.



w_m1322110

3. On the touch panel screen, press "[1] Touch Screen Adjust".



w_m1322111

4. Use a pointed (not sharp!) tool to press the mark ⁺ that appears in the upper left, lower right, lower left, center, and upper right in turns on the LCD panel.



w m1322115

- 5. Press "[#] OK".
- 6. Press "[6] Touch Screen Test" on the Self Diagnostic menu.



w_m1322116

7. Touch the nine points circled in red in the illustration above, and make sure that each point (both x and y) is within +/- 5 dots of the original "+" displayed.



w_m1322117

- 8. When you are finished, press "[#] OK" on the screen.
- 9. Touch "[#] Exit" on the screen to close the Self Diagnostic menu and save the calibration settings.

5. Service Tables

Service Program Mode

CAUTION

• Make sure that the data-in LED (❖) is not on before you go into the SP mode. This LED indicates that some data is coming to the machine. When the LED is on, wait for the machine to process the data.

Service Program Mode Operation

Service Mode Lock/Unlock

At locations where the machine contains sensitive data, the customer engineer cannot operate the machine until the Administrator turns the service mode lock off. This function makes sure that work on the machine is always done with the permission of the Administrator.

 If you cannot go into the SP mode, ask the Administrator to log in with the User Tool and then set "Service Mode Lock" to OFF. After he or she logs in:

[User Tools] > [System Settings] > [Administrator Tools] > [Service Mode Lock] > [OFF]

- This unlocks the machine and lets you get access to all the SP codes.
- The service technician can do servicing on the machine and turn the machine off and on. It is not necessary to ask the Administrator to log in again each time the machine is turned on.
- 2. If you must use the printer bit switches, go into the SP mode and set SP5169 to "1".
- 3. After machine servicing is completed:
 - Change SP5169 from "1" to "0".
 - Turn the machine off and on.
 - Tell the administrator that you completed servicing the machine.
 - The administrator will then set the "Service Mode Lock" to ON.

Service Program Mode Tables

Please note these general changes in this section:

- Group 8 (Data Log 2) is a new group of counters.
- Along with the addition of Group 8, many of the Group 7 counters have been removed.

Notation	What it means
[range / default / step]	Example: [-9 to \pm 9 / 0 / 0.1 mm step]. The setting can be adjusted in the range \pm 9, value reset to \pm 3.0 after an NVRAM reset, and the value can be changed in 0.1 mm steps with each key press.
*	Value stored in NVRAM. After a RAM reset, this default value (factory setting) is restored.
DFU	Denotes "Design or Factory Use". Do not change this value.
Japan only	The feature or item is for Japan only. Do not change this value.
SSP	This denotes a "Special Service Program" mode.

5

Service Program Mode Tables

SP Tables

There are the most commonly used SP codes in the "Service Main SP Tables" and "Engine Main SP Tables - 1 to - 9" of "Main Chapters".

See "Appendices" for the following information:

- Service SP Tables
- Engine SP Tables

Service Main SP Tables

SP1-xxx

1001	Bit Swit	Bit Switch				
001	Bit Swit	Bit Switch 1		1		
	bit 0	DFU	-	-		
	bit 1	DFU	-	-		
	bit 2	DFU	-	-		
	bit 3	No I/O Timeout	0: Disable	1: Enable		
		Enable: The MFP I/O Timeout setting will have no effect. I/O Timeouts will never occur.				
	bit 4	SD Card Save Mode	0: Disable	1: Enable		
		Enable: Print jobs will be saved to an SD Card in the	GW SD slot.			
	bit 5	DFU	-	-		
	bit 6	DFU	-	-		
	bit 7	[RPCS,PCL]: Printable area frame border	0: Disable	1: Enable		
		Enable: The machine prints all RPCS and PCL jobs w printable area.	ith a border on	the edges of the		

1001	Bit Switch
------	------------

5

002	Bit Swit	Bit Switch 2		1	
	bit 0	DFU	-	-	
	bit 1	DFU	-	-	
	bit 2	Applying a collation Type	Shift Collate	Normal Collate	
		A collation type (shift or normal) will be applied to all jobs that do not already have a 'Collate Type' configured.			
		₩Note			
		If #5-0 is enabled, this Bit Switch has no effect.			
	bit 3	[PCL5e/c,PS]: PDL Auto Switching	0: Enable	1: Disable	
		Disable: The MFPs ability to change the PDL processor mid-job.			
		Some host systems submit jobs that contain both PS of switching is disabled, these jobs will not be printed p		f Auto PDL	
	bit 4	DFU	-	-	
	bit 5	DFU	-	-	
	bit 6	DFU	-	-	
	bit 7	DFU	-	-	

1001	Bit Switch
------	------------

003	Bit Swit	Bit Switch 3		1	
	bit 0	DFU	-	-	
	bit 1	DFU	-	-	
	bit 2	[PCL5e/c]: Legacy HP compatibility	0: Disable	1: Enable	
		Enable: Uses the same left margin as older HP models such as HP4000/HP8000. In other words, the left margin defined in the job (usually " <esc>*r0A") will be changed to "<esc>*r1A"</esc></esc>			
	bit 3	DFU	-	-	
	bit 4	DFU	-	-	
	bit 5	DFU	-	-	
	bit 6	DFU	-	-	
	bit 7	DFU	-	-	

1001	Bit Swit	Bit Switch				
004	Bit Swit	rch 4	0	1		
	bit 0	DFU	-	-		
	bit 1	DFU	-	-		
	bit 2	DFU	-	-		
	bit 3	IPDS print-side reversal	0: Disable	1: Enable		
		Enable: Increases printing speed but simplex pages may be printed on the back side of the sheet.				
	bit 4	DFU	-	-		
	bit 5	DFU	-	-		
	bit 6	DFU	-	-		
	bit 7	IPDS support tools	0: Disable	1: Enable		
	Enable: Enables the port for IPDS support tools.					

1001

005	Bit Swi	tch 5	0	1	
		Show "Collate Type", "Staple Type" and "Punch Type" buttons on the operation panel.	Disable	Enable	
	If enabled, users will be able to configure a Collate Type, Staple Type, and Punch bit 0 Type from the operation panel. The available types will depend on the device and configured options.				
		After enabling the function, the settings will appear u	ınder:		
		"User Tools > Printer Features > System"			
	bit 1	Multiple copies if a paper size or type mismatch occurs	0: Disable (Single copy)	1: Enable (Multiple copy)	
		If a paper size or type mismatch occurs during the printing of multiple copies, only a single copy is output by default. Using this Bit Switch, the device can be configured to print all copies even if a paper mismatch occurs.			
	bit 2	Prevent SDK applications from altering the contents of a job	0: Disable	1: Enable	
		If this switch is enabled, SDK applications will not be able to alter print data. This is achieved by preventing SDK applications from accessing a module called the "GPS Filter".			
		Note: The main purpose of this switch is for troubleshooting the effects of SDK applications on data.			
	bit 3	[PS] PS Criteria	Pattern3	Pattern 1	
		Change the number of PS criterion used by the PS in job is PS data or not.	nterpreter to de	termine whether a	
		Pattern3: includes most PS commands.			
		Pattern1: A small number of PS tags and headers			
	bit 4	Increase max number of the stored jobs to 1000 jobs.	Disable (100)	Enable (1000)	
		Enable: Changes the maximum number of jobs that can be stored on the HDD via Job Type settings to 1000. The default is 100.			
	bit 5	DFU	-	-	

Ь	oit 6	Method for determining the image rotation for the edge to bind on.	0: Disable	1: Enable		
		If enabled, the image rotation will be performed as they were in the specifications of older models for the binding of pages of mixed orientation jobs.				
		The old models are below:				
		- PCL: Pre-04A models				
		- PS/PDF/RPCS:Pre-05S models				
b	oit 7	Letterhead mode printing	0: Disable	1: Enable (Duplex)		
		Routes all pages through the duplex unit.				
		If this is disabled, simplex pages or the last page of not routed through the duplex unit. This could result printed pages.				
		Only affects pages specified as Letterhead paper.				

1001	Bit Switch					
006	Bit Swit	Bit Switch 6 DFU				
1001	Bit Swit	ch				
007	Bit Swit	Bit Switch 7 0 1				
		Print path	0: Disable	1: Enable		
	bit 0 If enabled, simplex pages (in mixed simplex/duplex PS/PCL5 jobs only) and page of an odd paged duplex job (PS, PCL5, PCL6), are always routed throu duplex unit. Not having to switch paper paths increases the print speed slightly					
	bit 1 to 7	DFU	-	-		
1001	Bit Switch					
008	Bit Switch 8 DFU					
	bit 0 to 3	DFU	-	-		

	bit 4	PCL edge to edge printing setting	0: Disable (Standard)	1: Enable (BMS)
		Switches the edge to edge printing setting for custom-made machines (BMS).		es (BMS).
	bit 5 to 7	DFU	-	-

1001	Bit Switch				
009	Bit Swi	tch 9	0	1	
	bit 0	PDL Auto Detection timeout of jobs submitted via USB or Parallel Port (IEEE 1284).	"Disabled (Immediatel y)"	"Enabled (10 seconds)"	
	Sil C	To be used if PDL auto-detection fails. A failure of PD necessarily mean that the job can't be printed. This be to time-out immediately (default) upon failure or to w	it switch tells th	e device whether	
	bit 1	DFU	-	-	
	bit 2	Job Cancel	Disabled (Not cancelled)	Enabled (Cancelled)	
		If this bit switch, all jobs will be cancelled after a jam occurs. Note: If this bitsw is enabled, printing under the following conditions might result in problems: - Job submission via USB or Parallel Port - Spool printing (WIM >Configuration > Device Settings > System)			
	bit 3	PCL/PS bypass tray paper rotation (SEF/LEF)	0: Disable	1: Enable	
	This bitsw causes the device to revert to the behavior of previous generations. It on takes effect if "Bypass Tray Setting Priority" = "Driver/Command". Previous spec (bitsw=1): If a standard sized paper mismatch occurred in the bypastray, the MFP always prompted for SEF paper. If this bitsw=0 (default) then in the event of a standard sized paper mismatch, the MFP will always prompt for paper of the rotation (SEF/LEF) determined by the MF bypass tray paper setting or by the bypass tray sensor.			red in the bypass	

bit 4	Response to PJL USTATUS when multiple collated copies are printed	0: Disable	1: Enable
	When enabled, if multiple collated copies are printer responds to PJL USTATUS with the number of pages device will return the total number of pages for all co	in the current c	•
Bit 5 to 7	DFU	-	-

1001	Bit Swit	Bit Switch		
010	Bit Swit	Bit Switch 10		1
	bit 0 to 4	DFU	-	-
	bit 5	List / Test Print Lock	0: Disable	1: Enable
		If enabled, you can lock or unlock the [List/Test Print] items under the Pinter Features menu when the Store and Skip Errored Job Function is on.		ne Pinter Features
	Bit 6	Optional charge machines	-	-
		If enabled, you can use the optional charge machines when the Store and Skip Errored Job Function is on.	0: Disable	1: Enable
	Bit 7	DFU	-	-

1001	Bit Switch				
011	Bit Switch 11		0	1	
	bit 0 List / Test Print menu		0: Disable	1: Enable	
		When enabled, the [Multiple Lists] menu is displayed in [List / Test Print] under the Printer Features menu.			
	bit 1	Interrupt printing 0: Job 1: Page			
		Selects the units for the interrupt printing function. When you select "0," you can interrupt printing of a job while being processed. When you select "1," you can interrupt printing of a page while being processed.			

Bit 2	DFU		
to 7		-	-

1001	Bit Switch			
012	Bit Switch 12		0	1
	bit 0 to 7	DFU	-	-

1003	[Clear Setting]	
1003 001	Initialize Printer System	
1003 001	Initializes settings in the "System" menu of the user mode.	
1003 003 Delete Program		

1004	[Print Summary]	
1004 001	Print Printer Summary	
	Prints the service summary sheet (a summary of all the controller settings).	

1005	[Display Version]	
1005 000	Printer Version	
1005 002	Displays the version of the printer application.	

1007	[Supply Info.]
	[0 to 1 / 1]
1007 001	0: Displays the info.
	1: Does not display the info.

1110	[Media Print Device Setting]	
1110 002	0: Disable 1: Enable	Selects the setting for the media print device.

1111	[All Job Delete Mode]
------	-----------------------

1111 001	1. In Justine Name Lab	Select whether to include an image processing job in jobs subject to full cancellation from the SCS job list.
----------	------------------------	---

SP1-xxx: Feed

	Leading Edge Registration	
Adjusts the leading edge registration latiming.		ration by changing the registration clutch operation
001	Tray: Plain	
002	Tray: Thick 1	
003	Tray: Thick 2	
004	By-pass: Plain	[-9 to 9/ 0 / 0.1 mm step]
005	By-pass: Thick 1	
006	By-pass: Thick 2	
007	Duplex: Plain	
008	Duplex: Thick 1	

	Side-to-Side Registration	
Adjusts the side to side registration by changing the laser main scan start poetach mode.		tion by changing the laser main scan start position for
001	By-pass	
002	Tray 1	
003	Tray 2	
004	Tray 3	[-4 to 4/0/0.1 mm step]
005	Tray 4	
006	LCT	
007	Duplex	

	Registration Buckle Adjustment Adjusts the paper feed motor timing. Paper feed motor timing determines the amount paper buckle at Registration. (A "+" setting causes more buckling.)	
1003*		
001	Tray 1: Plain	
002	Tray 1: Thick 1	
003	Tray 1: Thick 2	
004	Tray 2, 3, 4: Plain	[-9 to 5 / -4 / 1 mm step]
005	Tray 2, 3, 4: Thick1	
006	Tray 2, 3, 4: Thick2	
007	By-pass: Plain	
008	By-pass: Thick 1	[-9 to 5 / -2 / 1 mm step]
009	By-pass: Thick 2	
010	Duplex: Plain	[-9 to 5 / -4 / 1 mm step]
011	Duplex: Thick 1	[-9 to 5 / -3 / 1 mm step]
012	LCT: Plain	
013	LCT: Thick 1	[-9 to 5 / -4 / 1 mm step]
014	LCT: Thick2	

1007*	By-pass Paper Size Detection	
1007	Controls paper size detection for the by-pass feed table.	
001	Detection Timing	[-15 to 15 / 0 / 5 mm step]
002	LG Detection	[0 to 1 / 0 / 1] 0: LT SEF, 1: LG

Fusing Temperature Adjustment Allows adjustment of the hot roller temperature at the center and ends of the roller for the quality or thickness of the paper. The hot roller in this machine has two fusing lamps: one heats the center of the roller, the other heats both ends. Each fusing lamp can be adjusted separately. The "re-load temperature" is the "print ready temperature". When the fusing temperature exceeds this setting, the machine can operate. Do not set up a re-load temperature (Re-load Temp. = Fusing. Temp - SP Value.) that is higher than the SP1-105-2 setting. Roller Center [100 to 170 / 150 / 1 deg] Adjusts the fusing temperature at the center of the hot roller. Re-load Temp. Minus: Roller Center [0 to 60 / 0 / 1 deg] Sets the reload temperature for the center of the hot roller. This setting depends on the target temperature. Reload temp. = Target Temp - This SP Setting Note Do not set a temperature that is higher than the setting for SP1105 1 (Roller Center: Trays) Re-load Temp. Minus: Roller Ends [0 to 60 / 0 / 1 deg] Sets the reload temperature for the ends of the hot roller. This setting depends on the target temperature. Reload temp. = Target Temp - This SP Setting Note Do not set a temperature for the ends of the hot roller. This setting depends on the target temperature. Reload temp. = Target Temp - This SP Setting Note Do not set a temperature that is higher than the setting for SP1105 2 (Roller Ends: Trays) Trays) The following SPs adjust the fusing temperature at the center or ends of the hot roller for each paper type. Roller Center: M-Thick [100 to 170 / 155 / 1 deg]					
quality or thickness of the paper. The hot roller in this machine has two fusing lamps: one heats the center of the roller, the other heats both ends. Each fusing lamp can be adjusted separately. The "re-load temperature" is the "print ready temperature". When the fusing temperature exceeds this setting, the machine can operate. Do not set up a re-load temperature (Re-load Temp. = Fusing. Temp – SP Value.) that is higher than the SP1-105-2 setting. Roller Center [100 to 170 / 150 / 1 deg] Adjusts the fusing temperature at the center of the hot roller. Re-load Temp. Minus: Roller Center [0 to 60 / 0 / 1 deg] Sets the reload temperature for the center of the hot roller. This setting depends on the target temperature. Reload temp. = Target Temp – This SP Setting Note • Do not set a temperature that is higher than the setting for SP1105 1 (Roller Center: Trays) Re-load Temp. Minus: Roller Ends [0 to 60 / 0 / 1 deg] Sets the reload temperature for the ends of the hot roller. This setting depends on the target temperature. Reload Temp. Minus: Roller Ends [0 to 60 / 0 / 1 deg] Sets the reload temperature for the ends of the hot roller. This setting depends on the target temperature. Reload Temp. Minus: Roller Ends [0 to 60 / 0 / 1 deg] Sets the reload temperature for the ends of the hot roller. This setting depends on the target temperature. Reload temp. = Target Temp – This SP Setting Note • Do not set a temperature that is higher than the setting for SP1105 2 (Roller Ends: Trays) The following SPs adjust the fusing temperature at the center or ends of the hot roller for each paper type. Roller Center: M-Thick [100 to 170 / 155 / 1 deg]		Fusing Temperature Adjustment			
exceeds this setting, the machine can operate. Do not set up a re-load temperature (Reload Temp. = Fusing. Temp – SP Value.) that is higher than the SP1-105-2 setting. Roller Center [100 to 170 / 150 / 1 deg] Adjusts the fusing temperature at the center of the hot roller. Roller Ends [100 to 170 / 155 / 1 deg] Adjusts the fusing temperature at the ends of the hot roller. Re-load Temp. Minus: Roller Center [0 to 60 / 0 / 1 deg] Sets the reload temperature for the center of the hot roller. This setting depends on the target temperature. Reload temp. = Target Temp – This SP Setting Note • Do not set a temperature that is higher than the setting for SP1105 1 (Roller Center: Trays) Re-load Temp. Minus: Roller Ends [0 to 60 / 0 / 1 deg] Sets the reload temperature for the ends of the hot roller. This setting depends on the target temperature. Reload temp. = Target Temp – This SP Setting Note • Do not set a temperature that is higher than the setting for SP1105 2 (Roller Ends: Trays) The following SPs adjust the fusing temperature at the center or ends of the hot roller for each paper type. Roller Center: M-Thick [100 to 170 / 155 / 1 deg]	1105*	quality or thickness of the paper. The hot roller in this machine has two fusing lamps: one heats the center of the roller, the other heats both ends. Each fusing lamp can be adjusted			
Adjusts the fusing temperature at the center of the hot roller. Roller Ends [100 to 170 / 155 / 1 deg] Adjusts the fusing temperature at the ends of the hot roller. Re-load Temp. Minus: Roller Center [0 to 60 / 0 / 1 deg] Sets the reload temperature for the center of the hot roller. This setting depends on the target temperature. Reload temp. = Target Temp - This SP Setting Note Do not set a temperature that is higher than the setting for SP1105 1 (Roller Center: Trays) Re-load Temp. Minus: Roller Ends [0 to 60 / 0 / 1 deg] Sets the reload temperature for the ends of the hot roller. This setting depends on the target temperature. Reload temp. = Target Temp - This SP Setting Note Do not set a temperature that is higher than the setting for SP1105 2 (Roller Ends: Trays) Trays) Note Do not set a temperature that is higher than the setting for SP1105 2 (Roller Ends: Trays) The following SPs adjust the fusing temperature at the center or ends of the hot roller for each paper type.		exceeds this setting, the machine can operate. Do not set up a re-load temperature (Re-			
Adjusts the fusing temperature at the center of the hot roller. Roller Ends [100 to 170 / 155 / 1 deg] Adjusts the fusing temperature at the ends of the hot roller. Re-load Temp. Minus: Roller Center [0 to 60 / 0 / 1 deg] Sets the reload temperature for the center of the hot roller. This setting depends on the target temperature. Reload temp. = Target Temp - This SP Setting Note Do not set a temperature that is higher than the setting for SP1105 1 (Roller Center: Trays) Re-load Temp. Minus: Roller Ends [0 to 60 / 0 / 1 deg] Sets the reload temperature for the ends of the hot roller. This setting depends on the target temperature. Reload temp. = Target Temp - This SP Setting Note Do not set a temperature that is higher than the setting for SP1105 2 (Roller Ends: Trays) Trays) Note Do not set a temperature that is higher than the setting for SP1105 2 (Roller Ends: Trays) Reload temp. = Target Temp - This SP Setting Note Do not set a temperature that is higher than the setting for SP1105 2 (Roller Ends: Trays) Roller Center: M-Thick [100 to 170 / 155 / 1 deg]	001	Roller Center	[100 to 170 /	150 / 1 deg]	
Adjusts the fusing temperature at the ends of the hot roller. Re-load Temp. Minus: Roller Center [0 to 60 / 0 / 1 deg] Sets the reload temperature for the center of the hot roller. This setting depends on the target temperature. Reload temp. = Target Temp - This SP Setting Note Do not set a temperature that is higher than the setting for SP1105 1 (Roller Center: Trays) Re-load Temp. Minus: Roller Ends [0 to 60 / 0 / 1 deg] Sets the reload temperature for the ends of the hot roller. This setting depends on the target temperature. Reload temp. = Target Temp - This SP Setting Note Do not set a temperature that is higher than the setting for SP1105 2 (Roller Ends: Trays) The following SPs adjust the fusing temperature at the center or ends of the hot roller for each paper type. Roller Center: M-Thick [100 to 170 / 155 / 1 deg]	001	Adjusts the fusing temperature at the	center of the ho	ot roller.	
Adjusts the fusing temperature at the ends of the hot roller. Re-load Temp. Minus: Roller Center [0 to 60 / 0 / 1 deg] Sets the reload temperature for the center of the hot roller. This setting depends on the target temperature. Reload temp. = Target Temp - This SP Setting Note • Do not set a temperature that is higher than the setting for SP1 105 1 (Roller Center: Trays) Re-load Temp. Minus: Roller Ends [0 to 60 / 0 / 1 deg] Sets the reload temperature for the ends of the hot roller. This setting depends on the target temperature. Reload temp. = Target Temp - This SP Setting Note • Do not set a temperature that is higher than the setting for SP1 105 2 (Roller Ends: Trays) The following SPs adjust the fusing temperature at the center or ends of the hot roller for each paper type. Roller Center: M-Thick [100 to 170 / 155 / 1 deg]	000	Roller Ends	[100 to 170 /	155 / 1 deg]	
Sets the reload temperature for the center of the hot roller. This setting depends on the target temperature. Reload temp. = Target Temp - This SP Setting Note Do not set a temperature that is higher than the setting for SP1105 1 (Roller Center: Trays) Re-load Temp. Minus: Roller Ends [0 to 60 / 0 / 1 deg] Sets the reload temperature for the ends of the hot roller. This setting depends on the target temperature. Reload temp. = Target Temp - This SP Setting Note Do not set a temperature that is higher than the setting for SP1105 2 (Roller Ends: Trays) The following SPs adjust the fusing temperature at the center or ends of the hot roller for each paper type. Roller Center: M-Thick [100 to 170 / 155 / 1 deg]	002	Adjusts the fusing temperature at the	ends of the hot	roller.	
target temperature. Reload temp. = Target Temp – This SP Setting Note Do not set a temperature that is higher than the setting for SP1105 1 (Roller Center: Trays) Re-load Temp. Minus: Roller Ends [0 to 60 / 0 / 1 deg] Sets the reload temperature for the ends of the hot roller. This setting depends on the target temperature. Reload temp. = Target Temp – This SP Setting Note Do not set a temperature that is higher than the setting for SP1105 2 (Roller Ends: Trays) The following SPs adjust the fusing temperature at the center or ends of the hot roller for each paper type. Roller Center: M-Thick [100 to 170 / 155 / 1 deg]		Re-load Temp. Minus: Roller Center		[0 to 60 / 0 / 1 deg]	
 Note Do not set a temperature that is higher than the setting for SP1105 1 (Roller Center: Trays) Re-load Temp. Minus: Roller Ends [0 to 60 / 0 / 1 deg] Sets the reload temperature for the ends of the hot roller. This setting depends on the target temperature. Reload temp. = Target Temp − This SP Setting Note Do not set a temperature that is higher than the setting for SP1105 2 (Roller Ends: Trays) The following SPs adjust the fusing temperature at the center or ends of the hot roller for each paper type. Roller Center: M-Thick [100 to 170 / 155 / 1 deg] 					
Do not set a temperature that is higher than the setting for SP1105 1 (Roller Center: Trays) Re-load Temp. Minus: Roller Ends [0 to 60 / 0 / 1 deg] Sets the reload temperature for the ends of the hot roller. This setting depends on the target temperature. Reload temp. = Target Temp – This SP Setting Note Do not set a temperature that is higher than the setting for SP1105 2 (Roller Ends: Trays) The following SPs adjust the fusing temperature at the center or ends of the hot roller for each paper type. Reload Temp. Minus: Roller Ends [100 to 170 / 155 / 1 deg]	003	Reload temp. = Target Temp – This SP Setting			
Re-load Temp. Minus: Roller Ends [0 to 60 / 0 / 1 deg] Sets the reload temperature for the ends of the hot roller. This setting depends on the target temperature. Reload temp. = Target Temp – This SP Setting Note Do not set a temperature that is higher than the setting for SP1105 2 (Roller Ends: Trays) The following SPs adjust the fusing temperature at the center or ends of the hot roller for each paper type. Roller Center: M-Thick [100 to 170 / 155 / 1 deg]		↓ Note			
Sets the reload temperature for the ends of the hot roller. This setting depends on the target temperature. Reload temp. = Target Temp – This SP Setting Note Do not set a temperature that is higher than the setting for SP1105 2 (Roller Ends: Trays) The following SPs adjust the fusing temperature at the center or ends of the hot roller for each paper type. Roller Center: M-Thick [100 to 170 / 155 / 1 deg]					
target temperature. Reload temp. = Target Temp – This SP Setting Note Do not set a temperature that is higher than the setting for SP1105 2 (Roller Ends: Trays) The following SPs adjust the fusing temperature at the center or ends of the hot roller for each paper type. Roller Center: M-Thick [100 to 170 / 155 / 1 deg]		Re-load Temp. Minus: Roller Ends		[0 to 60 / 0 / 1 deg]	
 Note Do not set a temperature that is higher than the setting for SP1105 2 (Roller Ends: Trays) The following SPs adjust the fusing temperature at the center or ends of the hot roller for each paper type. Roller Center: M-Thick 		,			
Do not set a temperature that is higher than the setting for SP1105 2 (Roller Ends: Trays) O05 to The following SPs adjust the fusing temperature at the center or ends of the hot roller for each paper type. O05 Roller Center: M-Thick [100 to 170 / 155 / 1 deg]	004	Reload temp. = Target Temp – This SP Setting			
Trays) O05 to The following SPs adjust the fusing temperature at the center or ends of the hot roller for each paper type. O05 Roller Center: M-Thick [100 to 170 / 155 / 1 deg]					
022 each paper type. 005 Roller Center: M-Thick [100 to 170 / 155 / 1 deg]					
, , , , , ,					
006 Roller Ends: M-Thick [100 to 170 / 160 / 1 deg]	005	Roller Center: M-Thick [100 to 170 / 155 / 1 deg]		70 / 155 / 1 deg]	
	006	Roller Ends: M-Thick [100 to 170 / 160 / 1 deg]			

007	Roller Center: Thick 1	[100 to 170 / 130 / 1 deg]
800	Roller Ends: Thick 1	[[[]]]
009	Roller Center: Thick 2	[100 to 170 / 150 / 1 deg]
010	Wait Temp: Center Minus	[1001017071 30 71 deg]
011	Wait Temp: Ends Minus	[100 to 170 / 140 / 1 deg]
012	Roller Ends: Thin	[100 to 170 / 145 / 1 deg]
013	Roller Center: OHP: Plain	[100 to 170 / 150 / 1 deg]
014	Roller Ends: OHP: Plain	[100 to 170 / 155 / 1 dowl
015	Roller Center: OHP: Thick	[100 to 170 / 155 / 1 deg]
016	Roller Ends: OHP: Thick	[100 to 170 / 160 / 1 deg]
017	Roller Center: Special 1	[100 to 170 / 150 / 1 deg]
018	Roller Ends: Special 1	[100 to 170 / 155 / 1 deg]
019	Roller Center: Special 2	[100 to 170 / 150 / 1 deg]
020	Roller Ends: Special 2	[100 to 170 / 155 / 1 deg]
021	Roller Center: Special 3	[100 to 170 / 150 / 1 deg]
022	Roller Ends: Special 3	[100 to 170 / 155 / 1 deg]
023	Feed Waiting: Plain	Turns the feed waiting mode on or off for each
024	Feed Waiting: M-Thick	paper type. [0 to 1 / 0 / 1]
025	Feed Waiting: Thick 1	0=Off, 1=On
026	Feed Waiting: Thick 2	The paper waits at the registration roller until
		the fusing temperature reaches the prescribed temperature (adjustable with SP1105-028 to -37).
027	Feed Waiting: Thin	If you enable this feature, also set SP 1105-38 to a convenient value for the customer.

028	Feed Wait: Center Minus: Plain	
029	Feed Wait: Ends Minus: Plain	
030	Feed Wait: Center Minus: M-Thick	
031	Feed Wait: Ends Minus: M-Thick	
032	Feed Wait: Center Minus: Thick 1	Adjusts the offset value for each re-load temperature to exit the feed waiting mode.
033	Feed Wait: Ends Minus: Thick 1	[0 to 60 / 0 / 1 deg]
034	Feed Wait: Center Minus: Thick 2	
035	Feed Wait: Ends Minus: Thick 2	
036	Feed Wait: Center Minus: Thin	
037	Feed Wait: Ends Minus: Thin	
038	Feed Waiting: Maximum Time	Sets the maximum feed waiting time. [0 to 30 / 0 / 1 sec] The paper is fed when the time specified with this SP has passed even though the fusing temperature has not reached the prescribed temperature. 0: Disabled.

1106	Fusing Temperature Display	
001	Roller Center Displays the temperature of the fusing unit	
002	Roller Ends	[-20 to 250 / 0 / 1 deg]
003	Machine Inside at Power On	Displays the temperature inside the machine.
004	Machine Inside	[-20 to 250 / 0 / 1 deg]

	MotorSpeedAdjust		
	Adjusts the speeds of each motor. Each step decreases or increases motor speed in 0.05% increments		
	Regist: Registration motor, Feed: Feed motor,		
1801*	Duplex: Duplex/By-pass motor, Inverter: Duplex inverter motor,		
	Exit: Paper exit motor, Bridge: Bridge	e unit drive motor,	
	OpcMot: Drum motor, TransferMot:	Transfer/Development Motor,	
	FusingMot: Fusing motor,		
	DevPuddleMot: Development Paddle	e motor	
001	Regist: 90: Thick 2		
002	Regist: 154: Thick 1	[-2 to 2 / 0.4 / 0.05 %]	
003	Regist: 180: Plain	[21027 0.47 0.00 /0]	
004	Regist: 230: Plain		
005	Feed: 90: Thick 2	[-2 to 2 / -0.4 / 0.05 %]	
006	Feed: 154: Thick 1	[2.6.27 6.77 6.66 24]	
007	Feed: 180: Plain	[-2 to 2 / -1 / 0.05 %]	
008	Feed: 230: Plain	[21027-17 0.00 /0]	
009	Duplex_CW: 90: Thick 2	[-4 to 4 / 0.4 / 0.1 %]	
010	Duplex_CW: 154: Thick 1	[4 10 4 7 0.4 7 0.1 70]	
011	Duplex_CW: 180: Plain	[-4 to 4 / -2.3 / 0.1 %]	
012	Duplex_CW: 230: Plain	[-10 4/ 2.0/ 0.1/0]	
013	Duplex_CCW: 90: Thick 2	[-4 to 4 / 0.4 / 0.1 %]	
014	Duplex_CCW: 154: Thick 1	[- 10 - 4 / 0.1 /0]	
015	Duplex_CCW: 180: Plain	[-4 to 4 / -0.2 / 0.1 %]	
016	Duplex_CCW: 230: Plain	[-4104/ -0.2/ 0.1 /0]	

017	Inverter_CW: 90: Thick 2	
018	Inverter_CW: 154: Thick 1	
019	Inverter_CW: 180: Plain	
020	Inverter_CW: 230: Plain	
021	Inverter_CCW: 90: Thick 2	
022	Inverter_CCW: 154: Thick 1	
023	Inverter_CCW: 180: Plain	
024	Inverter_CCW: 230: Plain	[45,4/0/019/]
025	Exit_CW: 90: Thick 2	[-4 to 4 / 0 / 0.1 %]
026	Exit_CW: 154: Thick 1	
027	Exit_CW: 180: Plain	
028	Exit_CW: 230: Plain	
029	Bridge: 90: Thick 2	
030	Bridge: 154: Thick 1	
031	Bridge: 180: Plain	
032	Bridge: 230: Plain	

033	OpcMot:90	
034	OpcMot:154	
035	OpcMot:180	
036	OpcMot:230	
037	TransferMot:90	
038	TransferMot: 154	[-4 to 4 / 0 / 0.01 %]
039	TransferMot: 180	[-4 10 4 / 0 / 0.01 %]
040	TransferMot:230	
041	FusingMot:90	
042	FusingMot:154	
043	FusingMot:180	
044	FusingMot:230	
045	DevPuddleMot	[-4 to 4 / 0 / 0.1 %]

1902*	Cleaning Web Setting		
0.0.1	Web Consumption	[0 to 120 / 0 / 1 %]	
001	Displays the consumed amount of the	web roll.	
002	Web Motor Interval	[3 to 130 / 6.7 / 0.1 sec]	
002	Adjusts the interval for web motor rotation.		
003	Web Motor Time	[0.3 to 10 / 4.2 / 0.1 sec]	
003	Adjusts the rotation time of the web motor.		
004	Web Near End Setting	EU [0 to 100 / 90 / 1 %] ASIA/NA [0 to 100 / 92 / 1 %]	
	Adjusts the threshold for web near end.		
005	Web Motor Interval: Thick 1	[3 to 130 / 11.2 / 0.1 sec]	
005	Adjusts the interval for web motor rotation (thick 1).		

006	Web Motor Interval: Thick 2	[3 to 130 / 16.8 / 0.1 sec]	
	Adjusts the interval for web motor rotation (thick 2).		
	Paper Interval Time	[0 to 10 / 5 / 1 sec]	
007	Adjusts the threshold for paper feeding. When the time between trailing edge detection and leading edge detection is within the value of this setting, the machine determines that the paper is still being fed.		
008	Web Motor Setting: Web End	[0 to 60 / 27 / 1 sec]	
008	Adjusts the motor rotation time after the web end.		
009	Web Motor Rotation: Power On	[0 to 10 / 0 / 1 times]	
009	Adjusts the number of web motor rotations at the re-load state.		
010	Web Motor Interval: Pre-idle	[0 to 30 / 0 / 1 sec]	
	Adjusts the motor waiting time after the fusing motor idling.		
011	Web Motor Rotation: Pre-idle	[0 to 10 / 0 / 1 times]	
011	Adjusts the number of web motor rotations at the fusing idling state.		

1950*	Tray Lock at Jam	[0 or 1 / 0 / 1] 0= OFF, 1= ON
1930	Not used	

SP2-xxx: Drum

2005*	Bias Control	
	Bias Correction 1	[0.1 to 1 / 0.85 / 0.05 step]
Adjusts the lower threshold value for the charge roller correction. When the value of VSDP/VSG is greater than this value, the charge roller vincreases by 30 V (e.g., from -500 to -530).		than this value, the charge roller voltage
	Bias Correction 2	[0.1 to 1 / 0.9 / 0.05 step]
002	Adjusts the upper threshold value for the charge roller correction. When the value of VSDP/VSG is greater than this value, the charge roller voltage decreases by 30 V (absolute value).	
000	Bias Adjustment 1	[1000 to 2000 / 1500 / 10 vol]
003	Adjusts the lower limit value for charge roller voltage correction.	
004	Bias Adjustment 2	[1000 to 2000 / 2000 / 10 vol]
004	Adjusts the upper limit value for charge roller voltage correction.	
005	Bias Adjustment 3	[0 to 100 / 30 / 10 vol]
	Adjusts the correction voltage adjustment step size.	

	Erase Margin Adjustment	
	Adjusts the erase margin by deleting image data at the margins.	
2103*	L Size: 297.1 mm or more (length)	
	M Size: 216.1 to 297 mm (length)	
	S Size: 216 mm or less (length)	
001	Leading Edge	[0 to 9 / 3 / 0.1 mm]
002	Trailing Edge	[0 10 9 / 3 / 0.1 mm]
003	Left	[0 to 9 / 2 / 0.1 mm]
004	Right	[0 10 7 / 2 / 0.1111111]

005	Duplex Trail.: L Size: Plain	[0 to 4 / 1 / 0.1 mm]
006	Duplex Trail.: M Size: Plain	[0 to 4 / 0.8 / 0.1 mm]
007	Duplex Trail.: S Size: Plain	[0 to 4 / 0.6 / 0.1 mm]
008	Duplex Left: Plain	[0.1.5 / 0.2 / 0.1]
009	Duplex Right: Plain	[0 to 1.5 / 0.3 / 0.1mm]
010	Duplex Trail.: L Size: Thick	[0 to 4 / 0.8 / 0.1 mm]
011	Duplex Trail.: M Size: Thick	[0 to 4 / 0.6 / 0.1 mm]
012	Duplex Trail.: S Size: Thick	[0 to 4 / 0.4 / 0.1 mm]
013	Duplex Left: Thick	[01.5./0.1./0.1]
014	Duplex Right: Thick	[0 to 1.5 / 0.1 / 0.1mm]

	LD Power (DFU)	
Adjusts the LD power for each mode. Each LD power setting is decided by the process control.		
001	Process control	[50 to 70 / 25 /1]
002	Process control	[-50 to 79 / 35 / 1]
003	Print	[50 to 70 / F /1]
004	Print	[-50 to 79 / 5 / 1]

2109	Test Pattern	
001	Pattern Selection	[0 to 24 / 0 / 1] Test pattern of the GAVD

	0: None 1: Vertical Line (1 dot) 2: Vertical Line (2 dot) 3: Horizontal Line (1 dot) 4: Horizontal Line (2 dot) 5: Grid Vertical Line 6: Grid Horizontal Line 7: Grid pattern small 8: Grid Pattern Large 9: Argyle Pattern Small 10: Argyle Pattern Large 11: Independent pattern 12: Independent Pattern	(1 dot)	13: Independent Pattern (4 dot) 14: Trimming Area 15: Hound's Tooth Check (Vertical) 16: Hound's Tooth Check (Horizontal) 17: Black Band (Horizontal) 18: Black band (Vertical) 19: Checker Flag Pattern 20: Grayscale (Vertical Margin) 21: Grayscale (Horizontal Margin) 22: Two Beam Density Pattern 23: Full Dot Pattern 24:All white Pattern
002	Density	,	of the test pattern which is output in his SP is not used for the Grayscale patterns.

	Vref Setting	
	Adjusts the TD sensor reference voltage (Vref). Change this value after replacing the development unit with another development unit that contains toner.	
	[1 to 5 / 4 / 0.01]	
2220*	Check the value of SP2-220 in both the machine containing the test unit and the machine that you are going to move it to.	
Install the test development unit, and then input the VREF for this unit SP2-220.		
	3. After the test, put back the old development unit, and change SP2-220 back to the original value.	

Reverse Interval Drum, Transfer [0 to 2000 / C		[0 to 2000 / 0 / 1 sheets]
2221*	Adjusts the threshold for the reverse rotation motors. This helps the drum and transfer built interrupt a multiple printing job.	on of the drum and development/transfer elt cleaning operations. This reverse rotation

	TD Sensor Initial Setting	Initialization	
2801*	Performs the TD sensor initial setting and allows the service technician to enter the lot number of the developer. (The lot number is embossed on the edge of the developer package.) This SP mode controls the voltage applied to the TD sensor to make the TD sensor output about 3.0 V. Press "Execute" to start. After finishing this, the TD sensor output voltage is displayed.		
	Use this mode only after installing new developer.	ng the machine, changing the TD sensor, or adding	
00/0*	Toner Overflow Sensor	[0 = OFF, 1= ON]	
2960*	Selects whether or not the toner	overflow sensor is activated.	
	Grayscale Limit (SSP)		
2972*	Controls the halftone density level to prevent deterioration of the OPC. The density is detected by the ID sensor, and the machine adjusts the intensity o beam according to the upper/lower limit setting.		
	Upper Limit	[0 to 100 / 63 / 1vol]	
001	Defines the upper limit for grayscale. A larger value allows a wider range of halftones at the pale end of the scale. If the image contains pale areas with fuzzy borders surrounded by dark areas, reduce this value to make the borders clearer.		
	Lower Limit	[0 to 100 / 57 / 1vol]	
002	Defines the lower limit for grayscale. A smaller value allows a wider range of halftones at the dark end of the scale.		
	Grayscale Cycle (SSP)	[0 to 1000 / 100 / 10 sheets]	
2973*	Set s the halftone operation interval in order to prevent deterioration of the OPC. If the number of copies exceeds this setting, at the end of the job, or if the door is opened and closed, charge correction is executed.		

2974*

Image Density

001	Adjustment Mode	[1 to 5 / 3 / 1]	
	Adjusts image density. Changing this setting adjusts development bias and ID sensor output voltage that in turn raises or lowers image density.		
	Charge Counter	[0 to 1000000 / 0 / 1 sheets]	
2980*	Set the number of pages to print after toner and carrier initialization before the charge input is increased to compensate for deterioration over time in the polarity of the carrier.		
	The strength in the polarity of the carrier in the toner will eventually decrease and cause lower charge output. Setting the charge output to increase after a specified		

number of copies can compensate for this effect.

SP3-xxx: Process

3001	P Sensor Setting	
001*	Current	[0 to 43 / 13 / 0.1 mA]
	Allows you to reset the PWM of the ID sensor LED to avoid a service call error after clearing NVRAM or replacing the NVRAM.	
	The PWM data is stored by executing SP-3001-2.	
002	Initialization	-
	Performs the ID sensor initial setting. ID sensor output for the bare drum (VSG) is adjusted automatically to $4.0\pm0.2~\text{V}$.	
	Press "Execute" to start. Perform this setting after replacing or cleaning the ID sensor, replacing the drum, or clearing NVRAM.	

3045*	Toner End Setting DFU	
001	ON/OFF	[0 to 1 / 0 / 1] 0=Off, 1=On

3902*	New PCU Detection (Not used)	
001	ON/OFF Setting	[0 to 1 / 0 / 1] 0: On, 1: Off
	Turns on or off the new unit detection for the transfer belt unit and fusing unit.	

There are no Group 4 SP modes for this machine.

5

SP5-xxx: Mode

5009*	Add Display Language		Bit SW	
3007	Adds language available in user choice. (Only the languages registered in the machine) The available languages are shown below.			
	List Num.	language	List Num.	language
	1	Japanese	15	Czech
	3	US English	16	Finnish
	4	French	17	Traditional Chinese
	5	German	18	Simplified Chinese
	6	Italian	19	Thai
	7	Spanish	20	Russian
201,202,2 03,204	8	Dutch	22	Hebrew
	9	Norwegian	23	Greek
	10	Danish	24	Korean
	11	Swedish	25	Catalan
	12	Polish	26	Turkish
	13	Portuguese	27	Brazilian Portuguese
	14	Hungarian		
	Check the list number of the language to add from the list above. And then change the bit switch settings of the SP5009-201, -202, -203, or -204 refer			
	to the table below.			

	List Num.	Assigned Bit Switch	
No.1~8 BIT1 to 8 (SP		BIT1 to 8 (SP500	9-201)
	No.9~16	BIT1 to 8 (SP5009-202)	
No.17~24 BIT1 to 8 (SP5009-203)		9-203)	
	No.25~32	BIT1 to 8 (SP5009-204)	
	Example: To add	d US English (No.3	in the list) or Czech (No.15)
	Turn Bit 3 of "SP	25009-201" 0 to 1	for US English.
	Turn Bit 7 of "SP	² 5009-202" 0 to 1 for Czech.	
	After setting, turi	n the main power switch off and on to make the setting valid.	
	mm/inch Display Selection		O: Europe/Asia (mm)
5024*	. ,		1: North America (inch)
	Selects the unit of measurement.		
	After selection, turn the main power switch off and on.		
	Paper Display		
5047*	Turns on or off the printed paper display on the LCD.		
3047	[0 to 1 / 0 / 1]		
	0: Not displayed, 1: Displayed		

	Display IP Address	
	5055*	Display or does not display the IP address on the LCD.
		[0 to 1 / 0 / 1]
		0: OFF, 1: ON

5061*	Toner Remaining Icon Display Change
	Display or does not display the remaining toner display icon on the LCD.
	[0 to 1 / 0 / 1]
	0: Not display, 1: Display

5083*	LED ON-OFF setting at Toner Near End	
	Turns LED yellow lighting ON and OFF at Toner Near End.	
001	[0 to 1 / 0 / 1]	
	0: OFF, 1: ON	

5104*	A3/DLT Double Count (SSP)
	Specifies whether the counter is doubled for A3/DLT. "Yes" counts except from the bypass tray. When "Yes" is selected, A3 and DLT paper are counted twice, that is A4 x2 and LT x2 respectively.

5112*	Non-Std. Paper Sel.	
	Non-Standard Paper Selection	
	[0 to 1 / 1 / 1]	
	0: Not used, 1: Used	

5131* [0 0: Af	Paper Size Type Selection
	Selects the paper size (type) for both originals and copy paper.
	[0 to 2 / - / 1 step]
	0: Japan, 1: North America, 2: Europe
	After changing the setting, turn the copier off and on. If the paper size of the archive files stored on the HDD is different, abnormal copies could result.

Bypass Length Setting
Sets up the by-pass tray for long paper.
[0 to 1 / 0 / 1]
0: Off [Default]
1: On. Sets the tray for feeding paper up to 600 mm long.
With this SP selected on, paper jams are not detected in the paper path.

	5181*	Paper Size Setting		
		Adjusts the paper size for each tray. [0 to 1 / - / 1]		
	001	Tray 1: 1	0: A4 LEF, 1: LT LEF	

002 Tray 1: 2	
004 Tray 1: 4 0: B5 LFE 1: Eve LFE	
0. B3 EE1, 1. EXC EE1	
005 Tray 2: 1 0: A4 LEF, 1: LT LEF	
006 Tray 2: 2 0: A3, 1: DLT	
007 Tray 2: 3 0: B4, 1: LG	
008 Tray 2: 4 0: B5 LEF, 1: Exe LEF	
009 Tray 3: 1 (Tandem) 0: A4 LEF, 1: LT LEF	
010 Tray 3: 2 0: A3, 1: DLT	
011 Tray 3: 3 0: B4, 1: LG	
012 Tray 3: 4 0: B5 LEF, 1: Exe LEF	
013 Tray 4: 1 0: A4 LEF, 1: LT LEF	
014 Tray 4: 2 0: A3, 1: DLT	
015 Tray 4: 3 0: B4, 1: LG	
016 Tray 4: 4 0: B5 LEF, 1: Exe LEF	
017 LCT [0 to 2 / - / 1] 0: A4 LEF, 1: LT LEF, 2: B5 LEF	

	RK4: Setting (Japan only)
5186	Enable or distance the prevention for RK4 (Accounting device) Disconnection. If the RK4 is disconnected for 10 seconds when this SP is set to "1 (Enable)", the machine automatically jams a sheet of paper and stops. [0 to 1 / 0 / 1]

	Paper Exit After Staple End
	This SP determines whether the machine can output paper if staples run out.
5199	[0 to 1 / 0 / 1]
	0: OFF. Paper cannot exit if no staples are available.
	1: ON. Paper can exit with no staples.

5302*	Set Time
	Time Difference
	Sets the time clock for the local time. This setting is done at the factory before delivery. The setting is GMT expressed in minutes.
	[-1440 to 1440 / - / 1 min.]
	Japan: +540 (Tokyo)
002	NA: -300 (NY)
	EU: +60 (Paris)
	CH: +480 (Peking)
	TW: +480 (Taipei)
	AS: +480 (Hong Kong)
	KO: +540 (Korea)

5307	Summer Time	
		[0 to 1 / 1 (NA/EU), 0 (ASIA) / 1 /step]
	Setting	0: Disabled
		1: Enabled
001	Enables or disables the summer time mode.	
	↓ Note	
	• Make sure that both SP5-307-3 and -4 are correctly set. Otherwise, this SP is not activated even if this SP is set to "1".	

	Rule Set (Start)
	Specifies the start setting for the summer time mode.
	There are 8 digits in this SP. For months 1 to 9, the "0" cannot be input in the first digit, so the eight-digit setting for -2 or -3 becomes a seven-digit setting.
	1st and 2nd digits: The month. [1 to 12]
	3rd digit: The week of the month. [1 to 5]
000	4th digit: The day of the week. [0 to 6 = Sunday to Saturday]
003	5th and 6th digits: The hour. [00 to 23]
	7th digit: The length of the advanced time. [0 to 9 / 1 hour /step]
	8th digit: The length of the advanced time. [0 to 5 / 10 minutes /step]
	For example: 3500010
	The timer is advanced by 1 hour at am 0:00 on the 5th Sunday in March.
	The digits are counted from the left.
	Make sure that SP5-307-1 is set to "1".
	Rule Set (End)
	Specifies the end setting for the summer time mode.
	There are 8 digits in this SP.
	1st and 2nd digits: The month. [1 to 12]
004	3rd digit: The week of the month. [0 to 5]
	4th digit: The day of the week. [0 to 7 = Sunday to Saturday]
	5th and 6th digits: The hour. [00 to 23]
	The 7th and 8 digits must be set to "00".
	The digits are counted from the left.
	Make sure that SP5-307-1 is set to "1".
	User Code Count Clear
5404	Clears the counts of the user codes assigned by the key operator to restrict the use of

5413	Lockout Setting		
	Lockout On/Off	[0 to 1 / 0 / 1] 0: OFF, 1:ON	
001	Turns on or off the account	off the account lock for the local address book account.	

the machine. Press [Execute] to clear.

002	Lockout Threshold	[1 to 10 / 5 / 1]
002	Sets the maximum trial times for accessing the address book account.	
003	Cancellation On/Off	[0 to 1 / 0 / 1] 0: OFF (Lockout is not cancelled.) 1: ON (Lockout is cancelled if a user ID and password are correctly entered after the lockout function has been executed and a specific time has passed.)
	Turns on or off the cancellation function of the account lockout.	
	Cancellation Time	[1 to 9999 / 60 / 1 min]
004	Sets the interval of the retry for accessing the local address book account after the lockout function has been executed. This setting is enabled only if SP5413-3 is set to "1" (ON).	

5414	Access Mitigation
	Mitigation On/Off
001	Permits or does not permit consecutive access to the machine with the same ID and password.
001	[0 to 1 / 0 / 1]
	0: OFF (Permitted)
	1: ON (Not permitted)
	Mitigation Time
002	Sets the prohibiting time for consecutive access to the machine with the same ID and password.
	[0 to 60 / 15 / 1 min]

5415*	Password Attack	
	Permissible Number	[0 to 100 / 30 / 1 times]
001	Sets the threshold number of attempts to attack the system with random passwords to gain illegal access to the system.	

002	Detect Time	[1 to 10 / 5 / 1 sec]
	Sets a detection time to count a password attack.	

5416*	Access Information	
	Access User Max Num	[50 to 200 / 200 / 1]
001	Sets the number of users for the access exclusion and password attack detection function.	
	Access Password Num	[50 to 200 / 200 / 1]
002	Sets the number of passwords for the access exclusion and password attack detection function.	
002	Monitor interval	[1 to 10 / 3 / 1 sec]
003	Sets the interval of watching out for user information and passwords.	

5417	Access Attack	
001	Access Permissible number	[0 to 500 / 100 / 1]
001	Sets a limit on access attempts to prevent password cracking.	
000	Access Detect Time	[10 to 30 / 10 / 1 sec]
002	Sets a detection time to count password cracking.	
	Productivity Fall Waite	[0 to 9 / 3 / 1 sec]
003	Sets the wait time to slow down the speed of certification when an excessive number of access attempts have been detected.	
	Attack Max Num	[50 to 200 / 200 / 1]
004	Sets a limit on the number of requests received for certification in order to slow down the certification speed when an excessive number of access attempts have been detected.	

	User Authentication	
5420*	These settings should be done with the System Administrator.	
	↓ Note	
	These functions are enabled only after the user access feature has been enabled.	
041	Printer	[0 or 1/0/1] 0: ON. 1: OFF Determines whether certification is required before a user can use the printer application.
051	SDK1	[0 or 1/ 0 /1] 0: ON. 1: OFF
061	SDK2	Determines whether certification is required before
071	SDK3	a user can use the SDK application.

5481	Authentication Error Code	
3461	These SP codes determine how the authentication failures are displayed.	
001	System Log Disp	[0 or 1 / 0 / -] 0: OFF [Default], 1: ON Determines whether an error code appears in the system log after a user authentication failure occurs.
002	Panel Disp	[0 or 1 / 1 / 1] 0: OFF, 1: ON [Default] Determines whether an error code appears on the operation panel after a user authentication failure occurs.

5501*	PM Alarm
	PM Alarm Level
001	Sets the PM alarm level.
001	[0 to 9999 / 0 / 1 k copies/step]
	0: No PM alarm

	Jam Alarm
	Sets the alarm to sound for the specified jam level (document misfeeds are not included).
5504*	[0 to 3 / 3 / 1 step]
3304	0: Zero (Off)
	1: Low (2.5K jams)
	2: Medium (3K jams)
	3: High (6K jams)

	Error Alarm
	Sets the number of sheets to clear the error alarm counter.
5505*	The error alarm counter counts "1" when any SC is detected. However, the error alarm counter decreases by "1" when an SC is not detected during a set number of copied sheets (for example, default 5000 (C1b) or 10000 (C1c) sheets). The error alarm occurs when the SC error alarm counter reaches "5".
	[0 to 255 / 60 / 100 copies / step]

5508	CC Call	
001	Jam Remains	Enables/disables initiating a call.
002	Continuous Jams	[0 to 1 / 1 / 1]
003	Continuous Door Open	0: Disable 1: Enable
011	Jam Detection: Time Length	Sets the length of time to determine the length of an unattended paper jam. [3 to 30 / 10 / 1 minute]

012	Jam Detection Continuous Count	Sets the number of continuous paper jams required to initiate a call. [2 to 10 / 5 / 1 time]
013	Door Open: Time Length	Sets the length of time the remains opens to determine when to initiate a call. [3 to 30/10/1 minute]

	SC/Alarm Setting		
5515*	With @Remote in use, these SP codes can be set to issue an SC call when an SC error occurs. If this SP is switched off, the SC call is not issued when an SC error occurs.		
001	SC Call		
002	Service Parts Near End Call		
003	Service Parts End Call		
004	User Call		
006	Communication Information Test Call	[0 or 1 / 1 / 1] 0: OFF	
007	Machine Information Notice	1: ON	
008	Alarm Notice		
010	Supply Automatic Ordering Call		
011	Supply Management Report Call		
012	Jam/Door Open Call		

	Individual PM Part Alarm Call		
5516	With @Remote in use, these SP codes can be set to issue an PM alarm call when one of SP parts reaches its yield.		
001	Disable/Enable Setting (0: Not send, 1: Send)	[0 or 1 / 1 / -] 0: Not send, 1: Send	
004	Percent yield for triggering PM alert	[1 to 255 / 75 / 1 %/step]	

5731	Counter Effect (Not used)
------	---------------------------

001	Change Mk1 Cnt(Paper->Combine)	[0 or 1 / 0 / -]	
	enange vikir emit aper v combine,	0:Disable, 1: Enable	

5746	BMLinkS (Japan only)	
001	available	Disables or enables the BMLinkS feature. [0 or 1 / 1 / -] 0:Disable, 1: Enable
002	interval:mon	Displays the polling interval when the BMLinsS monitor service monitors the machine status. [10 to 3600 / 60 / 1 sec./step]
004	available:log	Displays the sending feature status of the BMLinkS log service. [0 or 1 / 1 / -] 0:Disable, 1: Enable

5749	Import/Export		
3749	Touch "Execute" to export or import the selected preference information.		
001		Target: [System] [Printer] [Fax] [Scanner]	
	Export	Option: [Unique] [Secret]	
		Crypt config: [Encryption]	
		[Execute]	
101		Option: [Unique]	
	Import	Crypt config: [Encryption]	
		Encryption key (if selected)	
		[Execute]	

	Job Access Log			
5750	Changes the capacity of log storage.			
	SP7-750-001	Job Log	Access Log	Eco Log
	0:OFF (Default)	2000	6000	2000
	1:ON	8000	1000	1000

	Memory Clear		
5801	Resets NVRAM data to the default settings. Before executing any of these SP codes, print an SMC Report.		
001	All Clear	Initializes items 2 to 19 below.	
002	Engine	Initializes all registration settings for the engine and copy process settings.	
003	SCS	Initializes default system settings, SCS (System Control Service) settings, operation display coordinates, and ROM update information.	
004	IMH Memory Clr	Initializes the image file system. (IMH: Image Memory Handler)	
005	MCS	Initializes the automatic delete time setting for stored documents. (MCS: Memory Control Service)	
008	Printer Application	Initializes the printer defaults, programs registered, the printer SP bit switches, and the printer CSS counter.	
010	Web Service	Deletes the Netfile (NFA) management files and thumbnails, and initializes the Job login ID. Netfiles: Jobs to be printed from the document server using a PC and the DeskTopBinder software	
011	NCS	Initializes the system defaults and interface settings (IP addresses also), the SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin settings, WebStatusMonitor settings, and the TELNET settings. (NCS: Network Control Service)	
014	Clear DCS Setting	Initializes the DCS (Delivery Control Service) settings.	

015	Clear UCS Setting	Initializes the UCS (User Information Control Service) settings.
016	MIRS Setting	Initializes the MIRS (Machine Information Report Service) settings.
017	CCS	Initializes the CCS (Certification and Charge-control Service) settings.
018	SRM Memory Clr	Initializes the SRM (System Resource Manager) settings.
019	LCS	Initializes the LCS (Log Count Service) settings.
021	ECS	Initializes ECS (Engine Control Service).
025	websys	Initializes websys (Web System).

	FreeRun	
5802*	Performs a free run on the copier engine. The correct paper should be loaded in the 1st tray or 2nd tray, but paper is not fed. The main switch has to be turned off and on after using the free run mode for a test.	
001	TRAY1:A4LEF	-
002	TRAY2:A3	-
003	TRAY2:A4SEF	-

	Input Check
5803	Displays the signals received from sensors and switches. (p.296 "Input Check Table")

	Output Check	
5804	Turns on the electrical components individually for test purposes. (** p.305 "Output Check Table")	

	Anti-Condensation Heater
5805	[0 or 1 / 0 / -]
	0:OFF / 1:ON

5810	SC Reset	
001	Fusing SC Reset	Resets all level A service call conditions, such as fusing errors. To clear the service call, touch "Execute" on the LCD, then turn the main power switch off/on.

5811	MachineSerial	
002	Display	Displays the machine serial number.
004	BCU	Inputs the serial number.

5812*	Service Tel. No. Setting		
001	Service Inputs the telephone number of the CE (displayed when a service condition occurs.)		
002	Use this to input the fax number of the CE printed on the Counter R (UP mode).		
003	Supply	Inputs the telephone number of the supplier displayed on the user mode screen.	
004	Operation	Allows the service center contact telephone number to be displayed on the user mode screen.	
101	DispInquiry	Allows the inquiry display to be displayed on the user mode screen. 0: Displayed 1: Not displayed	

5816	Remote Service			
	I/F Setting			
	Selects the remote service setting.			
001	[0 to 2 / 2 / 1 /step]			
	0: Remote service off			
	1: CSS remote service on			
	2: @Remote service on			

	CE Call
	Performs the CE Call at the start or end of the service.
002	[0 or 1 / 1 / 1 /step]
	0: Start of the service
	1: End of the service
	NOTE: This SP is activated only when SP 5816-001 is set to "2".
	Function Flag
	Enables or disables the remote service function.
003	[0 to 1 / 0 / 1 /step]
	0: Disabled, 1: Enabled
	NOTE: This SP setting is changed to "1" after @Remote registration has been completed.
	SSL Disable
	Uses or does not use the RCG certification by SSL when calling the RCG.
007	[0 to 1 / 0 / 1 /step]
	0: Uses the RCG certification
	1: Does no use the RCG certification
	RCG Connect Timeout
800	Specifies the connect timeout interval when calling the RCG.
	[1 to 90 / 30 / 1 second /step]
	RCG Write Timeout
009	Specifies the write timeout interval when calling the RCG.
	[0 to 100 / 60 / 1 second /step]
	RCG Read Timeout
010	Specifies the read timeout interval when calling the RCG.
	[0 to 100 / 60 / 1 second /step]
	Port 80 Enable
011	Enables/disables access via port 80 to the SOAP method.
	[0 or 1 / 0 / -]
	0: Disabled, 1: Enabled

	RFU (Remote Firmware Update) Timing
	Selects the RFU timing.
013	[0 or 1 / 1 / –]
	0: RFU is executed whenever update request is received.
	1: RFU is executed only when the machine is in the sleep mode.
	RCG Error Cause
	[0 or 1 / 0 / -]
014	0: Normal
	1: Fails to reflect the client/server certificate settings by network failure to reboot. Transitions to 0 on restarting the machine.
	RCG-C Registed
021	This SP displays the Embedded RC Gate installation end flag.
021	0: Installation not completed
	1: Installation completed
	Connect Type (N/M)
	This SP displays and selects the Embedded RC Gate connection method.
023	[0 or 1 / 0 / 1 /step
	0: Internet connection
	1: Dial-up connection
061	Cert. Expire Timing DFU
001	Proximity of the expiration of the certification.
	Use Proxy
062	This SP setting determines if the proxy server is used when the machine communicates with the service center.

Proxy Host This SP sets the address of the proxy server used for communication between Embedded RC Gate-N and the gateway. Use this SP to set up or display the customer proxy server address. The address is necessary to set up Embedded RC Gate-N. 063 **₩** Note • The address display is limited to 128 characters. Characters beyond the 128 character are ignored. • This address is customer information and is not printed in the SMC report. Proxy Port Number This SP sets the port number of the proxy server used for communication between Embedded RC Gate-N and the gateway. This setting is necessary to set up Embedded 064 RC Gate-N. **₩** Note • This port number is customer information and is not printed in the SMC report. Proxy User Name This SP sets the HTTP proxy certification user name. **Note** 065 • The length of the name is limited to 31 characters. Any character beyond the 31st character is ignored. This name is customer information and is not printed in the SMC report. Proxy Password This SP sets the HTTP proxy certification password. **Note** 066 • The length of the password is limited to 31 characters. Any character beyond the 31st character is ignored. • This name is customer information and is not printed in the SMC report.

	CERT: Up State			
	Displays the status of the certification update.			
	0	The certification used by Embedded RC Gate is set correctly.		
	1	The certification request (setAuthKey) for update has been received from the GW URL and certification is presently being updated.		
	2	The certification update is completed and the GW URL is being notified of the successful update.		
	3	The certification update failed, and the GW URL is being notified of the failed update.		
	4	The period of the certification has expired and new request for an update is being sent to the GW URL.		
	11	A rescue update for certification has been issued and a rescue certification setting is in progress for the rescue GW connection.		
067	12	The rescue certification setting is completed and the GW URL is being notified of the certification update request.		
	13	The notification of the request for certification update has completed successfully, and the system is waiting for the certification update request from the rescue GW URL.		
	14	The notification of the certification request has been received from the rescue GW controller, and the certification is being stored.		
	15	The certification has been stored, and the GW URL is being notified of the successful completion of this event.		
	16	The storing of the certification has failed, and the GW URL is being notified of the failure of this event.		
	17	The certification update request has been received from the GW URL, the GW URL was notified of the results of the update after it was completed, but a certification error has been received, and the rescue certification is being recorded.		
	18	The rescue certification of No. 17 has been recorded, and the GW URL is being notified of the failure of the certification update.		

	CERT	: Error		
	Displays a number code that describes the reason for the request for update of the certification.			
	0	Normal. There is no request for certification update in progress.		
	1	Request for certification update in progress. The current certification has expired.		
068	2	An SSL error notification has been issued. Issued after the certification has expired.		
	3	Notification of shift from a common authentication to an individual certification.		
	4	Notification of a commo	on certification without ID2.	
	5	Notification that no certi	ification was issued.	
	6	Notification that GW UI	RL does not exist.	
069	CERT	: Up ID	The ID of the request for certification.	
083	Firm Up Status		Displays the status of the firmware update.	
085	Firm Up User Check		This SP setting determines if the operator can confirm the previous version of the firmware before the firmware update execution. If the option to confirm the previous version is selected, a notification is sent to the system manager and the firmware update is done with the firmware files from the URL.	
086	Firmware Size		Allows the service technician to confirm the size of the firmware data files during the firmware update execution.	
087	CERT: Macro Ver.		Displays the macro version of the @Remote certification.	
088	CERT: PAC Ver.		Displays the PAC version of the @Remote certification.	
089	CERT: ID2 Code		Displays ID2 for the @Remote certification. Spaces are displayed as underscores (_). Asteriskes (*) indicate that no @Remote certification exists. "000000" indicates "Common certification".	
090	CERT: Subject		Displays the common name of the @Remote certification subject. CN = the following 17 bytes. Spaces are displayed as underscores (_). Asterisks (*) indicate that no @Remote certification exists. "000000" indicates "Common certification".	

091	CERT: SerialNo. Displays serial number for the @Remote certification. Asterisks (*) indicate that no @Remote certification exists			
092	CERT: Issuer	Displays the common name of the issuer of the @Remote certification. CN = the following 30 bytes. Asteriskes () indicate that no @Remote certification exists.		
093	CERT: Valid Start Displays the start time of the period for which the matter of the matter of the period for the matter of the			
094	CERT: Valid End Displays the end time of the period for which the currer @Remote certification is enabled.			
	CERT: Encrypt Level			
102*	Displays the encryption level for the NRS certificate. [1 or 2 / 1 / -] 1: Indicates that the certificate encryption level is 512-bit. 2: Indicates that the certificate encryption level is 2048-bit.			
	Manual Polling			
200	Executes the manual polling.			
	Regist Status			
	Displays a number that indicates the status of the @Remote service device. O: Neither the @Remote device nor Embedded RCG Gate is set.			
201	1: The Embedded RCG Gate is being set. Only Box registration is completed. In this status, @Remote device cannot communicate with this device.			
	2: The Embedded RCG Gate is set. In this status, the @Remote device cannot communicate with this device.			
	3: The @Remote device is being set. In this status the Embedded RCG Gate cannot be set.			
	4: The @Remote module has not started.			
202	Letter Number Allows entry of the request number needed for the Embedded RCG Gate.			
203	Confirm Execute Executes the confirmation request to the @Remote Gateway.			
204	Confirm Result			

	Displays a number that indicases SP5816-203.	ates the result of the confirmation executed with		
	0: Succeeded			
	1: Confirmation number error			
	2: Registration in progress			
	3: Proxy error (proxy enable	d)		
	4: Proxy error (proxy disable	ed)		
	5: Proxy error (Illegal user no	ame or password)		
	6: Communication error			
	7: Certification update error			
	8: Other error			
	9: Confirmation executing	9: Confirmation executing		
	Confirm Place			
205	Displays the result of the notification sent to the device from the Gateway in answer to the confirmation request. Displayed only when the result is registered at the Gateway.			
206	Register Execute	Executes "Embedded RCG Registration".		
	Register Result			
	Displays a number that indice	ates the registration result.		
	0: Succeeded			
	2: Registration in progress			
	3: Proxy error (proxy enabled)			
207	4: Proxy error (proxy disabled)			
	5: Proxy error (Illegal user name or password)			
	6: Communication error			
	7: Certification update error			
	7. Cermication opadie error	8: Other error		
	·			

Error Code

Displays a number that describes the error code that was issued when either SP5816-204 or SP5816-207 was executed.

	Cause	Code	Meaning	
		-11001	Chat parameter error	
	Illegal Modem Parameter	-11002	Chat execution error	
		-11003	Unexpected error	
		-12002	Inquiry, registration attempted without acquiring device status.	
	Operation Error, Incorrect Setting	-12003	Attempted registration without execution of an inquiry and no previous registration.	
208		-12004	Attempted setting with illegal entries for certification and ID2.	
		-12005	@Remote communication is prohibited. The device has an Embedded RC gate-related problem.	
		-12006	A confirmation request was made after the confirmation had been already completed.	
		-12007	The request number used at registration was different from the one used at confirmation.	
		-12008	Update certification failed because mainframe was in use.	
		-12009	ID2 mismatch between an individual certification and NVRAM	
		-12010	Certification area is not initialized.	

		-2385	Attempted dial up overseas without the correct international prefix for the telephone number.	
	Error Caused by Response	-2387	Not supported at the Service Center	
		-2389	Database out of service	
	from GW URL	-2390	Program out of service	
		-2391	Two registrations for same device	
		-2392	Parameter error	
		-2393	RCG device not managed	
		-2394	Device not managed	
		-2395	Box ID for RCG device is illegal	
		-2396	Device ID for RCG device is illegal	
		-2397	Incorrect ID2 format	
		-2398	Incorrect request number format	
		Releases the machine from its Embedded RCG Gate setup.		
209	Instl Clear	NOTE: Turn off and on the main power switch after this setting has been changed.		
250	CommLog Print	Prints the communication log.		

5821*	Remote Service Address		
002	RCG IP Address Sets the IP address of the RCG (Remote Communication Gate) destination for call processing at the remote set center. [00000000h to FFFFFFFFh / 00000000h / 1]		
003	RCG Port	Sets the port number of the RCG (Remote Communication Gate) destination for call processing at the remote service center. [0 to 65535 / 443 / 1]	

004 RCG URL Path	Sets the URL path of the RCG (Remote Communication Gate) destination for call processing at the remote service center. [0 to 16 characters / /RCG/services/ /-]
------------------	--

	NV-RAM Data Upload
5824	Uploads the NVRAM data to an SD card. Push Execute.
	Note: When uploading data in this SP mode, the front door must be open.

		NV-RAM Data Download	
5825	5	Downloads data from an SD card to the NVRAM in the machine. After downloading is completed, remove the card and turn the machine power off and on.	

5828	5828 Network Setting		
050	1284 Compatibility (Centro)	Enables and disables bi-directional communication on the parallel connection between the machine and a computer. [0 to 1 / 1 / 1] 0:Off, 1: On	
052	ECP (Centro)	Disables and enables the ECP feature (1284 Mode) for data transfer. [0 to 1 / 1 / 1] 0: Disabled, 1: Enabled	
065	Job Spooling	Switches the job spooling on and off. [0 to 1 / 0 / 1] 0: No spooling, 1: Spooling enabled	
066	Job Spooling Clear: Start Time	This SP determines whether the job interrupted at power off is resumed at the next power on. This SP operates only when SP5828-065 is set to "1". [0 to 1 / 1 / 1] 1: OFF Resumes printing spooled jog. 0: ON Clears spooled job.	

	Job Spooling (Protocol)		This SP determines whether job spooling is enabled or disabled for each protocol. This is a 8-bit setting. [0 to 1 / 1 / 1] 0: No spooling, 1: Spooling enabled		
069			0.1403	4	BMLinks (Japan Only)
	1	FTP (Not Used)		5	DIPRINT
	2	IPP		6	SFTP
	3	SMB		7	WSPRND
087	@R	Remote Protocol Cnt (DFU)			
090	TELNET (0:OFF 1:ON)		Disables or enables Telnet operation. If this SP is disabled, the Telnet port is closed. [O to 1 / 1 / 1] O: Disable, 1: Enable		
091	Web (0:OFF 1:ON)		[0 to 1	/ 1	enables the Web operation. / 1] 1: Enable
145	Active IPv6 Link Local Address Ethernet or v Local address The IPv6 add in 8 blocks of		Pv6 local address referenced on the wireless LAN (802.11) in the format: "Linkess" + "Prefix Length" Iddress consists of a total 128 bits configured of 16 bits each. These notations can be d. See "Note: IPV6 Addresses " below this		

147	Active IPv6 Stateless Address		
149	Active IPv6 Stateless Address 2	These SPs are the IPv6 stateless addresses (1 to 5) referenced on the Ethernet or wireless LAN (802.11) in	
151	Active IPv6 Stateless Address	the format: "Stateless Address" + "Prefix Length"	
153	Active IPv6 Stateless Address	The IPv6 address consists of a total 128 bits configured in 8 blocks of 16 bits each.	
155	Active IPv6 Stateless Address 5		
	IPv6 Manual Address		
156	This SP is the IPv6 manually set address referenced on the Ethernet or wireless LAN (802.11) in the format:		
100	"Manual Set Address" + "Prefix Length"		
	The IPv6 address consists of a total 128 bits configured in 8 blocks of 16 bits each. These notations can be abbreviated. See "Note: IPV6 Addresses" below this table.		
	IPv6 Gateway Address		
158	(802.11). The IPv6 address co	dress referenced on the Ethernet or wireless LAN onsists of a total 128 bits configured in 8 blocks of 16 be abbreviated. See "Note: IPV6 Addresses" below this	

Note: IPV6 Addresses

Ethernet and the Wireless LAN (802.11) reference the IPV6 "Link-Local address + Prefix Length". The IPV6 address consists of 128 bits divided into 8 blocks of 16 bits: aaaa:bbbb:cccc:ddd:eeee:ffff:gggg:hhhh:

The prefix length is inserted at the 17th byte (Prefix Range: 0x0 to 0x80). The initial setting is 0x40 (64).

For example, the data: "2001123456789012abcdef012345678940h" is expressed:

"2001:1234:5678:9012:abcd:ef01:2345:6789": prefixlen 64

However, the actual IPV6 address display is abbreviated according to the following rules.

Rules for Abbreviating IPV6 Addresses

1. The IPV6 address is expressed in hexadecimal delimited by colons (:) with the following characters:

0123456789abcdefABCDEF

2. A colon is inserted as a delimiter every 4th hexadecimal character.

fe80:0000:0000:0000:0207:40ff:0000:340e

3. The notations can be abbreviated by eliminating zeros where the MSB and digits following the MSB are zero. The example in "2" above, then, becomes

fe80:0:0:0207:40ff:0:340e

4. Sections where only zeros exist can be abbreviated with double colons (::). This abbreviation can be done also where succeeding sections contain only zeros (but this can be done only at one point in the address). The example in "2" and "3" above then becomes:

 ${\it fe80::207:40ff:0:340e}$ (only the first null sets zero digits are abbreviated as "::")

fe80:0:0:0:207:40ff::340e (only the last null set before "340e" is abbreviated as "::")

	IPv6 Stateless Auto Setting	Enable or disables the automatic setting for IPv6 stateless.	
161		[0 or 1 / 1 / 1]	
		1: Enable, 0: Disable	
	Web Item visible		
	Displays or does not display the Web system items.		
236	[0 x 0000 to 0 x ffff / 0 x ffff] 0: Not displayed, 1: Displayed		
200	bit0: Net RICOH		
	bit1: Consumable Supplier		
	bit2-15: Reserved (all)		
	Web shopping link visible		
237	Displays or does not display the link to Net RICOH on the top page and link page of the web system.		
	[0 to 1 / 1 / 1]		
	0: Not display, 1:Display		

	Web supplies Link visible		
238	Displays or does not display the page of the web system.	e link to Consumable Supplier on the top page and link	
	[0 to 1 / 1 / 1]		
	0: Not display, 1:Display		
	Web Link1 Name		
239	This SP confirms or changes the URL1 name on the link page of the web system. The maximum characters for the URL name are 31 characters.		
	Web Link1 URL		
240	his SP confirms or changes the link to URL1 on the link page of the web system. The maximum characters for the URL are 127 characters.		
	Web Link 1 visible		
241	Displays or does not display the link to URL1 on the top page of the web system.		
2-71	[0 to 1 / 1 / 1]		
	0: Not display, 1:Display		
242	Web Link2 Name	Same as "-239"	
243 Web Link2 URL Same as "-24		Same as "-240"	
244	Web Link2 visible Same as "-241"		
	DHCPv6 DUID		
249	Sets DHCPv6 DUID.		
247	[000000000000000000000000]	0000000h to	
	FFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFF / 0000000000000000		

	HDD
5832	Enter the SP number for the partition to initialize, then press #. When the execution ends, cycle the machine off and on.
001	HDD Formatting (All)

5834	Operation Panel Image Exposure Function
3634	DFU

5840*	IEEE 802.11		
	Channel MAX		
006	Sets the maximum range of the bandwidth for the wireless LAN. This bandwidth se varies for different countries. [1 to 14 / 11 (NA), 13 (EU), 14 (JPN) / 1] JPN: 1 to 14, NA: 1 to 11, EU: 1 to 13		
	Channel MIN		
Sets the minimum range of the bandwidth for operation of the wireless LAN bandwidth setting varies for different countries. [1 to 14 / 1 / 1] JPN: 1 to 14, NA: 1 to 11, EU: 1 to 13		rent countries.	
	Transmission speed	[0 x 00 to 0 x FF / 0 x FF to Auto / -]	
008	0 x FF to Auto [Default] 0 x 11 - 55M Fix 0 x 10 - 48M Fix 0 x 0F - 36M Fix 0 x 0E - 18M Fix 0 x 0D - 12M Fix 0 x 0B - 9M Fix 0 x 0A - 6M Fix	0 x 07 - 11M Fix 0 x 05 - 5.5M Fix 0 x 08 - 1M Fix 0 x 13 - 0 x FE (reserved) 0 x 12 - 72M (reserved) 0 x 09 - 22M (reserved)	
011	WEP Key Select Selects the WEP key. Bit 1 and 0 O0: Key1, 01: Key2 (Reserved), 10: Key3 (Reserved), 11: Key4(Reserved) This SP is displayed only when the IEEE802.11 card is installed.		

	Fragment Thresh
042	Adjusts the fragment threshold for the IEEE802.11 card.
	[256 to 2346 / 2346 / 1]
	This SP is displayed only when the IEEE802.11 card is installed.
	11g CTS to Self
043	Determines whether the CTS self function is turned on or off.
	[0 to 1 / 1 / 1] 0: Off, 1: On
	This SP is displayed only when the IEEE802.11 card is installed.
	1 1g Slot Time
044	Selects the slot time for IEEE802.11.
	[0 to 1 / 0 / 1] 0: 20 µm, 1: 9 µm
	This SP is displayed only when the IEEE802.11 card is installed.
	WPA Debug Lvl
045	Selects the debug level for WPA authentication application.
	[1 to 3 / 3 / 1] 1: Info, 2: warning, 3: error
	This SP is displayed only when the IEEE802.11 card is installed.

	Supply Name Setting	
Press the User Tools key. These names a on the User Tools screen.		nes appear when the user presses the Inquiry button
001	Toner Name Setting: Black	
011	StapleStd1	
012	StapleStd2	
013	StapleStd3	
014	StapleStd4	

5844	USB

	Transfer Rate
001	Sets the speed for USB data transmission.
001	[0 x 01 or 0 x 04 / 0 x 04 /-]
	0 x 01 [Full Speed], 0 x 04 [Auto Change]
	Vendor ID
002	Sets the vendor ID:
002	Initial Setting: 0x05A Ricoh Company
	[0x0000 to 0xFFFF/1] (DFU)
	Product ID
003	Sets the product ID.
	[0x0000 to 0xFFFF/1] (DFU)
	Device Release No.
	Sets the device release number of the BCD (binary coded decimal) display.
004	[0000 to 9999 / 100 / 1] (DFU)
	Enter as a decimal number. NCS converts the number to hexadecimal number recognized as the BCD.
005	Fixed USB Port
This SP standardizes for common use the model name and serial number for (Plug & Play). It determines whether the driver requires re-installation.	
	[0 to 2 / 0 / 1]
	0: OFF
	1: Level 1
2: Level 2 O06 PnP Model Name	
Default: Laser Printer (up to 20 characters allowed).	
007	PnP Serial Number

This SP sets the serial number to be used by the USB PnP when "Function Enable (Level set so the USB Serial No. can have a common name (SP5844-5). Default: None (up to 12 characters allowed for entry). • Make sure that this entry is the same as the serial number in use. • At initialization the serial number generated from the model name is used, not the setting of this SP code. • At times other than initialization, the value set for this SP code is used. 800 Mac Supply Level This SP switches of and on the Mac supply level function. [0 to 1 / 1 / 1] 0: OFF 1: ON 100 Notify Unsupport This SP determines whether an alert message appears on the control panel when a USB device (unsupported device) that cannot use an A-connector is connected. [0 to 1 / 1 / 1] 0: Function enable 1: Function disable • An unsupported device is a device that cannot use the functions of the USB device. For example, a USB mouse cannot be used even if it connected. • If the PictBridge option is not mounted, even if a digital camera is connected it cannot be used because it is an unsupported device.

5845*	Delivery Server Setting
3643	These are delivery server settings.
	Delivery Retry Interval
003	[60 to 900 / 300 / 1 /step]
	Sets the wait time from the error action to the retry.

	Delivery Retry times	
004	[0 to 99 / 3 / 1 time(s) / step] Sets how many times to retry.	
022	Rapid Sending Control	[0 to 1 / 1 / -] 0: Disable, 1: Enable
	Enables or disables the prevention function for the continuous data sending error.	

5846*	UCS Setting	
	LDAP Search Timeout	
010	Sets the length of the time-out for the search of the LDAP server. [1 to 255 / 60 / 1 step]	
041	Fill Addr Acl Info.	
	This SP must be executed immediately after installation of an HDD unit in a basic machine that previously had no HDD. The first time the machine is powered on with t new HDD installed, the system automatically takes the address book from the NVRA and writes it onto the new HDD. However, the new address book on the HDD can baccessed only by the system administrator at this stage. Executing this SP by the servitechnician immediately after power on grants full address book access to all users.	
	Procedure	
	1. Turn the machine off.	
	2. Install the new HDD.	
	3. Turn the machine on.	
 4. The address book and its initial data are created on the HDD automatic However, at this point the address book can be accessed by only the sy administrator or key operator. 5. Enter the SP mode and do SP5846 041. After this SP executes successful user can access the address book. 		

	Addr Book Media		
	Displays the slot number where an address book data is in.		
	[0 to 30 / - /1]		
043	0: Unconfirmed		
	1: SD Slot 1	20: HDD	
	2: SD Slot 2	30: Nothing	
	4: USB Flash ROM		
	Initialize Local Address Book		
047	Clears all of the address information from th managed with UCS.	e local address book of a machine	
	Initialize LDAP Addr Book		
049	Push [Execute] to delete all items (this does not include user codes) in the LDAP address book that is controlled by UCS.		
	Initialize All Addr Book		
050	Clears everything (including users codes) in the directory information managed by UCS. However, the accounts and passwords of the system administrators are not deleted.		
Backup All Addr Book			
051	Copies all directory information to the SD card. Do this SP before replacing the controller board or HDD. The operation may not succeed if the controller board of HDD is damaged.		
	Restore All Addr Book		
Copies back all directory information from the SD card to the flash ROM or Upload the address book from the old flash ROM or HDD with SP5846-51 removing it. Do SP5846 52 after installing the new HDD.		ROM or HDD with SP5846-51 before	
	Clear Backup Info		
053	Deletes the address book uploaded from the SD card in the slot 2. Deletes only the files uploaded for that machine. This feature does not work if the card is write-protected.		
	Note: After you do this SP, go out of the SP mode, turn the power off. Do not remove the SD card until the Power LED stops flashing.		

Search Option

Meaning

Rit

060

This SP uses bit switches to set up the fuzzy search options for the UCS local address book.

DII	Mediling
0	Checks both upper/lower case characters
1	
2	Japan Only
3	
4	Not Used
5	Not Used
6	Not Used
7	Not Used

Complexity Option 1

Use this SP to set the conditions for password entry to access the local address book. Specifically, this SP limits the password entry to upper case and sets the length of the password.

062 [0 to 32 / **0** / 1step]



- This SP does not normally require adjustment.
- This SP is enabled only after the system administrator has set up a group password policy to control access to the address book.

Complexity Option 2

Use this SP to set the conditions for password entry to access the local address book. Specifically, this SP limits the password entry to lower case and defines the length of the password.

063 [0 to 32 / 0 / 1 step]



- This SP does not normally require adjustment.
- This SP is enabled only after the system administrator has set up a group password policy to control access to the address book.

Complexity Option 3 Use this SP to set the conditions for password entry to access the local address book. Specifically, this SP limits the password entry to numbers and defines the length of the password. 064 [0 to 32 / **0** / 1 step] **U** Note • This SP does not normally require adjustment. • This SP is enabled only after the system administrator has set up a group password policy to control access to the address book. Complexity Option 4 Use this SP to set the conditions for password entry to access the local address book. Specifically, this SP limits the password entry to symbols and defines the length of the password. 065 [0 to 32 / **0** / 1step] **U** Note • This SP does not normally require adjustment. • This SP is enabled only after the system administrator has set up a group password policy to control access to the address book. **Encryption Start** 094 Shows the status of the encryption function of the address book on the LDAP server.

	Web Service		
5848*	5848-2 sets the 4-bit switch assignment for the access control setting. Setting of 0001 has no effect on access and delivery from Scan Router.		
	5848-100 sets the maximum size of images that can be equal to 1 gigabyte.	e downloaded. The default is	
004	Acc. Ctrl.: User Directory (Lower 4 Bits)		
009	Acc. Ctrl.: Job Control (Lower 4 Bits)	Switches access control on and off. 0000: OFF, 0001: ON	
011	Acc. Ctrl: Device Management (Lower 4 Bits)		
022	Acc. Ctrl: User Administration (Lower 4 Bits)		

[0 to 255 / 1] No default

010	Setting: Log Type: Job 1
210	No information is available at this time.
011	Setting: Log Type: Job 2
211	No information is available at this time.
212	Setting: Log Type: Access
212	No information is available at this time.
213	Setting: Primary Srv
213	No information is available at this time.
214	Setting: Secondary Srv
214	No information is available at this time.
215	Setting: Start Time
213	No information is available at this time.
216	Setting: Interval Time
210	No information is available at this time.
217	Setting: Timing
217	No information is available at this time.

5849	Installation Date		
3049	Displays or prints the installation date of the machine.		
001	Display	The "Counter Clear Day" has been changed to "Installation Date" or "Inst. Date".	
002	Switch to Print	Determines whether the installation date is printed on the printout for the total counter.	
		[0 to 1 / 1 / -]	
		0: OFF (No Print)	
		1: ON (Print)	

003 Total Counter	When the total number of pages that are made reaches this value, the current date becomes the 'official' installation date for this machine. [0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1]
-------------------	---

5856	Remote ROM Update
002	When set to "1" allows reception of firmware data via the local port (IEEE 1284) during a remote ROM update. This setting is reset to zero after the machine is cycled off and on. Allows the technician to upgrade the firmware using a parallel cable
	[0 to 1 / 0 / 1 step]
	0: Not allowed 1: Allowed

5857	Save Debug Log
	On/Off (1:ON 0:OFF)
001	Switches on the debug log feature. The debug log cannot be captured until this feature is switched on.
	[0 to 1 / 0 / 1]
	0: OFF, 1: ON
	Target (2: HDD 3: SD)
002	Selects the destination where the debugging information generated by the event selected by SP5858 will be stored if an error is generated
	[2 to 3 / 2 / 1]
	2: HDD, 3: SD Card
005	Save to HDD
003	Specifies the decimal key number of the log to be written to the hard disk.
006	Save to SD Card
000	Specifies the decimal key number of the log to be written to the SD Card.

	Copy HDD to SD Card (Latest 4 MB)
009	
	Takes the most recent 4 MB of the log written to the hard disk and copies them to the SD Card.
	A unique file name is generated to avoid overwriting existing file names on the SD
	Card. Up to 4MB can be copied to an SD Card. 4 MB segments can be copied one by one to each SD Card.
	·
	Copy HDD to SD Card Latest 4 MB Any Key)
010	Takes the log of the specified key from the log on the hard disk and copies it to the SD Card.
010	A unique file name is generated to avoid overwriting existing file names on the SD
	Card. Up to 4 MB can be copied to an SD Card. 4 MB segments can be copied one by one to each SD Card. This SP does not execute if there is no log on the HDD with no
	key specified.
011	Erase HDD Debug Data
011	Erases all debug logs on the HDD
	Erase SD Card Debug Data
012	Erases all debug logs on the SD Card. If the card contains only debugging files generated by an event specified by SP5858, the files are erased when SP5857 010 or 011 is executed.
	To enable this SP, the machine must be cycled off and on.
013	Free Space on SD Card
013	Displays the amount of space available on the SD card.
	Copy SD to SD (Latest 4MB)
014	Copies the last 4MB of the log (written directly to the card from shared memory) onto an SD card.
	Copy SD to SD (Latest 4MB Any Key)
015	This SP copies the log on an SD card (the file that contains the information written directly from shared memory) to a log specified by key number.
	Make HDD Debug
016	This SP creates a 32 MB file to store a log on the HDD.

017	Make SD Debug	
	This SP creates a 4 MB file to store a log on an SD card.	

	Debug Save When		
These SPs select the content of the debugging information to be sav destination selected by SP5857-002. SP5858-003 stores one SC specified by number.			
001*	Engine SC Error (0:OFF 1:ON)	Stores SC codes generated by copier engine errors.	
002*	Controller SC Error (0:OFF 1:ON)	Stores SC codes generated by GW controller errors.	
003*	Any SC Error	[0 to 65535 / 0 / 1 step]	
004*	Jam (0:OFF 1:ON)	Stores jam errors.	

5859*	Debug Save K	Cey No.
001	Key 1	
002	Key 2	
003	Key 3	
004	Key 4	
005	Key 5	These SPs allow you to set up to 10 keys for log files for functions that use common memory on the controller board. [0 to 9999999 / 0 / 1]
006	Key 6	
007	Key 7	
008	Key 8	
009	Key 9	
010	Key 10	

5860*	SMTP/POP3/IMAP4
-------	-----------------

	SMTP Server Port Number
002	This SP sets the number of the SMTP server port.
	[1 to 65535 / 25 / 1]
	SMTP Authentication
003	This setting switches SMTP certification on and off for mail sending.
	[0 or 1 / 0 / -]
	0: Off, 1: On
	SMTP Auth. Encryption
006	This setting determines whether the password for SMTP certification is encrypted.
	[0 to 2/ 0 /1] 0: Automatic, 1: No encryption done, 2: Encryption done
	POP before SMTP
007	This setting determines whether the transmission connects with the POP server first for certification before it connects to the SMTP server for sending. [0 or 1 / 0 / -]
	0: No connection to POP server
	1: Connection to POP server
	POP to SMTP Waiting Time
008	This SP sets the amount of time to allow for the connection to the SMTP server after the transmission has connected to the POP server and been certified during the execution of POP Before SMTP. [0 to 10000 / 300 / 1 ms]
	Mail Receive Protocol
009	This SP specifies a protocol for the mail reception or switches off receiving. [1 to 3 / 1 / 1]
	1: POP3 protocol, 2: IMAP4 protocol, 3: SMTP protocol
	POP3/IMAP4 Auth. Encryption
013	This SP specifies whether password encryption is done for POP3/IMAP4 certification.
013	[0 to 2 / 0 / 1]
	0: Automatic, 1: No encryption done, 2: Encryption done

g reception. eceived
/ mail.

	SMTP Auth. From Field Replacement
022	Determines whether the FROM item of the mail header is switched to the validated account after the SMTP server is validated.
022	[0 to 1 / 0 / 1]
	0: No. "From" item not switched.
	1: Yes. "From" item switched.
	SMTP Auth Direct Sending
	Select the authentication method for SMPT.
	Bit 0: LOGIN
	Bit 1: PLAIN
025	Bit 2: CRAM_MD5
	Bit 3: DIGEST_MD5
	Bit 4 to Bit 7: Not Used
	↓ Note
	This SP is activated only when SMTP authentication is enabled by UP mode.
	S/MIME: MIME Header Setting
	Selects the MIME header type of an E-mail sent by S/MIME.
026	[0 to 2 / 0 / 1]
	0: Microsoft Outlook Express standard
	1: Internet Draft standard
	2: RFC standard

5869	RAM Disk Setting	
001	Mail Function	Enables or disables the Mail function.
001	Mail Function	[0 or 1 / 0 / –] 0: Enabled, 1: Disabled

5870	Common Key Info Writing	
001	Writing	Writes to flash ROM the common proof for validating the device for @Remote specifications.
003	Initialize	Initializes the data area of the common proof for validating.

004	Writing: 2048bit	Writes to flash ROM the common proof (2048-bit) for validating the device for @Remote specifications.	

		SD Card Appli.	Move
58	373	Allows you to move applications from one SD card another. For more, see "SD Card Appli Move" in the chapter "System Maintenance (Main Chapters).	
	001	Move Exec	Executes the move from one SD card to another.
	002	Undo Exec	This is an undo function. It cancels the previous execution.

5878	Option Setup	
001	Data Overwrite Security	Press [Execute] to initialize the Data Overwrite Security option for the copier. For more, see "DataOverwriteSecurity Unit" in the chapter "Installation".

5881	Fixed Phrase Block Erasing
	Detects the Fixed phrase.

5887	SD Get Counter
3667	This SP determines whether the ROM can be updated.
001	This SP sends a text file to an SD card inserted in SD card Slot 2 (lower slot). The operation stores. The file is stored in a folder created in the root directory of the SD card called SD_COUNTER. The file is saved as a text file (*.txt) prefixed with the number of the machine.
	1. Insert the SD card in SD card Slot 2 (lower slot).
	2. Select SP5887 then touch [EXECUTE].
	Touch [Execute] in the message when you are prompted.

	Personal Information Protect
	Selects the protection level for logs.
5888*	[0 to 1 / 0 / 1]
	0: No authentication, No protection for logs
	1: No authentication, Protected logs (only an administrator can see the logs)

5893	SDK Application Counter
3693	Displays the counter name of each SDK application.
001	SDK-1
002	SDK-2
003	SDK-3
004	SDK-4
005	SDK-5
006	SDK-6

5907		Plug & Play Maker/Model Name
	5907	Selects the brand name and the production name for Windows Plug & Play. This information is stored in the NVRAM. If the NVRAM is defective, these names should be registered again.
		After selecting, press the "Original Type" key and "#" key at the same time. When the setting is completed, the beeper sounds five times.

5930	Meter Charge
	Display Operation State
001	0: OFF
	1: ON

	5985	Device Setting
		The USB support feature is built into the GW controller. Use this SP to enable and disable the features. In order to use the USB function built into the controller board, this SP code must be set to "1".

002	On Board USB	[0 or 1 / 0 / 1/step]
		0: Disable, 1: Enable

5990	SP Print Mode
3990	Prints out the SMC sheets.
001	All (Data List)
002	SP (Mode Data List)
004	Logging Data
005	Diagnostic Report
006	Non-Default
007	NIB Summary
024	SDK/J Summary
025	SDK/J Application Info
026	Printer SP

Engine Main SP Tables-6

SP6-xxx: Peripherals

6128	Punch Position: Sub Scan	
0120	Adjusts the punching position in the sub scan direction. (For D636)	
001	2-Hole: DOM (Japan)	
002	3-Hole: NA	
003	4-Hole: EU	[-7.5 to 7.5 / 0 / 0.5 mm]
004	5-Hole: SCAN	
005	2-Hole: NA	

6129	Punch Position: Main Scan	
0129	Adjusts the punching position in the main scan direction. (For D636)	
001	2-Hole: DOM (Japan)	
002	3-Hole: NA	
003	4-Hole: EU	[-2 to 2 / 0 / 0.4 mm]
004	4-Hole: SCAN	
005	2-Hole: NA	

	6130*	Skew Correction: Buckle Adj.
		Adjusts the paper buckle at the punch unit for each paper size. (For D636)

5

001	A3 SEF	
002	B4 SEF	
003	A4 SEF	
004	A4 LEF	
005	B5 SEF	
006	B5 LEF	[-5 to 5 / 0 / 0.25 mm]
007	DLT SEF	[-3 10 3 / 0 / 0.23 mm]
008	LG SEF	
009	LT SEF	
010	LT LEF	
011	12" x 18"	
012	Other	

	6131*	Skew Correction Control
0	0131	Selects the skew correction control for each paper size. (For D636)

001	A3 SEF	
002	B4 SEF	
003	A4 SEF	
004	A4 LEF	
005	B5 SEF	
006	B5 LEF	[0 to 1 / 1 / 1 mm]
007	DLT SEF	
008	LG SEF	
009	LT SEF	
010	LT LEF	
011	12" x 18"	
012	Other	

	Jogger Fence Fine Adj.
6132*	This SP adjusts the distance between the jogger fences and the sides of the stack on the finisher stapling tray in the Finisher D636. The adjustment is done perpendicular to the direction of paper feed.

6133*	Staple Position Adjustment
	Adjusts the staple position for each finisher (D636).
	+ Value: Moves the staple position to the rear side.
	- Value: Moves the staple position to the front side.
	[-3.5 to 3.5 / 0 / 0.5 mm]

		Saddle Stitch Position Adj. (Not used)
6	134*	Use this SP to adjust the stapling position of the booklet stapler when paper is stapled and folded in the Booklet Finisher (D637).

001	A3 SEF	
002	B4 SEF	[-3 to 3 / 0 / 0.2 mm]
003	A4 SEF	+ Value: Shifts staple position toward the crease.
004	B5 SEF	- Value: Shifts staple position away from the crease
005	DLT SEF	Feed Dut
006	LG SEF	
007	LT SEF	
008	12" x 18"	$ \stackrel{\frown}{\bigoplus} \leftarrow \rightarrow \stackrel{\frown}{\ominus} $
009	Other	

	Folder Position Adj. (Not used)	
6135*	This SP corrects th Finisher D637.	e folding position when paper is stapled and folded in the Booklet
001	A3 SEF	
002	B4 SEF	[-3 to 3 / 0 / 0.2 mm]
003	A4 SEF	+ Value: Shifts staple position toward the crease.
004	B5 SEF	- Value: Shifts staple position away from the crease.
005	DLT SEF	Feed Out
006	LG SEF	
007	LT SEF	
008	12" x 18"	
009	Other	

	Book Fold Repeat (Not used)
6136*	Sets the number of times that folding is done in the Booklet Finisher D637.
	[2 to 30 / 2 / 1 time/step]

6139	Entrance Sensor Display the signals received from sensors and switches of the finisher. (D588) (**p.296 "Input Check Table")
	FIN (EUP) INPUT Check

	FIN (EUP) INPUT Check
6140	Display the signals received from sensors and switches of the finisher. (D636) (**p.296 "Input Check Table")

	FIN (KIN) OUPUT Check
6144	Display the signals received from sensors and switches of the finisher. (D588) (p.305 "Output Check Table")

	FIN (EUP) OUPUT Check
	Display the signals received from sensors and switches of the finisher. (D636) (p.305 "Output Check Table")

6148	Jogger Fine Adj.	
001	АЗТ	
002	B4T	
003	A4T	
004	A4Y	
005	B5Y	
006	A5Y	Adjusts the jogger location [Horizontal direction]
007	DLT-T	[-1.5 to 1.5 / 0 / 0.5 /mm] *Jogger is optional equipment.
008	LG-T	
009	LT-T	
010	LT-Y	
011	HLT-Y	
012	Other	

6150	Jogger Control	
	Enables or disables the jogger.	
001 [0 to 1 / 0 / 1 /step]		
	0: Disable. 1: Enable	

5

5

Engine Main SP Tables-7

SP7-xxx: Data Log

7401*	Total SC Counter	
SC Counter		
001	Displays the total number of service calls that have occurred. This SC counter can be reset by executing SP7807 (SC/Jam Counter Reset).	
	Total SC Counter	
002	Displays the cumulative sum of service calls that have occurred. This SC counter cannot be reset by executing SP7807 (SC/Jam Counter Reset).	

7403*	SC History	
001	Latest	
002	Latest 1	
003	Latest 2	
004	Latest 3	
005	Latest 4	
006	Latest 5	Displays the most recent 10 service calls.
007	Latest 6	
008	Latest 7	
009	Latest 8	
010	Latest 9	

7502*	Total Paper Jam	
Jam Counter Displays the total number of paper jams.		

	Total Jam Counter	
002	Displays the cumulative sum of paper jams.	
	This SC counter cannot be reset by executing SP7807 (SC/Jam Counter Reset).	

	Total Jams Location
7504*	These SPs display the total number of paper jams by location. A "Check-in" (paper late) error occurs when the paper fails to activate the sensor at the precise time. A "Checkout" ("paper lag") paper jam occurs when the paper remains at the sensor for longer than the prescribed time.
001	At power On
003	Tray 1: On
004	Tray 2: On
005	Tray 3: On
006	Tray 4: On
007	LCT: On
008	Bypass: On
009	Duplex: On
011	Vertical Transport 1: On
012	Vertical Transport 2: On
013	Bank: Transport Sn 1: On
014	Bank: Transport Sn 2: On
017	Registration: On
019	Fusing Exit: On
020	Paper Exit: On
021	Bridge Exit On
022	Bridge Transport: On
024	Junction Gate Sensor: On

025	Duplex Exit: On
026	Duplex Entrance: On (In)
027	Duplex Entrance: On (Out)
051	Vertical Transport 1: Off
052	Vertical Transport 2: Off
053	Bank Transport 1: Off
054	Bank Transport 2: Off
057	Registration Sensor: Off
058	LCT Feed Sensor: Off
060	Paper Exit: Off
061	Bridge: Exit: Off
062	Bridge: Transport: Off
064	Junction Gate Sensor: Off
065	Duplex Exit: Off
066	Duplex Entrance: Off (In)
067	Duplex Entrance: Off (Out)
100	Finisher Entrance: KIN
101	Finisher Shift Tray Exit: KIN
102	Finisher Staple: KIN
103	Finisher Exit: KIN
105	Finisher Tray Lift Motor: KIN
106	Finisher Jogger Motor: KIN
107	Finisher Shift Motor: KIN
108	Finisher Staple Motor: KIN
109	Finisher Exit Motor: KIN
191	Finisher Entrance: EUP

192	Finisher Proof Exit: EUP
193 Finisher Shift Tray Exit: EUP	
194 Finisher Staple Exit: EUP	
195	Finisher Exit: EUP
198	Finisher Folder: EUP
199	Finisher Tray Motor: EUP
200	Finisher Jogger Motor: EUP
201	Finisher Shift Motor: EUP
202	Finisher Staple Moving Motor: EUP
203	Finisher Staple Motor: EUP
204	Finisher Folder Motor: EUP
206	Finisher Punch Motor: EUP

7506* Jam Count by Paper Size		7506*	Jam Count by Paper Size
-------------------------------	--	-------	-------------------------

005	A4 LEF	
006	A5 LEF	
014	B5 LEF	
038	LT LEF	
044	HLT LEF	
132	A3 SEF	
133	A4 SEF	
134	A5 SEF	Displays the total number of copy jams by paper size.
141	B4 SEF	
142	B5 SEF	
160	DLT SEF	
164	LG SEF	
166	LT SEF	
172	HLT SEF	
255	Others	

7507*	Plotter Jam History
-------	---------------------

	İ					
001	Last					
002	Latest 1	l ' ' ' ' ' ' ' ' ' ' ' ' ' ' ' ' ' ' '		jam history (the most recent 10 jams)		
003	Latest 2	Sample Display: CODE:007				
004	Latest 3	SIZE:05h				
004	Latest 3					
005	Latest 4	TOTAL:0000334				
006	Latest 5	DATE: Mon Mar	15 11:44:5	0 2000		
	1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1	where:				
007	Latest 6	CODE is the SP7504-*** number (see above.				
008	Latest 7	SIZE is the ASAP paper size code in hex.		ode in hex.		
009	Latest 8	TOTAL is the total	jam error co	ount (SP7502)		
	1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1	DATE is the date t	he jams occ	urred.		
010	Latest 9					
Size	Code	Size	Code	Size	Code	
A4 (S)	05	A3 (L)	84	DLT (L)	A0	
A5 (S)	06	A4 (L)	85	LG (L)	A4	
B5 (S)	OE	A5 (L)	86	LT (L)	A6	
LT (S)	26	B4 (L)	8D	HLT (L)	AC	
HLT (S)	2C	B5 (L)	8E	Others	FF	

	ROM No./Firmware Version
7801	This SP code displays the firmware versions of all ROMs in the system, including the mainframe, the ARDF, and peripheral devices.

7803*	PM Counter Display		
7603	Displays the PM counter since the last PM.		
001	Paper	[0 to 999999 / 0 / 1 page]	
001	Displays the paper counter (pages)		
000	Page: PCD	[0 to 999999 / 0 / 1 page]	
002	Displays the PCD (Drum and Develop	ment unit) counter (pages)	

000	Page: Transfer	[0 to 999999 / 0 / 1 page]	
003	Displays the transfer unit counter (pages).		
004	Page: Fuser	[0 to 999999 / 0 / 1 page]	
004	Displays the fusing unit counter (page	es).	
005	Rotation: PCD	[0 to 999999999 / 0 / 1 mm]	
003	Displays the PCD rotation counter (di	stance).	
006	Rotation: Transfer	[0 to 999999999 / 0 / 1 mm]	
008	Displays the transfer unit rotation counter (distance).		
007	Rotation: Fuser	[0 to 999999999 / 0 / 1 mm]	
007	Displays the fuser unit rotation counter (distance).		
008	Rotation(%): PCD	[0 to 255 / 0 / 1 %]	
008	Displays the PCD (%) rotation counter (Distance/PM).		
009	Rotation(%):Transfer	[0 to 255 / 0 / 1 %]	
009	Displays the transfer unit (%) rotation counter (distance/PM).		
010	Rotation(%):Fuser	[0 to 255 / 0 / 1 %]	
010	Displays the fuser unit (%) rotation counter (distance/PM).		
011	Rotation(%):Web	[0 to 255 / 0 / 1 %]	
	Displays the web unit (%) rotation co	unter (distance/PM).	

	PM Counter Reset
7804	Resets the PM counter. Touch [Execute] two times > "Completed" > [Exit]
001	Рарег
001	Resets the PM counter of the paper.
002	PCD
002	Resets the PM counter of the PCD (Drum and Development unit except developer).

	T (
003	Transfer
	Resets the PM counter of the transfer unit.
004	Fuser
004	Resets the PM counter of the fuser unit.
0.0.5	Web
005	Reset the PM counter of the web unit.
006	All Clear
	Resets all PM counter

	SC/Jam Counter Reset
7807	Resets the SC and jam counters. To reset, press Execute on the touch panel.
	This SP does not reset the jam history counters: SP7507, SP7508.

	Self-Diagnose Result Display
7832	Execute to open the "Self-Diagnostics Result Display" to view details about errors. Use the keys in the display on the touch-panel to scroll through all the information. If no errors have occurred, you will see the "No Error" message on the screen.

7836	Total Memory Size
7 630	Displays the memory capacity of the controller system.

7853	Replacement Counter		
001	PCD	[0 to 255 / 0 / 1]	
001	Displays the replacement counter of the PCD (Drum and Development unit).		
002	Transfer	[0 to 255 / 0 / 1]	
002	Displays the replacement counter of the transfer unit.		
003	Fuser	[0 to 255 / 0 / 1]	
003	Displays the replacement counter o	f the fusing unit.	

004	Web	[0 to 255 / 0 / 1]
004	Displays the replacement counter of the cleaning web.	

7904	Near End Setting		
001*	PCD	Sets the near end timing setting for each maintenance	
002*	Transfer	item. [0 to 2/1/1/step]	
		0: Earlier	
003*	Fuser	1: Normal	
		2: Later	

7906	Prev Counter		
001	Page: PCD	[0 to 999999 / 0 / 1 page]	
001	Displays the counter (pages) of the p	revious PCD	
002	Page: Transfer	[0 to 999999 / 0 / 1 page]	
002	Displays the previous counter (pages) of the previous transfer unit.	
003	Page: Fuser	[0 to 999999 / 0 / 1 page]	
003	Displays the previous counter (pages) of the previous fusing unit.	
004	Rotation: PCD	[0 to 999999999 / 0 / 1 mm]	
004	Displays the previous counter (rotations) of the previous PCD		
005	Rotation: Transfer	[0 to 999999999 / 0 / 1 mm]	
003	Displays the previous counter (rotations) of the previous transfer unit.		
006	Rotation: Fuser	[0 to 999999999 / 0 / 1 mm]	
008	Displays the previous counter (rotations/PM %) of the previous fusing unit.		
007	Rotation(%):PCD	[0 to 255 / 0 / 1 mm]	
007	Displays the previous counter (rotations/PM %) of the previous PCD		
008	Rotation(%):Transfer	[0 to 255 / 0 / 1 mm]	
008	Displays the previous counter (rotations/PM %) of the previous transfer unit.		

000	Rotation(%):Fuser	[0 to 255 / 0 / 1 mm]		
	009	Displays the previous counter (rotations/PM %) of the previous fusing unit.		
	010	Rotation(%):Web	[0 to 255 / 0 / 1 %]	
		Displays the previous counter (rotations/PM %) of the previous cleaning web.		

	ROM No			
7910	Indicate the ROM number for the machine components.			
	These SPs are listed in the SMC Report, they are not displayed on the operation panel.			
001	System/Copy	159	PCLXL	
002	Engine	160	MSIS	
003	Lcdc	162	PDF	
005	ADF	163	BMLinkS	
007	Finisher	165	PJL	
009	Bank	166	IPDS	
010	LCT	167	MediaPrint:JPEG	
018	NetworkSupport	168	MediaPrint:TIFF	
019	Bank 2	180	FONT	
022	BIOS	181	FONT1	
023	HDD Format Option	182	FONT2	
100	Language 1	183	FONT3	
101	Language2	184	FONT4	
132	NetWare	185	FONT5	
150	RPCS	200	Factory	
151	PS	202	NetworkDocBox	
152	RPDL	204	Printer	
153	R98	210	MIB	

154	R16	211	Websupport
155	RPGL	213	SDK1
156	R55	214	SDK2
157	RTIFF	215	SDK3
158	PCL		

	Firmware Version		
7911	Indicate the firmware version for the machine components.		
	These SPs are listed in the SMC Report, but they are not displayed on the operation panel.		
002	Engine	162	PDF
003	Lcdc	163	BMLinkS
018	NetworkSupport	165	PJL
022	BIOS	166	IPDS
023	HDD Format Option	167	MediaPrint:JPEG
100	Languagel	168	MediaPrint:TIFF
101	Language2	180	FONT
105	ADF	181	FONT1
107	Finisher	182	FONT2
132	NetWare	183	FONT3
150	RPCS	184	FONT4
151	PS	185	FONT5
152	RPDL	200	Factory
153	R98	202	NetworkDocBox
154	R16	204	Printer
155	RPGL	210	MIB
156	R55	211	Websupport

157	RTIFF	213	SDK1
158	PCL	214	SDK2
159	PCLXL	215	SDK3
160	MSIS		

7950	Replacement Date	
001	PCD	
001	Displays the replacement date of the PCD.	
Transfer		
002	Displays the replacement date of the transfer unit.	
003	Fuser	
003	Displays the replacement date of the fusing unit.	
004	Web	
004	Displays the replacement date of the web unit.	

7951	Remaining Counter	
001	PCD(Page)	[0 to 255 / 255 / 1 days]
001	Displays the remaining counter (pages) of the PCD.	
002	Transfer(Page)	[0 to 255 / 255 / 1 days]
002	Displays the remaining counter (pages) of the transfer unit.	
003	Fuser(Page)	[0 to 255 / 255 / 1 days]
003	Displays the remaining counter (pages) of the fusing unit.	
005	PCD(Rotation)	[0 to 255 / 255 / 1 days]
005	Displays the remaining counter (rotations) of the PCD.	
004	Transfer(Rotation)	[0 to 255 / 255 / 1 days]
006	Displays the remaining counter (rotations) of the transfer unit.	

007	Fuser(Rotation)	[0 to 255 / 255 / 1 days]
007	Displays the remaining counter (rotations) of the fusing unit.	
009	PCD (%)	[0 to 255 / 100 / 1 %]
007	Displays the remaining counter (%) of the PCD.	
010	Transfer (%)	[0 to 255 / 100 / 1 %]
	Displays the remaining counter (%) of the transfer unit.	
011	Fuser (%)	[0 to 255 / 100 / 1 %]
011	Displays the remaining counter (%) of the fusing unit.	
013	Web (%)	[0 to 255 / 100 / 1 %]
	Displays the remaining counter (%) of	f the cleaning web.

7952	PM Yield Setting		
7932	Sets the each yield of the following.		
001	PCD(Page)	[0 to 99999999/ 160000 / 1 sheet]	
001	Sets the PM yield of the PCD (Pages).		
000	Transfer(Page)	[0 to 9999999 / 160000 / 1 sheet]	
002	Sets the PM yield of the transfer unit (Pages).		
	Fuser(Page)	[0 to 9999999 / 160000 / 1 sheet]	
003	Sets the PM yield of the fusing unit (Pages).		
005	PCD(Rotation)	[0 to 99999999 / 75500000 / 1 mm]	
005	Sets the PM yield of the PCD (Rotations).		
007	Transfer(Rotation)	[0 to 999999999 / 65420000 / 1 mm]	
006	Sets the PM yield of the transfer unit (Rotations).		
007	Fuser(Rotation)	[0 to 999999999 / 52950000 / 1 mm]	
	Sets the PM yield of the fusing unit (Rotations).		

009	Web (%)	[0 to 255 / 92 / 1 %]
	Sets the PM yield (%) of the web unit.	

7953	Operation Env Log	
001	T<10	[0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1 mm]
001	Displays the PCU rotation distance in the environment: T<10°C	
002	10<=T<=17	[0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1 mm]
002	Displays the PCU rotation distance in the environment: 10°C<=T<=17°C	
000	17 <t<23< td=""><td>[0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1 mm]</td></t<23<>	[0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1 mm]
003	Displays the PCU rotation distance in the environment: 17<=T<=23	
00.4	23<=T<=27	[0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1 mm]
004	Displays the PCU rotation distance of the environment: 23<=T<=27	
005	27<=T<=32	[0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1 mm]
005	Displays the PCU rotation distance of the environment: 27<=T<=32	
006	32 <t< td=""><td>[0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1 mm]</td></t<>	[0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1 mm]
	Displays the PCU rotation distance of	the environment: 32 <t< td=""></t<>

7954	Env Log Clear	
	7934	Resets the environment logs (SP7953).

Engine Main SP Tables-8

SP8-XXX: Data Log2

Many of these counters are provided for features that are currently not available, such as sending color faxes, and so on. However, here are some Group 8 codes that when used in combination with others, can provide useful information.

SP Numbers	What They Do
SP8211 to SP8216	The number of pages scanned to the document server.
SP8401 to SP8406	The number of pages printed from the document server
SP8691 to SP8696	The number of pages sent from the document server

Specifically, the following questions can be answered:

- How is the document server actually being used?
- What application is using the document server most frequently?
- What data in the document server is being reused?

Most of the SPs in this group are prefixed with a letter that indicates the mode of operation (the mode of operation is referred to as an "application"). Before reading the Group 8 Service Table, make sure that you understand what these prefixes mean.

Prefixes	What it means	
T:	Total: (Grand Total).	Grand total of the items counted for all applications (C, F, P, etc.).
P:	Print application.	
O:	Other applications (external network applications, for example)	Refers to network applications such as Web Image Monitor. Utilities developed with the SDK (Software Development Kit) will also be counted with this group in the future.

The Group 8 SP codes are limited to 17 characters, forced by the necessity of displaying them on the small LCDs of printers and faxes that also use these SPs. Read over the list of abbreviations below and refer to it again if you see the name of an SP that you do not understand.

Key for Abbreviations

Abbreviation	What it means
/	"By", e.g. "T:Jobs/Apl" = Total Jobs "by" Application
>	More (2> "2 or more", 4> "4 or more"
AddBook	Address Book
Apl	Application
B/W	Black & White
Bk	Black
С	Cyan
ColCr	Color Create
ColMode	Color Mode
Comb	Combine
Comp	Compression
Deliv	Delivery
DesApl	Designated Application. The application (Copy, Fax, Scan, Print) used to store the job on the document server, for example.
Dev Counter	Development Count, no. of pages developed.
Dup, Duplex	Duplex, printing on both sides
Emul	Emulation
FC	Full Color
FIN	Post-print processing, i.e. finishing (punching, stapling, etc.)
Full Bleed	No Margins
GenCopy	Generation Copy Mode
GPC	Get Print Counter. For jobs 10 pages or less, this counter does not count up. For jobs larger than 10 pages, this counter counts up by the number that is in excess of 10 (e.g., for an 11-page job, the counter counts up 11-10=1)
IFax	Internet Fax

Abbreviation	What it means
ImgEdt	Image Edit performed on the original with the copier GUI, e.g. border removal, adding stamps, page numbers, etc.
К	Black (YMCK)
LS	Local Storage. Refers to the document server.
LSize	Large (paper) Size
Mag	Magnification
МС	One color (monochrome)
NRS	New Remote Service, which allows a service center to monitor machines remotely. "NRS" is used overseas, "CSS" is used in Japan.
Org	Original for scanning
OrgJam	Original Jam
Palm 2	Print Job Manager/Desk Top Editor: A pair of utilities that allows print jobs to be distributed evenly among the printers on the network, and allows files to moved around, combined, and converted to different formats.
PC	Personal Computer
PGS	Pages. A page is the total scanned surface of the original. Duplex pages count as two pages, and A3 simplex count as two pages if the A3/DLT counter SP is switched ON.
PJob	Print Jobs
Ppr	Paper
PrtJam	Printer (plotter) Jam
PrtPGS	Print Pages
R	Red (Toner Remaining). Applies to the wide format model A2 only. This machine is under development and currently not available.
Rez	Resolution
SC	Service Code (Error SC code displayed)
Scn	Scan

Abbreviation	What it means	
Sim, Simplex	Simplex, printing on 1 side.	
S-to-Email	Scan-to-E-mail	
SMC	SMC report printed with SP5990. All of the Group 8 counters are recorded in the SMC report.	
Svr	Server	
TonEnd	Toner End	
TonSave	Toner Save	
TXJob	Send, Transmission	
YMC	Yellow, Magenta, Cyan	
YMCK	Yellow, Magenta, Cyan, Black	



• All of the Group 8 SPs are able to reset by "SP5 801 1 Memory All Clear".

8001	T:Total Jobs	*CTL	These SPs count the number of times each application is used to do a job.
8004	P:Total Jobs	*CTL	[0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1] Note: The L: counter is the total number of times the other applications are used to send a job to the document server, plus the number of times a file already on the document server is used.

- These SPs reveal the number of times an application is used, not the number of pages processed.
- When an application is opened for image input or output, this counts as one job.
- Interrupted jobs (paper jams, etc.) are counted, even though they do not finish.
- Only jobs executed by the customer are counted. Jobs executed by the customer engineer using the SP modes are not counted.
- When using secure printing (when a password is required to start the print job), the job is counted at the time when either "Delete Data" or "Specify Output" is specified.
- When the customer prints a report (user code list, for example), the O: counter increments.

	T-0.1.1	* 6.71	[a accessed (a (1)		
00/1	T:FIN Jobs	*CTL	[0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1]		
8061	These SPs total the finishing methods. The finishing method is specified by the application.				
	P:FIN Jobs	*CTL	[0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1]		
8064	These SPs total finishing met by the application.	thods for p	rint jobs only. The finishing method is specified		
	O:FIN Jobs	*CTL	[0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1]		
8067	These SPs total finishing methods for jobs executed by an external application the network. The finishing method is specified by the application.				
806x 1	Sort	Number of jobs started in Sort mode. When a stored copy job is set for Sort and then stored on the document server, the L: counter increments. (See SP8-066-1)			
806x 2	Stack	Number	of jobs started out of Sort mode.		
806x 3	Staple	Number	of jobs started in Staple mode.		
806x 4	Booklet	Number of jobs started in Booklet mode. If the machine is in staple mode, the Staple counter also increments.			
8 06x 5	Z-Fold	Number of jobs started In any mode other than the Booklet mode and set for folding (Z-fold).			
806x 6	Punch	Number of jobs started in Punch mode. When Punch is set for a print job, the P: counter increments. (See SP8-064-6.)			
806x 7	Other	(Reserved	4)		
806x 8	Inside-Flod	Not used			
806x 9	Three-In-Fold	Not used			
806x 10	Three-OUT-Fold	Not used			
806x 11	Four-Fold	Not used			
806x 12	KANNON-Fold	Not used			
806x 13	Perfect-Bind	Not used			
806x 14	Ring-Bind	Not used			

	T:Jobs/PGS	*CTL	[0 to 99	9999999 / 0 / 1]
8071	These SPs count the number of jobs broken down by the number of pages in the job, regardless of which application was used.			
	P:Jobs/PGS	*CTL	*CTL [0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1]	
8074	These SPs count and calculate the number of print jobs by size based on the of pages in the job.			rint jobs by size based on the number
O:Jobs/PGS *CTL [0 to 9999		9999999 / 0 / 1]		
These SPs count and calculate the number of "Other" application jobs (Web Monitor, Palm 2, etc.) by size based on the number of pages in the job.				
807x 1	1 Page	8 07	x 8	21 to 50 Pages
807x 2	2 Pages	8 07	x 9	51 to 100 Pages
807x 3	3 Pages	8 07	< 10	101 to 300 Pages
807x 4	4 Pages	8 07x 11 301 to 500 Pages		301 to 500 Pages
807x 5	5 Pages	8 07x 12		501 to 700 Pages
807x 6	6 to 10 Pages	8 07x 13		701 to 1000 Pages
807x 7	11 to 20 Pages	8 07	< 14	1001 to Pages

- Interrupted jobs (paper jam, etc.) are counted, even though they do not finish.
- If a job is paused and re-started, it counts as one job.
- If the finisher runs out of staples during a print and staple job, then the job is counted at the time the error occurs.
- When printing the first page of a job from within the document server screen, the page is counted.

8381	T:Total PrtPGS	*CTL	These SPs count the number of pages printed
8384	P:Total PrtPGS	*CTL	by the customer. The counter for the application used for storing the pages
8387	O:Total PrtPGS	*CTL	increments. [O to 99999999 / O / 1] The L: counter counts the number of pages stored from within the document server mode screen at the operation panel. Pages stored with the Store File button from within the Copy mode screen go to the C: counter.

- When the A3/DLT double count function is switched on with SP5104, 1 A3/DLT page is counted as 2.
- When several documents are merged for a print job, the number of pages stored are counted for the application that stored them.
- These counters are used primarily to calculate charges on use of the machine, so the following pages are not counted as printed pages:
 - Blank pages in a duplex printing job.
 - Blank pages inserted as document covers, chapter title sheets, and slip sheets.
 - Reports printed to confirm counts.
 - All reports done in the service mode (service summaries, engine maintenance reports, etc.)
 - Test prints for machine image adjustment.
 - Error notification reports.
 - Partially printed pages as the result of a copier jam.

	LSize PrtPGS	*CTL	[0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1]
8391	These SPs count pages printed on paper sizes A3/DLT and larger.		
	Note : In addition to being displayed in the User Tools disp	•	SMC Report, these counters are also copy machine.

8411 Prints/Duplex	*CTL	This SP counts the amount of paper (front/back counted as 1 page) used for duplex printing. Last pages printed only on one side are not counted. [0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1]
--------------------	------	---

	T:PrtPGS/Dup Comb	*CTL	[0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1]	
8421	These SPs count by binding and combine, and n-Up settings the nu processed for printing. This is the total for all applications.			
	P:PrtPGS/Dup Comb	*CTL	[0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1]	
8424	These SPs count by binding and combine, and n-Up settings the number of pages processed for printing by the printer application.			
8427	O:PrtPGS/Dup Comb	*CTL	[0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1]	
	These SPs count by binding and combine, and n-Up settings the number of pages processed for printing by Other applications			

842x 1	Simplex> Duplex	
842x 4	Simplex Combine	
842x 5	Duplex Combine	
842x 6	2in 1	2 pages on 1 side (2-Up)
842x 7	4 in 1	4 pages on 1 side (4-Up)
842x 8	6 in 1	6 pages on 1 side (6-Up)
842x 9	8 in 1	8 pages on 1 side (8-Up)
842x 10	9 in 1	9 pages on 1 side (9-Up)
842x 11	16 in 1	16 pages on 1 side (16-Up)
842x 12	Booklet	
842x 13	Magazine	
842x 14	2-in-1 + Booklet	
842x 15	4-in-1 + Booklet	
842x 16	6-in-1 + Booklet	
842x 17	8-in-1 + Booklet	
842x 18	9-in-1 + Booklet	
842x 19	2-in-1 + Magazine	
842x 20	4-in-1 + Magazine	
842x 21	6-in-1 + Magazine	
842x 22	8-in-1 + Magazine	
842x 23	9-in-1 + Magazine	
842x 24	16-in-1 + Magazine	

- These counts (SP8 421 to SP8 427) are especially useful for customers who need to improve their compliance with ISO standards for the reduction of paper consumption.
- Pages that are only partially printed with the n-Up functions are counted as 1 page.
- Here is a summary of how the counters work for Booklet and Magazine modes:

Booklet		Magazine	
Original Pages	Count	Original Pages	Count
1	1	1	1
2	2	2	2
3	2	3	2
4	2	4	2
5	3	5	4
6	4	6	4
7	4	7	4
8	4	8	4

	T:PrtPGS/ImgEdt	*CTL	[0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1]	
8431	These SPs count the total number of pages output with the three features below, regardless of which application was used.			
	P:PrtPGS/ImgEdt	*CTL	[0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1]	
8434	These SPs count the total nuthe print application.	ages output with the three features below with		
	O:PrtPGS/ImgEdt	*CTL	[0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1]	
8437	These SPs count the total number of pages output with the three features below with Other applications.			
843x 1	Cover/Slip Sheet	Total number of covers or slip sheets inserted. The count for a cover printed on both sides counts 2.		
843x 2	Series/Book	The number of pages printed in series (one side) or printed as a book with booklet right/left pagination.		
843x 3	User Stamp	The number of pages printed where stamps were applied, including page numbering and date stamping.		
	T.D.+D.C.C. /D C	*CTI	[0.1, 00000000 / 0 / 1]	
	T:PrtPGS/Ppr Size	*CTL	[0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1]	

8441	T:PrtPGS/Ppr Size	*CTL	[0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1]
0441	These SPs count by print po	per size th	e number of pages printed by all applications.

8444	P:PrtPGS/Ppr Size	*CTL	[0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1]	
	These SPs count by print paper size the number of pages printed by the printer application.			
	O:PrtPGS/Ppr Size	*CTL	[0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1]	
8447	These SPs count by print paper size the number of pages printed by Other applications.			
844x 1	A3			
844x 2	A4			
844x 3	A5			
844x 4	B4			
844x 5	B5			
844x 6	DLT			
844x 7	LG			
844x 8	LT			
844x 9	HLT			
844x 10	Full Bleed			
844x 254	Other (Standard)			
844x 255	Other (Custom)			

• These counters do not distinguish between LEF and SEF.

8451	PrtPGS/Ppr Tray		
	These SPs count the number of sheets fed from each paper feed station.		
001	Bypass Tray	*CTL	Bypass Tray [0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1]
002	Tray 1	*CTL	Copier
003	Tray 2	*CTL	[0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1]

004	Tray 3	*CTL	Paper Tray Unit (Option)
005	Tray 4	*CTL	[0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1]
006	Tray 5	*CTL	LCT (Option) [0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1]
007	Tray 6	*CTL	Currently not used.
008	Tray 7	*CTL	Currently not used.
009	Tray 8	*CTL	Currently not used.
010	Tray 9	*CTL	Currently not used.
011	Tray 10	*CTL	Currently not used.
012	Tray 11	*CTL	Currently not used.
013	Tray 12	*CTL	Currently not used.
014	Tray 13	*CTL	Currently not used.
015	Tray 14	*CTL	Currently not used.
016	Tray 15	*CTL	Currently not used.

	T:PrtPGS/Ppr Type	*CTL	[0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1]		
	These SPs count by paper type the number pages printed by all applications.				
8461	 These counters are not the same as the PM counter. The PM counter is based on feed timing to accurately measure the service life of the feed rollers. However, these counts are based on output timing. 				
	Blank sheets (covers, chapter covers, slip sheets) are also counted.				
	 During duplex printing, pages printed on both sides count as 1, and a page printed on one side counts as 1. 				
8464	P:PrtPGS/Ppr Type	*CTL	[0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1]		
8404	These SPs count by paper type the number pages printed by the printer application.				
846x 1	Normal				
846x 2	Recycled				
846x 3	Special				

846x 4	Thick
846x 5	Normal (Back)
846x 6	Thick (Back)
846x 7	OHP
846x 8	Other

8471	PrtPGS/Mag			
	These SPs count by magnification rate the number of pages printed.			
001	< 49%	*CTL		
002	50% to 99%	*CTL		
003	100%	*CTL	[0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1]	
004	101% to 200%	*CTL		
005	201% <	*CTL		

- Counts are done for magnification adjusted for pages, not only on the operation panel but performed remotely with an external network application capable of performing magnification adjustment as well.
- Magnification adjustments done with printer drivers with PC applications such as Excel are also counted.
- Magnification adjustments done for adjustments after they have been stored on the document server are not counted.
- Magnification adjustments performed automatically during Auto Reduce/Enlarge copying are counted.
- The magnification rates of blank cover sheets, slip sheets, etc. are automatically assigned a rate of 100%.

8481	T:PrtPGS/TonSave	*CTL	[0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1]	
8484	P:PrtPGS/TonSave	*CTL	[0 10 44444444 / 0 / 1]	
	These SPs count the number of pages printed with the Toner Save feature switched on.			
	Note : These SPs return the same results as this SP is limited to the Print application.			

8511	T:PrtPGS/Emul	*CTL	[0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1]		
8311	These SPs count by printer emulation mode the total number of pages printed.				
8514	P:PrtPGS/Emul	*CTL	[0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1]		
6314	These SPs count by printer emulation mode the total number of pages printed.				
8 51x 1	RPCS				
8 51x 2	RPDL				
8 51x 3	PS3				
8 51x 4	R98				
8 51x 5	R16				
8 51x 6	GL/GL2				
8 51x 7	R55				
8 51x 8	RTIFF				
8 51x 9	PDF				
8 51x 10	PCL5e/5c				
8 51x 11	PCL XL				
8 51x 12	IPDL-C				
8 51x 13	BM-Links	Japan Or	nly		
8 51x 14	Other				
8 51x 15	IPDS				

- \bullet SP8 511 and SP8 514 return the same results as they are both limited to the Print application.
- Print jobs output to the document server are not counted.

	T:PrtPGS/FIN	*CTL	[0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1]	
85	521	These SPs count by finishing applications.	g mode the	total number of pages printed by all

	P:PrtPGS/FIN	*CTL	[0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1]		
8524	These SPs count by finishing application.	These SPs count by finishing mode the total number of pages printed by the Print application.			
8 52x 1	Sort				
8 52x 2	Stack				
8 52x 3	Staple				
8 52x 4	Booklet				
8 52x 5	Z-Fold				
8 52x 6	Punch				
8 52x 7	Other				
8 52x 8	Inside Fold	Half-Fold	(FM2) (Multi Fold Unit)		
8 52x 9	Three-IN-Fold	Letter Fol	d-in (FM4) (Multi Fold Unit)		
8 52x 10	Three-OUT-Fold	Letter Fol	d-out (FM3) (Multi Fold Unit)		
8 52x 11	Four Fold	Double P	arallel Fold (FM5) (Multi Fold Unit)		
8 52x 12	KANNON-Fold	Gate Fold	d (FM6) (Multi Fold Unit)		
8 52x 13	Perfect-Bind Perfect Binder				
8 52x 14	Ring-Bind Ring Binder				

U Note

- If stapling is selected for finishing and the stack is too large for stapling, the unstapled pages are still counted.
- The counts for staple finishing are based on output to the staple tray, so jam recoveries are counted.

8531 Staples	*CTL	This SP counts the amount of staples used by the machine. [0 to 9999999 / 0 / 1]
--------------	------	---

8.5	551	T:FIN Books		

001	Perfect-Bind	*CTL	Not used
002	Ring-Bind	*CTL	Noi used

8554	T:FIN Books		
001	Perfect-Bind	*CTL	Nist
002	Ring-Bind	*CTL	Not used

8561	T:A Sheet Of Paper		
001	Total: Over A3/DLT	*CTL	
002	Total: Under A3/DLT	*CTL	[0.1.00000000 / 0./1]
003	Duplex: Over A3/DLT	*CTL	[0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1]
004	Duplex: Under A3/DLT	*CTL	

8564	P:A Sheet Of Paper		
001	Total: Over A3/DLT	*CTL	
002	Total: Under A3/DLT	*CTL	[0.1.00000000 / 0./1]
003	Duplex: Over A3/DLT	*CTL	[0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1]
004	Duplex: Under A3/DLT	*CTL	

8567	O:A Sheet Of Paper		
001	Total: Over A3/DLT	*CTL	
002	Total: Under A3/DLT	*CTL	[0.1.00000000 / 0./1]
003	Duplex: Over A3/DLT	*CTL	[0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1]
004	Duplex: Under A3/DLT	*CTL	

	T:Counter
8581	These SPs count the total output broken down by color output, regardless of the application used. In addition to being displayed in the SMC Report, these counters are also displayed in the User Tools display on the copy machine.

001 Total *CTL [0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1]	
---	--

	O:Counter		
8591	These SPs count the totals for A3/DLT paper use, number of duplex pages printed, and the number of staples used. These totals are for Other (O:) applications only.		
001	A3/DLT	*CTL	[0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1]
002	Duplex	*CTL	[0 10 44444444 / 0 / 1]

	T: Coverage Counter		
8601	These SPs count the total coverage for each color and the total printout pages for each printing mode.		
001	B/W	*CTL	[0 to 2147483647 / 0 / 1% /step]
011	B/W Printing Pages	*CTL	[0 to 9999999 / 0 / 1]

8604	P:Coverage Counter		
8004	-		
001	B/W	*CTL	[0 to 2147483647 / 0 / 1% /step]

8617	SDK Apli Counter				
8017	These SPs count the total printout pages for each SDK application.				
001	SDK-1	*CTL			
002	SDK-2	*CTL			
003	SDK-3	*CTL	[0.4-00000000 / 0 / 1]		
004	SDK-4	*CTL	[0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1]		
005	SDK-5	*CTL			
006	SDK-6	*CTL			

0401	Func Use Counter	
8621	-	

001	Function-001	*CTL	
002	Function-002	*CTL	
003	Function-003	*CTL	
004	Function-004	*CTL	
005	Function-005	*CTL	[0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1]
006	Function-006	*CTL	[0 10 44444444 / 0 / 1]
007	Function-007	*CTL	
800	Function-008	*CTL	
009	Function-009	*CTL	
010	Function-010	*CTL	
011	Function-011	*CTL	
012	Function-012	*CTL	
013	Function-013	*CTL	
014	Function-014	*CTL	
015	Function-015	*CTL	[0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1]
016	Function-016	*CTL	[0 10 44444444 / 0 / 1]
017	Function-017	*CTL	
018	Function-018	*CTL	
019	Function-019	*CTL	
020	Function-020	*CTL	

021	Function-021	*CTL	
022	Function-022	*CTL	
023	Function-023	*CTL	
024	Function-024	*CTL	
025	Function-025	*CTL	[0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1]
026	Function-026	*CTL	[0 10 4444444
027	Function-027	*CTL	
028	Function-028	*CTL	
029	Function-029	*CTL	
030	Function-030	*CTL	
031	Function-031	*CTL	
032	Function-032	*CTL	
033	Function-033	*CTL	
034	Function-034	*CTL	
035	Function-035	*CTL	[0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1]
036	Function-036	*CTL	[[0 10 77777777 0 1]
037	Function-037	*CTL	
038	Function-038	*CTL	
039	Function-039	*CTL	
040	Function-040	*CTL	

041	Function-041	*CTL	
042	Function-042	*CTL	
043	Function-043	*CTL	
044	Function-044	*CTL	
045	Function-045	*CTL	[0. 00000000 / 0 / 1]
046	Function-046	*CTL	[0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1]
047	Function-047	*CTL	
048	Function-048	*CTL	
049	Function-049	*CTL	
050	Function-050	*CTL	
051	Function-051	*CTL	
052	Function-052	*CTL	
053	Function-053	*CTL	
054	Function-054	*CTL	
055	Function-055	*CTL	[0.1.00000000 / 0./1]
056	Function-056	*CTL	[0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1]
057	Function-057	*CTL	
058	Function-058	*CTL	
059	Function-059	*CTL	
060	Function-060	*CTL	
061	Function-061	*CTL	
062	Function-062	*CTL	[0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1]
063	Function-063	*CTL	[[
064	Function-064	*CTL	

	Dev Counter			
8771	These SPs count the frequency of use (number of rotations of the development rollers) for black and other color toners.			
001	Total *CTL [0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1]			
	Toner_Bottle_Info.	*ENG	[0 to 9999999 / 0 / 1]	
8781	These SPs display the number of already replaced toner bottles. NOTE: Currently, the data in SP7-833-011 through 014 and the data in SP8-781-001 through 004 are the same.			
001	Toner: BK	The number of black-toner bottles		

	Toner Remain			
8801	These SPs display the percent of toner remaining for each color. This SP allows the user to check the toner supply at any time.			
		•	maining toner supply (1% steps) is better than measure in increments of 10 (10% steps).	
001	К	*CTL	[0 to 100 / 0 / 1% /step]	

8811	Eco Counter				
0011	-				
001	Eco Total	*CTL			
004	Duplex	*CTL			
005	Combine	*CTL	[0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1]		
008	Duplex (%)	*CTL	[0 10 99999999 / 0 / 1]		
009	Combine (%)	*CTL			
010	Paper Cut (%)	*CTL			
101	Eco Totalr:Last	*CTL			
104	Duplex:Last	*CTL	[0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1]		
105	Combine:Last	*CTL			

108	Duplex (%):Last	*CTL	
109	Combine (%):Last	*CTL	[0 to 100 / 0 / 1% /step]
110	Paper Cut (%):Last	*CTL	

	Cvr Cnt: 0-10%			
8851	These SPs display the number of scanned sheets on which the coverage of each color is from 0% to 10%.			
011	O to 2%: BK	*ENG	[0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1]	
021	3 to 4%: BK	*ENG	[0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1]	
031	5 to 7%: BK	*ENG	[0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1]	
041	8 to 10%: BK	*ENG	[0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1]	

	CVr Cnt: 11-20%				
8861	These SPs display the number of scanned sheets on which the coverage of each color is from 11% to 20%.				
001	ВК	*ENG	[0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1]		

		CVr Cnt: 21-30%				
8871		These SPs display the number of scanned sheets on which the coverage of each color is from 21% to 30%.				
0	01	ВК	*ENG	[0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1]		

	CVr Cnt: 31%-			
These SPs display the number of scanned sheets on which the coverage of each 31% or higher.				
001	вк	*ENG	[0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1]	

8891	Page/Toner Bottle				
0071	These SPs display the amount of the remaining current toner for each color.				
001	ВК	*ENG	[0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1]		

890	\ 1	Page/Toner_prev1				
090	/ I	These SPs display the amount of the remaining previous toner for each color.				
	001	ВК	*ENG	[0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1]		

8911	Page/Toner_prev2				
0711	These SPs display the amount of the remaining 2nd previous toner for each color.				
001	ВК	*ENG	[0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1]		

8921	Cvr Cnt/Total				
0921	Displays the total coverage and total printout number for each color.				
001	Coverage (%) Bk	*CTL	[0 to 2147483647 / 0 / 1% /step]		
011	Coverage /P: Bk	*CTL	[0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1]		

	Machine Status	*CTL	[0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1]	
These SPs count the amount of time the machine spends in each operation mode SPs are useful for customers who need to investigate machine operation for imprint their compliance with ISO Standards.				
001	Operation Time	Engine operation time. Does not include time while controller is saving data to HDD (while engine is not operating).		
002	Standby Time	Engine not operating. Includes time while controller saves data to HDD. Does not include time spent in Energy Save, Low Power, or Off modes.		
003	Energy Save Time	Includes time while the machine is performing background printing.		
004	Low Power Time	Includes time in Energy Save mode with Engine of Includes time while machine is performing backs printing.		
005	Off Mode Time	Includes time while machine is performing background printing. Does not include time machine remains powered off with the power switches.		

006	SC	Total time when SC errors have been staying.
007	PrtJam	Total time when paper jams have been staying during printing.
008	OrgJam	Total time when original jams have been staying during scanning.
009	Supply PM Unit End	Total time when toner end has been staying

8961	Electricity Status		
0901	-		
001	Ctrl Standby Time	*CTL	
002	STR Time	*CTL	[0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1]
003	Main Power Off Time	*CTL	[0 10 99999999 / 0 / 1]
004	Reading and Printing Time	*CTL	
005	Printing Time	*CTL	
006	Reading Time	*CTL	
007	Eng Waiting Time	*CTL	[0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1]
008	Low Power State Time	*CTL	
009	Silent State Time	*CTL	

8999	Admin. Counter List		
0999	-		
001	Total		
007	Printer: BW		[0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1]
012	A3/DLT		[0 10 44444444 / 0 / 1]
013	Duplex		
027	Printer: BW(%)		[0 to 2147483647 / 0 / 1]

Engine Main SP Tables-9

Input Check Table

Copier

When entering the Input Check mode, 8 digits display the result for a section. Each digit corresponds to a different device as shown in the table.

Bit No.	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	
Result	0 or 1								

	Input Check				
5803	Description	Reading			
	Description	0	1		
001	Tray 1: Paper Size Sensor	See the table 1 following	this table.		
002	Tray 1: Tray Set Sensor	Set	Not set		
003	Tray 1: Paper Lift Sensor	Not upper limit	Upper limit		
004	Tray 1: Paper End Sensor	No paper	Paper remaining		
005	Tray 1: Paper Height Sensor 1				
006	Tray 1: Paper Height Sensor 2	See the table 2 following	this table.		
007	Tray 2: Paper Size Sensor	See the table 1 following	this table.		
008	Tray 2: Tray Set Sensor	Set	Not set		
009	Tray 2: Paper Lift Sensor	Not upper limit	Upper limit		
010	Tray 2: Paper End Sensor	No paper	Paper remaining		

011	Tray 2: Paper Height Sensor 1 Tray 2:	See the table 2 following this table.		
012	Paper Height Sensor 2			
013	Tray 1: Paper Feed Sensor	Paper detected	No paper detected	
014	Tray 2: Paper Feed Sensor	Paper detected	No paper detected	
015	Tray 3: Paper Feed Sensor	Paper detected	No paper detected	
016	Tray 4: Paper Feed Sensor	Paper detected	No paper detected	
017	LCT: Paper Feed Sensor	No paper detected	Paper detected	
018	Relay Sensor 1	Paper detected	No paper detected	
019	Relay Sensor 2	Paper detected No paper detecte		
020	Relay Sensor 3	No paper detected Paper detected		
021	Relay Sensor 4	No paper detected Paper detected		
022	Relay Sensor: LCT	No paper detected	Paper detected	
023	By-pass: Paper End Sensor	Not end	Paper end	
024	By-pass: Paper Size Sensor	See the table 3 following	this table.	
025	Registration Sensor	Paper detected	No paper detected	
026	Fusing Exit Sensor	No paper detected	Paper detected	
027	Fusing Entrance Sensor	Paper detected	No paper detected	
028	Junction Gate Relay Sensor	Paper detected	No paper detected	
029	Exit Sensor	Paper detected	No paper detected	
030	Paper Overflow Sensor	Not full	Full	
031	Right Cover Open/Close	Close	Open	
032	Duplex Unit Open/Close	Open	Close	
033	Duplex Entrance Sensor	Paper detected	No paper detected	
034	Duplex Exit Sensor	Paper detected	No paper detected	

035	Bank Right Cover Open/Close	Close	Open	
036	Tray Cover Open/Close	Close	Open	
037	LCT Set	Set	Not set	
038	Bridge Tray: Exit Sensor	Paper detected	No paper detected	
039	Bridge Tray: Relay Sensor	Paper detected	No paper detected	
040	Bridge Tray: Set Detection	Set	Not set	
041	Bridge Tray: Left Guide Open/Close	Close	Open	
042	Bridge Tray: Right Guide Open/ Close	Close	Open	
043	Transfer Belt Unit HP Sensor	Not HP	HP	
044	New U. Det: Trans.	New	Not new	
045	New U. Det: Fusing.	New	Not new	
046	Fusing Unit Set	Set (Bit1)	Not set (Bit1)	
047	Toner Overflow Sensor	Not full	Full	
048	Interlock Detection 1	Right or front door is open.	Right or front door is close.	
049	Interlock Detection 2	Right or front door is open.	Right or front door is close.	
055	New U. Det. :PCDU	New	Not new	
057	Cleaning Web End	Not end	End	
058	Punch Switch	On	Off	
065	Bypass Tray Paper Length Detection	Paper detected	No paper detected	
200	Scanner HP Sensor	Not HP	HP	
201	Platen Cover Sensor	Open	Close	

Table 1: Paper Height Sensor

0: Deactivated, 1: Activated (actuator inside sensor)

Remaining paper	Paper height sensor 1	Paper height sensor 2
Full	0	0
Nearly full	1	0
Near end	1	1
Almost empty	0	1

Table 2: Paper Size Switch

Switch 1 is used for the tray set detection.

0: Pushed, 1: Not pushed

Мс	odels	Sv	vitch Locati	on
North America	Europe/Asia	4	3	2
11" x 17" SEF* 1 (A3 SEF)	A3 SEF*1 (11" x 17" SEF)	0	0	1
8.5" x 14" SEF *2 (B4 SEF)	B4 SEF *2 (8.5" x 14" SEF)	0	0	0
A4 SEF	A4 SEF	1	1	0
8.5" x 11" SEF	8.5" x 11" SEF	1	1	1
B5 SEF	B5 SEF	0	1	1
11" x 81/2" LEF*3 (A4 LEF)	A4 LEF*3 (11" x 81/2" LEF)	1	0	0
10.5" x 7.25" LEF*4 (B5 LEF)	B5 LEF*4 (10.5" × 7.25" LEF)	0	1	0
A5 LEF	A5 LEF	1	0	1

Mo	Switch Location			
North America	Europe/Asia	4	3	2

 $^{^*}$ 1: The machine detects either 11" x 17" SEF or A3 SEF, depending on the setting of SP 5-181-002 (Tray 1) or -006 (Tray 2).

- * 3: The machine detects either 11" x 81/2" LEF or A4 LEF, depending on the setting of SP 5-181-001 (Tray 1) or -005 (Tray 2).
- *4: The machine detects either B5 LEF or 10.5" x 7.25" LEF, depending on the setting of SP 5-181-004 (Tray 1) or -008 (Tray 2)..

Table 3: Paper Size (By-pass Table)

0: Pushed, 1: Not pushed

Mod	Models				
North America	Europe/Asia	3	2	1	0
11" x 17" SEF*1 (11" x 8.5" LEF)					
11" x 17" SEF*1 (11" x 8.5" LEF)			1	0	0
8.5" x 11" SEF*1 (8.5" x 11" SEF*2)			1	0	1
8.5" x 11" SEF*1 (8.5" x 11" SEF*2)			0	0	1
5.5" x 8.5" SEF	A5 SEF	1	0	1	1
5.5" x 8.5" SEF	5" x 8.5" SEF		0	1	1
5.5" x 8.5" SEF	" x 8.5" SEF		1	1	1
5.5" x 8.5" SEF	A6 SEF	1	1	1	1

 $^{^*}$ 2: The machine detects either 8.5" x 14" SEF or B4 SEF, depending on the setting of SP 5-181-003 (Tray 1) or -007 (Tray 2).



• *1: When the machine determines that the paper feed direction is "LEF", it considers that the paper size is bracketed size.

APS Original Size Detection

Original S	Ler	ngth Sens	or	Wid Sen		SP4-301		
Metric version	Inch version	L3	L2	L1	W1 W2		display	
A3	11" x 17"	0	0	0	0	0	00011111	
B4	10" x 14"	0	0	0	0	Х	00011110	
F4 8.5" x 13", 8.25" x 13", or 8" x 13" SP 5126 controls the size that is detected	8.5" x 14"	0	0	0	X	Х	00011100	
A4 LEF	8.5" x 11"	Х	Х	Х	0	0	00000011	
B5 LEF	-	Х	Х	Х	0	Х	00000010	
A4 SEF	11" x 8.5"	Х	0	0	Х	Х	00001100	
B5 SEF	-	Х	Х	0	Х	Х	00000100	
A5 LEF/ SEF	5.5" x 8.5", 8.5" x 5.5"	Х	Х	Х	Х	Х	00000000	

3000-Sheet Finisher (D636)

6140	Bit Description		Read	ing
0140	DII	Description	0	1
001	Entra	ince Sensor	No paper detected	Paper detected
002	Proo	Exit Sensor	No paper detected	Paper detected
003	Proo	Full Detection Sensor	Not Full	Full

.1.10	D.		Read	ing
6140	Bit	Description	0	1
004	Uppe	er Tray Exit Sensor	No paper detected*1	Paper detected* 1
005	Stap	le Exit Sensor	No paper detected	Paper detected
006	Shift	Roller HP Sensor	Not HP	HP
007	Shift	Exit Sensor	No paper detected	Paper detected
008	Exit (Guide Plate HP Sensor	Not HP	HP
009	Lowe	er Tray Height Sensor	No paper detected	Paper detected
010	Uppe	er Tray Height Sensor	No paper detected	Paper detected
011	Uppe	er Tray Full Sensor	Not Full	Full
012	Stacl	k Roller HP Sensor	Not HP	HP
013	Jogg	er HP Sensor	Not HP	HP
014	Feed	Out Belt HP Sensor	HP	Not HP
015	Stap	ling Tray Paper Sensor	No paper detected	Paper detected
016	Corn	er Stapler HP Sensor	Not HP	HP
017	Stap	ler Rotation HP Sensor	Not HP	HP
018	Uppe	er Tray Limit SW	Not Limit	Limit
019	Door	r Switch	Closed	Open
020	Corn	er Stapler Operation	Not HP	HP
021	Stap	le Detection	No staple detected	Staple detected
022	Stap	le Dip Detection	No staple detected	Staple detected
023	Punc	h Movement HP Sensor	Not HP	HP
024	Pape	er Position Slide HP Sensor	Not HP	HP
025	Pape	er Position Sensor	No paper detected	Paper detected
026	Punc	h Full Sensor	Not Full	Full

.1.40	D.		Read	ing
6140	Bit	Description	0	1
027	Punch HP Sensor		Not HP	HP
028	Punc	h DIP SW 1	See	* 1
029	Punc	h DIP SW 2	See	* 1
030	Stack	k Junction Gate HP Sensor	Not HP	НР
031	Stack	k Present Sensor	No paper detected	Paper detected
032	Clar	np Roller HP Sensor	Not HP	HP
033	Fold	Entrance Sensor	No paper detected	Paper detected
034	Botto	om Fence HP Sensor	Not HP	HP
035	Fold	Cam HP Sensor	Not HP	HP
036	Fold	Plate HP Sensor	Not HP	HP
037	Fold	Unit Exit Sensor	No paper detected	Paper detected
038	Lowe	er Tray Full Sensor: Front	No paper detected	Paper detected
039	Lowe	er Tray Full Sensor: Rear	No paper detected	Paper detected
040	Book	clet Stapler 1: Operation	Not HP	HP
041	Book	clet Stapler 1: Staple In (Front)	No staple detected	Staple detected
042	Book Edge	clet Stapler 1: Staple In (Leading	No staple detected	Staple detected
043	Book Rear	clet Stapler 1: Operation (Rotation/	Not HP	HP
044	Book	clet Stapler 1: Staple In (Rear)	No staple detected	Staple detected
045	1	klet Stapler 1: Staple In (Leading e/Rear)	No staple detected	Staple detected
046	Uppe	er Tray Full Sensor: 3000	Not Full	Full
047	Exit J	ogger HP Sensor: Front	Not HP	HP
048	Exit J	ogger HP Sensor: Rear	Not HP	HP

6140	Bit	Description	Read	ing
0140	DII	Description	0	1
049	Exit J	ogger HP Sensor: Upper	Not HP	HP

* 1: Combination of DIP SW 1 and SW 2

DIP SW 1	DIP SW 2	Punch Type
0	0	Japan
1	0	Europe
0	1	North America
1	1	North Europe

1000-Sheet Finisher (D588)

4100	Dia	December 2	Read	ling
6139	Bit	Description	0	1
001	Entra	ince Sensor	Paper detected	No paper detected
002		Exit Sensor er Tray Exit Sensor)	No paper detected	Paper detected
003		le Entrance Sensor bler Tray Entrance Sensor)	Paper detected	No paper detected
004		le Moving HP Sensor bler HP Sensor)	Not HP	НР
005		er HP Sensor ger Fence HP Sensor)	Not HP	НР
006	Stack	c Feed-out Belt HP Sensor	HP	Not HP
007	Stap	le Tray Paper Sensor	No paper detected	Paper detected
008		le Rotation Sensor ble Rotation HP Sensor)	Not HP	НР

6139	Bit	Danadalian	Read	ling
0139	DII	Description	0	1
009	Stapl	le Sensor	Staple detected	No staple detected
010	Stapl	le READY Detection	Staple detected	No staple detected
011		Guide Plate HP Guide Plate HP Sensor)	Not HP	НР
012	Shift	HP Sensor	Not HP	HP
013		er Sensor ek Height Sensor)	No output tray detected	Output tray detected
014	·	Lower Sensor er Tray Lower Limit Sensor)	Lower limit	Not lower limit
015		f Full Sensor er Limit Sensor)	Not full	Full

Output Check Table

Copier

5804	Output Check	
001	Exit Motor: 350	
002	Exit Motor: 175	
003	Exit Motor: 230	D
004	Exit Motor: 180	Paper exit motor (Mainframe)
005	Exit Motor: 154	
006	Exit Motor: 90	

5804	Output Check	
007	Feed Motor: 300	
008	Feed Motor: 255	
009	Feed Motor: 230	
010	Feed Motor: 215	Paper feed motor (Mainframe)
011	Feed Motor: 180	
012	Feed Motor: 154	
013	Feed Motor: 90	
014	Bank: Feed Motor: 300	
015	Bank: Feed Motor: 255	
016	Bank: Feed Motor: 230	
017	Bank: Feed Motor: 215	Paper feed motor (Optional paper feed unit)
018	Bank: Feed Motor: 180	
019	Bank: Feed Motor: 154	
020	Bank: Feed Motor: 90	
021	LCT: Feed Motor: 300	
022	LCT: Feed Motor: 255	
023	LCT: Feed Motor: 230	
024	LCT: Feed Motor: 215	Paper feed motor (Optional LCT)
025	LCT: Feed Motor: 180	
026	LCT: Feed Motor: 154	
027	LCT: Feed Motor: 90	
028	Paper Feed Clutch 1	Day f d - - - 1 / 2 / M 1
029	Paper Feed Clutch 2	Paper feed clutch 1/2 (Mainframe)
030	Bank: Paper Feed Clutch 3	Paper feed clutch 3/4 (Optional paper
031	Bank: Paper Feed Clutch 4	feed unit)

5804	Output Check	
032	LCT: Paper Feed Clutch	Paper feed clutch (Optional LCT)
033	Pick-up Solenoid 1	Distance Colonial 1/2/AA information
034	Pick-up Solenoid 2	Pick-up Solenoid 1/2 (Mainframe)
035	Bank: Pick-up Solenoid 3	Pick-up Solenoid 3/4 (Optional paper
036	Bank: Pick-up Solenoid 4	feed unit)
037	LCT: Pick-up Solenoid	Pick-up Solenoid (LCT)
038	Tray Lift Motor 1: Up	
039	Tray Lift Motor 1: Down	
040	Tray Lift Motor 2: Up	-
041	Tray Lift Motor 2: Down	
042	Paper Tray Lock Solenoid	Not used
043	Bank: Paper Tray Lock Solenoid	Tray lock solenoid (Optional paper feed unit)
044	Registration Motor: 230	
045	Registration Motor: 180	
046	Registration Motor: 154	-
047	Registration Motor: 90	
048	Exit: Junction Gate Solenoid	Junction gate 1 solenoid
049	Duplex: Inverter Gate Solenoid	Not used

5804	Output Check		
050	Duplex Inverter Motor: Fwd: 230		
051	Duplex Inverter Motor: Fwd: 180		
052	Duplex Inverter Motor: Fwd: 154	1	
053	Duplex Inverter Motor: Fwd: 90		
054	Duplex Inverter Motor: Rev: 230	-	
055	Duplex Inverter Motor: Rev: 180		
056	Duplex Inverter Motor: Rev: 154		
057	Duplex Inverter Motor: Rev: 90		
058	Duplex/By-pass Motor: Fwd: 230		
059	Duplex/By-pass Motor: Fwd: 180		
060	Duplex/By-pass Motor: Fwd: 154		
061	Duplex/By-pass Motor: Fwd: 90		
062	Duplex/By-pass Motor: Rev: 230	-	
063	Duplex/By-pass Motor: Rev: 180		
064	Duplex/By-pass Motor: Rev: 154		
065	Duplex/By-pass Motor: Rev: 90		
066	By-pass Feed Clutch	-	
067	By-pass Pick-up Solenoid	-	
068	Bridge Tray: Drive Motor: 230		
069	Bridge Tray: Drive Motor: 180	Dai, a	
070	Bridge Tray: Drive Motor: 154	Drive motor (Bridge unit)	
071	Bridge Tray: Drive Motor: 90		
072	Bridge Tray: Junction Gate Solenoid	Junction Gate Solenoid (Bridge unit)	
073	Bridge Tray: Drive Motor: Reset	-	
074	Bridge Tray: Drive Motor: Enable	-	

5804	Output Check		
075	Bridge: Cooling Fan Motor	Not used	
076	Transfer Belt Contact Motor	-	
077	OPC Motor: 230		
078	OPC Motor: 180	Drum motor	
079	OPC Motor: 154	Drum motor	
080	OPC Motor: 90		
081	Transfer/Development Motor: 230		
082	Transfer/Development Motor: 180		
083	Transfer/Development Motor: 154		
084	Transfer/Development Motor: 90		
085	Fusing Motor: 230		
086	Fusing Motor: 180		
087	Fusing Motor: 154	-	
088	Fusing Motor: 90		
089	Development Puddle Motor	-	
090	PTL Control	-	
091	Fusing Fan Motor: High	Fusing exhaust fan motor	
092	Fusing Fan Motor: Low	rusing exhausi ian molor	
093	Exhaust Fan Motor: High	Exhaust fan motor	
094	Exhaust Fan Motor: Low	Exhausi ian moior	
095	Duct Fan Motor	Cooling fan motor	
096	Exit Fan Motor: High	Day and a site of the site of	
097	Exit Fan Motor: Low	Paper exit cooling fan motor	
098	PSU Fan Motor	-	

5804	Output Check	
100	Polygon Motor: 230	
101	Polygon Motor: 180	
102	Polygon Motor: 154	-
103	Polygon Motor: 90	
104	LD 1	
105	LD 2	-
106	Toner Bottle Motor: Fwd	Toner supply motor
107	Quenching Lamp	-
108	Charge Bias	-
109	Development Bias	-
110	Transfer Belt Voltage	-
111	ID Sensor LED	-
112	Attention light: Buzzer	-
113	Attention light: Blue lamp	-
114	Attention light: Red lamp	-
115	Cleaning Web Motor	Web motor
117	CTL Cooling FAN	Controller fan

1000-Sheet Finisher (D588)

4144	Output Check	
6144	Display	Description
001	Upper Relay Motor	Upper Transport Motor
002	Lower Relay Motor	Lower Transport Motor
003	Exit Motor	-

004	Proof Junction Gate SOL	Tray Junction Gate Solenoid
005	Lower Tray Lift Motor	-
006	Jogger Fence Motor	-
007	Stapler Motor	-
008	Stapler Hammer	-
009	Stapler Junction Gate Solenoid	-
010	Positioning Roller Solenoid	-
011	Stack Feed-out Motor	-
012	Shift Motor	-
013	Exit Guide Plate Motor	-

3000-Sheet Finisher (D636)

6145	Output	
0143	Display	Description
001	Entrance Motor	-
002	Upper Transport Motor	-
003	Lower Transport Motor	-
004	Upper/Proof Tray Exit Motor	-
005	Clamp Roller Retraction Motor	-
006	Shift Roller Motor	-
007	Exit Guide Plate Motor	-
008	Upper Tray Lift Motor	-
009	Stacking Sponge Roller Motor	-
010	Jogger Fence Motor	-
011	Feed Out Belt Motor	-

012	Corner Stapler Movement Motor	-
013	Corner Stapler Rotation Motor	-
014	Corner Stapler	-
015	Proof Junction Gate Solenoid	-
016	Stapling Tray Junction Gate Solenoid	-
017	Stapling Edge Pressure Plate Solenoid	-
018	Positioning Roller Solenoid	-
019	Booklet Pressure Roller Solenoid	-
020	Stack Junction Gate Motor	-
021	Fold Unit Bottom Fence Lift Motor	-
022	Booklet Stapler: Front	-
023	Booklet Stapler: Rear	-
024	Fold Plate Motor	-
025	Fold Roller Motor	-
026	Positioning Roller Motor	-
027	Punch Drive Motor	-
028	Punch Movement Motor	-
029	Paper Position Sensor Slide Motor	-
030	Exit Jogger Motor: Front	-
031	Exit Jogger Motor: Rear	-
032	Exit Jogger Motor Release Motor	-

Updating the Firmware

To update the firmware for this machine, you must have the new version of the firmware downloaded onto an SD (Secure Digital) Card. The SD Card is inserted into SD Card Slot 2 (Lower Slot) on the controller box.

Before You Begin

An SD card is a precision device. Always observe the following precautions when you handle SD cards:

- Always switch the machine off before you insert an SD card. Never insert the SD card into the slot with the power on.
- Do not remove the SD card from the service slot after the power has been switched on.
- Never switch the machine off while the firmware is downloading from the SD card.
- Keep SD cards in a safe location where they are not exposed to high temperature, high humidity, or exposure to direct sunlight.
- Always handle SD cards with care. Do not bend or scratch them. Do not let the SD card get exposed to shock or vibration.
- Make sure that the write protection of an SD card is unlocked when you download an application
 to it. If not, downloading fails and a download error (e.g. Error Code 44) occurs during a firmware
 upgrade.

Keep the following points in mind when you use the firmware update software:

- "Upload" means to send data from the machine to the SD card. "Download" means to send data from the SD card to the machine.
- To select an item on the LCD, touch the appropriate button on the soft touch-screen of the LCD.
- Disconnect the Ethernet interface cable, Gigabit Ethernet cable, IEEE1284 interface cable and
 remove the Wireless LAN interface board before you start the firmware update procedure. Make
 sure that the machine is disconnected from the network to prevent a print job for arriving while the
 firmware update is in progress.

Updating Firmware

Preparation

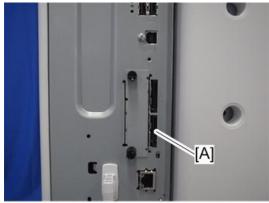
- 1. If the SD card is blank, copy the entire "romdata" folder onto the SD card.
- 2. If the card already contains the "romdata" folder, copy the "M132" folder onto the card.





m1322095

2. Remove the SD card slot cover [A] (\mathscr{F} x 1).



m1322096

- 3. Insert the SD card into SD Card Slot 2 (Lower Slot) [A]. Make sure the label on the SD card faces the rear side of the machine.
- 4. Slowly push the SD card into the slot so it locks in place. You will hear it click. Make sure the SD card locks in place.



- To remove the SD, push it in to unlock the spring lock. Then release it so it pops out of the slot.
- 5. Disconnect the network cable from the machine if the machine is connected to a network.
- 6. Switch the main power switch on. After about 45 seconds, the initial version update screen appears on the LCD in English.
- 7. On the screen, touch the button on the operation panel to select the item in the menu that you want to update.

ROM/NEW	What it means
ROM:	Tells you the number of the module and name of the version currently installed. The first line is the module number, the second line the version name.
NEW:	Tells you the number of the module and name version on the SD card. The first line is the module number, the second line the version name.



- Controller, engine and operation panel firmware cannot be updated at the same time. It is recommended to update firmware modules one by one.
- 8. Touch "UpDate (#)" to start the update.



- While downloading is in progress, the LCD will display "Loading". When downloading has been completed, the panel will display "update done".
- For operation panel software, the Data In indicator flashes red while downloading is in progress, and then the Check Status indicator flashes green after downloading is completed.
- 9. The "Update done." message appears on the operation panel after completing the updating. The message differs depending on the firmware that has been updated.
- 10. Switch the main power switch off when you see the "Update done" message or follow the procedure that is displayed on the operation panel.
- 11. Press in the SD card to release it. Then remove it from the slot.
- 12. Switch the main power switch on for normal operation.

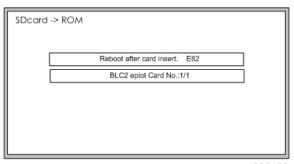
Error Messages

An error message shows in the first line if an error occurs during the download.

The error code consists of the letter "E" and a number. The example above shows error "E24" displayed. For details, refer to the Error Message Table. (** "Handling Firmware Update Errors" in this section)

Firmware Update Error

If a firmware update error occurs, this means the update was cancelled during the update because the module selected for update was not on the SD card.



w_m1322106

Recovery after Power Loss

If the ROM update is interrupted as a result of accidental loss of power while the firmware is updating, then the correct operation of the machine cannot be guaranteed after the machine is switched on again. If the ROM update does not complete successfully for any reason, then in order to ensure the correct operation of the machine, the ROM update error will continue to show until the ROM is updated successfully.

In this case, insert the card again and switch on the machine to continue the firmware download automatically from the card without the menu display.

Handling Firmware Update Errors

An error message shows in the first line if an error occurs during a download. The error code consists of the letter "E" and a number ("E20", for example).

Error Message Table

Code	Meaning	Solution
20	Cannot map logical address	Make sure the SD card is installed correctly, or use a different SD card.
21	Cannot access memory	HDD connection incorrect or replace HDD.
22	Cannot decompress compressed data	Incorrect ROM data on the SD card, or data is damaged.
23	Error occurred when ROM update program started	Controller program defective. If the second attempt fails, replace controller board.

Code	Meaning	Solution
24	SD card access error	Make sure the SD card is inserted correctly, or use a different SD card.
30	No HDD available for stamp data download	HDD connection incorrect or replace HDD.
31	Data incorrect for continuous download	Insert the SD card with the remaining data required for the download, the re-start the procedure.
32	Data incorrect after download interrupted	Execute the recovery procedure for the intended module download, then repeat the installation procedure.
33	Incorrect SD card version	Incorrect ROM data on the SD card, or data is corrupted.
34	Module mismatch - Correct module is not on the SD card)	SD update data is incorrect. Acquire the correct data (Japan, Overseas, OEM, etc.) then install again.
35	Module mismatch – Module on SD card is not for this machine	SD update data is incorrect. The data on the SD card is for another machine. Acquire correct update data then install again.
36	Cannot write module – Cause other than E34, E35	SD update data is incorrect. The data on the SD card is for another machine. Acquire correct update data then install again.
40	Engine module download failed	Replace the update data for the module on the SD card and try again, or replace the BCU board.
42	Operation panel module download failed	Replace the update data for the module on the SD card and try again, or replace the LCDC.
43	Stamp data module download failed	Replace the update data for the module on the SD card and try again, or replace the hard disks.
44	Controller module download failed	Replace the update data for the module on the SD card and tray again, or replace controller board.
50	Electronic confirmation check failed	SD update data is incorrect. The data on the SD card is for another machine. Acquire correct update data then install again.

Uploading/Downloading NVRAM Data

The content of the NVRAM can be uploaded to and downloaded from an SD card.

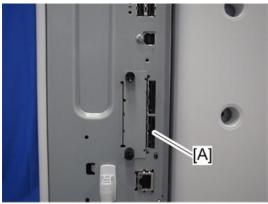
Uploading NVRAM Data (SP5-824)

1. Turn off the main switch.



m1322095

2. Remove the SD card slot cover ($\ensuremath{\widetilde{\mathcal{F}}} \times 1$).



m1322096

- 3. Insert the SD card into SD card slot 2 (Lower Slot) [A].
- 4. Turn on the main switch.
- 5. Execute SP5-824.
- 6. Press the "EXECUTE" button to start uploading the NVRAM data.

Downloading NVRAM Data (SP5-825)

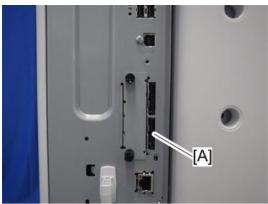
The following data are not downloaded from the SD card:

- Total counter
- Duplex, A3/DLT/Over 420 mm, Staple counters (system settings).
- 1. Turn off the main switch.



m1322095

2. Remove the SD card slot cover [A] (x 1).



m1322096

- 3. Plug the SD card into SD card slot 2 (Lower Slot) [A].
- 4. Turn on the main switch.
- 5. Execute SP5-825.
- 6. Press the "EXECUTE" button to start downloading the NVRAM data.

Note that the following errors could occur during downloading:

• If a card is not installed in the card slot and a message tells you that downloading cannot proceed, you cannot execute downloading, even by pressing the "EXECUTE" button.

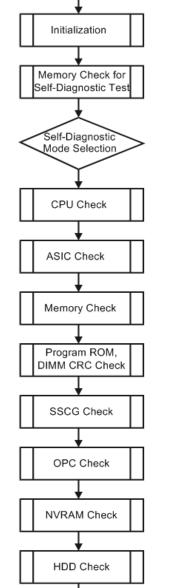
• If the correct card for the NVRAM data is not inserted in the card slot, after you press the "EXECUTE" button a message will tell you that downloading cannot proceed because the card is abnormal and the execution will halt.

Self-Diagnostic Mode

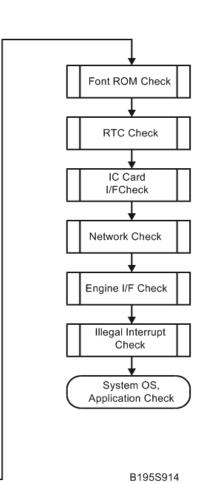
Self-Diagnostic Mode at Power On

As soon as the main machine is powered on, the controller waits for the initial settings of the printer engine to take effect and then starts an independent self-diagnostic test program. The self-diagnostic test follows the path of the flow chart shown below and checks the CPU, memory, HDD, and so on. An SC code is displayed in the touch panel if the self-diagnostic program detects any malfunction or abnormal condition.

Power On



IEEE1284 I/F Check



Ö

Detailed Self-Diagnostic Mode

Do not use the detailed self-diagnostic mode in this model.

This mode is only for factory use to test other components or conditions that are not tested during self-diagnosis after power on.

If you entered the self-diagnostic mode by accident, turn the main power switch off and on.

Using the Debug Log

Overview

This machine provides a Save Debug Log feature that allows the Customer Engineer to save and retrieve error information for analysis.

Every time an error occurs, debug information is recorded in volatile memory but this information is lost when the machine is switched off and on.

To capture this debug information, the Save Debug Log feature provides two main features:

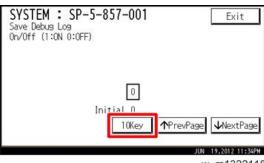
- Switching on the debug feature so error information is saved directly to the HDD for later retrieval.
- Copying the error information from the HDD to an SD card.

When a user is experiencing problems with the machine, follow the procedure below to set up the machine so the error information is saved automatically to the HDD. Then ask the user to reproduce the problem.

Switching On And Setting Up Save Debug Log

The debug information cannot be saved until the "Save Debug Log" function has been switched on and a target has been selected.

- 1. Enter the SP mode.
- 2. Select "Engine" SP.
- 3. Under "5857 Save Debug Log", press "1 On/Off (1:ON 0:OFF)".



w_m1322118

4. Press "10Key" to open the number entry screen.

5

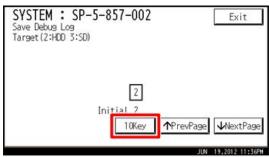


w_m1322121

5. Enter "1" then press "OK". This switches the Save Debug Log feature on.



- The default setting is "0" (OFF). This feature must be switched on in order for the debug information to be saved.
- 6. Next, select the target destination where the debug information will be saved. Under "5857 Save Debug Log", press "2 Target (2:HDD 3:SD)".



w m1322036

7. Press "10Key" to open the number entry screen.



w_m1322122

8. Enter "2" to select the hard disk as the target destination, and then press "OK".



 Enter "3" to save the debug information directly to the SD card if it is inserted in Slot 2 (Lower Slot). 9. Now touch "5858" and specify the events that you want to record in the debug log. SP5858 (Debug Save When) provides the following items for selection.

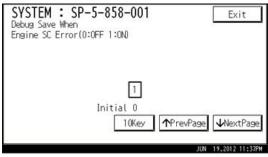
1	Engine SC Error	Saves data when an engine-related SC code is generated.
2	Controller SC Error	Saves debug data when a controller-related SC Code is generated.
3	Any SC Error	Saves data only for the SC code that you specify by entering code number.
4	Jam	Saves data for jams.



• More than one event can be selected.

Example 1: To Select Items 1, 2, 4

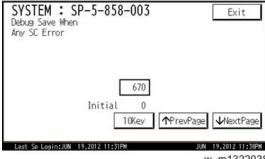
Touch the appropriate items(s) and press "10Key". On the number entry screen, enter "1", and then press "OK". Do the same settings for each selection. This example shows "Engine SC Error" selected.



w_m1322123

Example 2: To Specify an SC Code

Touch "3 Any SC Error" and press "10Key". On the number entry screen, enter the 3-digit SC code number, and then press "OK". This example shows an entry for SC670.



w_m1322038

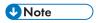




- For details about SC code numbers, please refer to the SC tables in Section "6.
 Troubleshooting"
- Next, select the one or more memory modules for reading and recording debug information. Touch "5859".

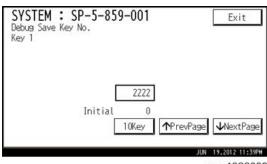
Under "5859" press the appropriate key item for the module that you want to record. Press "10Key" to open the number entry screen.

Enter the appropriate 4-digit number, then press "OK".



• Refer to the two tables below for the 4-digit numbers to enter for each key.

The example below shows "Key 1" with "2222" entered.



w_m1322039

The following keys can be set with the corresponding numbers. (The initials in parentheses indicate the names of the modules.)

4-Digit Entries for Keys 1 to 10

Key No.	Printer	Web
1	2222 (SCS)	
2	2223 (SRM)	
3	256 (IMH)	
4	1000 (ECS)	
5	1025 (MCS)	
6	4400 (GPS)	5682 (NFA)
7	4500 (PDL)	6600 (WebDB)

Key No.	Printer	Web
8	4600 (GPS-PM)	3300 (PTS)
9	2000 (NCS)	6666 (WebSys)
10	2224 (BCU)	2000 (NCS)



• The default settings for Keys 1 to 10 are all zero ("0").

Key to Acronyms

Acronym	Meaning	Acronym	Meaning
ECS	Engine Control Service	NFA	Net File Application
GPS	GW Print Service	PDL	Printer Design Language
GSP-PM	GW Print Service – Print Module	PTS	Print Server
IMH	Image Memory Handler	SCS	System Control Service
MCS	Memory Control Service	SRM	System Resource Management
NCS	Network Control Service	WebDB	Web Document Box (Document Server)

The machine is now set to record the debugging information automatically on the SD card or HDD (the target selected with SP5-857-002) for the events that you selected SP5-858 and the memory modules selected with SP5-859.

Please keep the following important points in mind when you are doing this setting:

- The initial settings are all zero.
- These settings remain in effect until you change them. Be sure to check all the settings, especially the settings for Keys 6 to 10. To switch off a key setting, enter a zero for that key.
- You can select any number of keys from 1 to 10 (or all) by entering the corresponding 4-digit numbers from the table.
- One area of the disk is reserved to store the debug log. The size of this area is limited to 4 MB.

O

Retrieving the Debug Log from the HDD

- 1. Insert the SD card into Slot 2 (Lower Slot).
- 2. Enter the SP mode and execute SP5857-009 (Copy HDD to SD Card (Latest 4 MB) to write the debugging data to the SD card.



- The SD card can hold up to 4MB of data. If the debugging data is larger than 4MB, you can switch to another SD card.
- 3. Use a card reader to copy the file and send it for analysis to your local Ricoh representative by email, or just send the SD card by mail.

SMC List Card Save Function

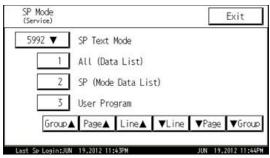
Overview

SMC List Card Save

The SMC List Card Save (SP Text Mode) function is used to save the SMC list as CSV files to the SD-card inserted into the operation panel SD-card slot.

Procedure

- 1. Turn the main power switch OFF.
- 2. Insert the SD card into the operation panel SD-card slot. Then turn the power ON.
- 3. Enter SP mode.
- 4. Select "Engine" SP.



w_m1322100

- 5. Select SP-5992 "SP Text Mode".
- 6. Select a detail SP number shown below to save data on the SD card.

SP-5992-xxx (SP Text Mode)

Detail No.	SMC Categories to Save
001	All (Data List)
002	SP (Mode Data List)
003	User Program
004	Logging Data
005	Diagnostic Report

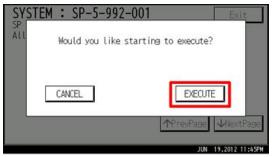
5

Detail No.	SMC Categories to Save
006	Non-Default
007	NIB Summary
024	SDK/J Summary
025	SDK/J Application Info
026	Printer SP



w m1322101

7. Press "EXECUTE".



w_m1322102

- 8. Press "EXECUTE" again to start. Press "CANCEL" to cancel the saving.
- 9. "It is executing it." is shown on the screen while executing.
- 10. Wait for 2 to 3 minutes until "Completed" is shown.



- The SMC list saving may take from 2 to 3 minutes to complete.
- Press "CANCEL" to abort executing.



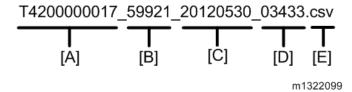
w m1322103

11. Press "Exit" to exit from SP mode.

File Names of the Saved SMC Lists

The SMC list data saved on the SD-card will be named automatically. The file naming rules are as follows.

Example:



- [A]: Machine serial number (fixed for each machine)
- [B]:SP number saved in this file.

First four digits (5992) in this part are fixed. The other one or two digits are the detail SP number(s). In this case, it is one digit. Therefore, this file is of SP5-992-001 (All data list). See the upper SP table for the correspondence between SP detail numbers and the contents.

• [C]: File creation date

Year/Month/Day ("Zero" will be omitted if each is one digit.)

• [D]: File creation time

Hour/Minute/Second ("Zero" will be omitted if each is one digit.)

[E]: File Extension CSV (Comma Separated Value)
 This part is fixed.



 A folder named by the machine serial number will be created on the SD card when this function is executed.

This function can save the SMC list data only to an SD card inserted into the operation panel SD card slot.

Error Messages

SMC List Card Save error message:

• Failed:

FACTOR: Read-only file system, No space left on device.

If an error occurs, pressing "Exit" will cause the device to discard the job and return to the ready state.

6. Troubleshooting

Service Call Conditions

Summary

There are 4 levels of service call conditions.

Level	Definition	Reset Procedure
A	To prevent damage to the machine, the main machine cannot be operated until the SC has been reset by a service representative (see the note below).	Enter SP mode, use SP 5810, touch [Execute], and then turn the main power switch off and on.
В	SCs that disable only the features that use the defective item. Although these SCs are not shown to the user under normal conditions, they are displayed on the operation panel only when the defective feature is selected.	Turn the operation switch or main switch off and on.
С	The SC history is updated. The machine can be operated as usual.	The SC will not be displayed. Only the SC history is updated.
D	Turning the main switch off then on resets SCs displayed on the operation panel. These are re-displayed if the error occurs again.	Turn the operation switch off and on. Also see below.

When a Level "D" SC code occurs

When a Level D SC occurs, a screen opens on the operation panel to tell the operator:

- An error occurred
- The job in progress will be erased
- The machine will reboot automatically after approximately 30 seconds.

The operator can wait until the machine reboots automatically or touch "Reset" on the screen to reset the machine immediately and go back to the Home screen.

If the operator does not touch "Reset"

The next message tells the operator that the machine will reset automatically and that the previous job was lost and must be started again. After reading the message, the operator touches "Confirm" on the screen. The next screen shows the number and title of the SC code, and stops until the operator turns the machine off and on.

If the operator touches "Reset"

♦ Note

- If the operator touches "Reset" to bypass the 30-second interval for the machine to reboot, the machine reboots immediately and the operation panel displays the Home screen.
 - Do not try to use the operation panel during an automatic reboot.
 - If the Remote Service System is in use, the SC code is sent immediately to the Service Center.

SC Code Descriptions



- If a problem concerns a circuit board, disconnect and reconnect the connectors and then test the
 machine. Often a loose or disconnected harness is the cause of the problem. Always do this before
 you decide to replace the PCB.
- If a motor lock error occurs, check the mechanical load before you decide to replace the motor or sensors.
- When a Level "A" or "B" SC occurs while in an SP mode, the machine cannot display the SC number. If this occurs, check the SC number after leaving the SP mode.
- The machine reboots automatically when the machine issues a Level "D" SC code. This is done for Level "D" SC codes only.

SC Tables: SC1xx

195		Serial Number Mismatch
	D	Serial number stored in the memory does not have the correct code.
'		EEPROM defective
		BCU replaced without original EEPROM

SC Tables: SC2xx

202	D	Polygon motor error 1: ON timeout
		The polygon mirror motor does not reach the targeted operating speed within 10 sec. after turning on or changing speed
203	D	Polygon motor error 2: OFF timeout
		The polygon mirror motor does not leave the READY status within 3 sec. after the polygon motor switched off.

6

	D	Polygon motor error 3: XSCRDY signal error
		The SCRDY_N signal remains HIGH for 200 ms while the LD unit is firing.
204		Polygon motor/driver board harness loose or broken
		Polygon motor/driver board defective
		Laser optics unit defective
		Bridge board defective
		•

Laser synchronizing detection error: start position LD0 The laser synchronizing detection signal for the start position of the LDB is not output for two seconds after LDB unit turns on while the polygon motor is rotating normally • Disconnected cable from the laser synchronizing detection unit or defective connection • Defective laser synchronizing detector • Defective LD board • Defective BCU

D	Laser synchronizing detection error: start position LD1
	The laser synchronizing detection signal for the start position of the LDB is not output for two seconds after LDB unit turns on while the polygon motor is rotating normally.
	Disconnected cable from the laser synchronizing detection unit or defective connection
	Defective laser synchronizing detector
	Defective LD board
	Defective BCU
	D

The FGATE signal does not assert within the prescribed time. (The bridge board generates the FGATE signal and sends it to the LD unit when the registration sensor switches on.)

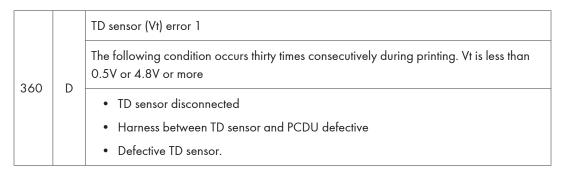
	D	FGATE OFF error
231		The FGATE signal does not assert within the prescribed time. (The bridge board generates the FGATE signal and sends it to the LD unit when the registration sensor switches on.)
		BCU, Controller board harness loose or broken
		Controller board defective
		BCU defective
		LD error
0.40		The bridge board detected a problem at the LD unit.
240	С	Worn-out LD
		Disconnected or broken harness of the LD.
		GAVD communication error
	D	The I2C bus device ID is not identified during initialization.
		A device-status error occurs during I2C bus communication.
270		 The I2C bus communication is not established due to an error other than a buffer shortage.
		BCU, Bridge board harness loose or broken
		Defective bridge board
		Defective BCU
		Defective LD controller board
SC Tal	bles:	SC3xx
	D	Charge roller bias leak
		A charge roller bias leak signal was detected.
302		Charge roller damaged
		High voltage supply board defective

• PCDU harness defective or disconnected

Charge roller bias correction leak The charge roller bias correction is performed twice even if the maximum charge roller bias (-2000V) is applied to the roller. • ID sensor defective • Worn charge roller • Charge roller damaged

Development roller bias leak The development roller bias leak is detected for 60 ms after the high voltage has been supplied to the development unit. Development bias leak Broken harness Defective high voltage power supply, voltage supply Defective high voltage supply unit

Development paddle motor error The machine detects a lock signal error from the development puddle motor for 2 seconds after the drum motor has turned on. Overload on the development puddle motor Defective development puddle motor Defective harness Defective IOB



	D	TD sensor adjustment error
		Vts is less than 1.8V or 4.8V or more during TD sensor initialization.
372		Heat seal not removed from a new developer pack
		TD harness sensor disconnected, loose or defective
		TD sensor defective
		Harness between TD sensor and drawer disconnected, defective

	D	Drum motor error
396		The machine detects a lock signal error from the drum motor for 2 seconds after the drum motor turned on.
		Overload on the motor
		Defective drum motor
		Defective harness
		Defective IOB

SC Tables: SC4xx

	D .	Vsg adjustment error
400		Vsg is more than 4.2V or 3.8V or less when the machine adjusts Vsg value.
400		Dirty or defective ID sensor
		Defective ID sensor shutter

	D	Transfer belt bias error
		The feed back bias from the transfer belt is more than 4V for 60 msec while the transfer belt bias is output.
		The A/D conversion level is 20 or less for 60 msec.
440		The PWM duty is 24% or more for 60 msec.
		Power pack broken
		Defective harness
		Disconnected connector

Transfer/Development motor error The machine detects a lock signal error from the transfer/development motor for a continuous 20 times after the transfer/development motor turned on. 441 D Overload on the motor Defective transfer/development motor Defective harness Defective IOB

Transfer belt contact motor error The transfer belt HP sensor detects incorrect movement of the transfer belt after the transfer belt contact motor has turned on. • Dirty transfer belt HP sensor • Defective transfer belt contact motor • Disconnected connector of the transfer belt HP sensor or motor • Disconnected cable • Defective IOB

SC Tables: SC5xx

1st tray lift malfunction

The tray lift sensor is not activated after the tray lift motor has been on for 10 seconds. If the main power switch is turned on when the paper is already at the feed height, the paper height position is detected again. At this time, the tray lift sensor should deactivate within 1.5 sec after the paper bottom plate starts to drop. If it does not deactivate within 1.5 sec., a message will prompt the user to reset Tray 1. After two attempts to release the error by re-setting the paper tray, if this does not solve the problem then this SC is displayed.

501 B

- An obstruction (jammed paper, paper scraps, etc.) has blocked the motor drive and caused an overload.
- Tray lift sensor connection loose, disconnected, or damaged
- Tray lift sensor defective
- · Tray lift motor connection loose, disconnected, or damaged
- Tray lift motor defective

2nd tray lift malfunction

The tray lift sensor is not activated after the tray lift motor has been on for 10 seconds. If the main power switch is turned on when the paper is already at the feed height, the paper height position is detected again. At this time, the tray lift sensor should deactivate within 1.5 sec. after the paper bottom plate starts to drop. If it does not deactivate within 1.5 sec., a message will prompt the user to reset Tray 2. After two attempts to re-set the paper tray, if this does not solve the problem then this SC is displayed.

502 B

- An obstruction (jammed paper, paper scraps, etc.) has blocked the motor drive and caused an overload.
- · Tray lift sensor connection loose, disconnected, or damaged
- Tray lift sensor defective
- · Tray lift motor connection loose, disconnected, or damaged
- Tray lift motor defective

503

В

3rd tray lift malfunction (optional paper feed unit or LCT)

For the paper feed unit:

- The lift sensor does not turn on within 15 seconds after the tray lift motor has turned on.
- When the tray lowers, the tray lift sensor does not go off within 1.5 sec. If this condition occurs three consecutive times, the SC is generated.

For the LCT:

- The lift sensor does not turn on or turn off within 8 seconds after the tray lift motor has turned on to lift or lower the tray.
- When the main switch is turned on or when the LCT is set, if the end fence is not in
 its position (home position sensor ON), the tray lift motor stops. If this condition
 occurs three consecutive times, the SC is generated.
- If the upper limit does not go off for 1.5 seconds even the tray lift motor turns on to lower the tray after the upper limit has been detected at power on. If this condition occurs three consecutive times, the SC is generated.
- The paper is detected in the left tray even the end fence is not its position (home position sensor OFF) after the left tray set switch is on at power on. If this condition occurs three consecutive times, the SC is generated.

For the paper feed unit:

- Defective tray lift motor or connector disconnection
- Defective lift sensor or connector disconnection

For the LCT:

- Defective stack transport clutch or connector disconnection
- Defective tray motor or connector disconnection
- Defective end fence home position sensor or connector disconnection
- Defective upper limit sensor or connector disconnection
- Defective tray lift motor or connector disconnection
- Defective pick-up solenoid or connector disconnection
- Left tray set switch or connector disconnection

4th tray lift malfunction (optional paper feed unit or LCT)

For the two-tray paper feed unit:

- When the tray lift motor is turned on, the upper limit is not detected within 15 seconds. If this condition occurs three consecutive times, the SC is generated.
- When the tray lowers, the tray lift sensor does not go off within 1.5 sec.

For the LCT:

504

В

- After the job is finished, if the end fence is not in the home position (home position sensor ON), the tray lift motor stops.
- When the main switch is turned on or when the paper feed unit is set, if the end
 fence is not in the home position (home position sensor ON), the tray lift motor
 stops. If this condition occurs three consecutive times, the SC is generated.
- If the upper or lower limit is not detected within 8 seconds when the tray lift motor is turned on to lift up or lower the tray.
- When the tray lowers, the tray lift sensor does not go off within 1.5 sec.

For the paper feed unit:

- Defective tray lift motor or connector disconnection
- Defective lift sensor or connector disconnection

For the LCT:

- Defective tray lift motor or connector disconnection
- Defective lift sensor or connector disconnection

6	

5th tray lift malfunction (optional paper feed unit or LCT)

For the two-tray paper feed unit:

- If the upper limit of the two-tray paper feed unit is not detected within 15 seconds when the tray lift motor is turned on to lift up the tray.
- When the tray lowers, the tray lift sensor does not go off within 1.5 sec. If this condition occurs three consecutive times, the SC is generated.

505 B

For the LCT:

- If the upper limit of the LCT 1200-sheet is not detected within 8 seconds when the tray lift motor is turned on to lift up or lower the tray.
- The tray lift sensor of the LCT 1200-sheet does not go off within 1.5 seconds when the tray lowers. If this condition occurs three consecutive times, the SC is generated.
- Tray lift motor defective or disconnected
- Upper limit sensor defective or disconnected

Fusing exhaust fan motor error

The IOB does not receive the lock signal for 10 seconds after turning on the fusing exhaust fan.

530 D

- Defective fusing exhaust fan motor or connector disconnection
- Defective IOB
- Disconnected harness

Exhaust fan motor error

The IOB does not receive the lock signal for 10 seconds after turning on the exhaust fan motor.

531 D

- Defective exhaust fan motor or connector disconnection.
- Defective IOB
- Disconnected harness

		Cooling fan motor error
	D	The machine does not detect the fan motor lock signal for 10 seconds after turning on the cooling fan motor.
532	ט	Defective cooling fan motor or connector disconnection.
		Disconnected harness
		Defective IOB
		Paper exit cooling fan motor error
533	_	The machine does not detect the fan motor lock signal for 10 seconds after turning on the paper exit cooling fan motor.
333	D	Defective paper exit cooling fan motor or connector disconnection.
		Defective IOB
		Disconnected harness
		Fusing motor error
	D	The IOB does not receive the lock signal for 2 seconds after turning on the fusing motor.
540		Motor overload
		Defective fusing motor or connector disconnection.
		Defective IOB
		Disconnected harness
		Fusing thermistor open (center)
<i>5</i> 41		The thermistor (center) detects 0°C or less for 16 sec. in a row.
541	A	Fusing thermistor disconnected

• Fusing thermistor connector defective

Fusing temperature warm-up error(center) This SC is generated if the following condition occurs: • The thermistor (center) does not detect an 8°C increment in the fusing temperature for 1.5 sec. just after the fusing temperature reached 45°C. • The temperature of the center thermistor does not reach 60°C for 7 seconds after the fusing lamps turned on. • The temperature of the center thermistor does not reach the target temperature for 26 seconds after the fusing lamps turned on. • Thermistor warped or broken • Input voltage is unwarranted

Fusing overheat error 1 (software detection) A fusing temperature (at the center) of over 230°C (446°F) is detected for 1 second by the fusing thermistors at the center or at either end of the fusing roller. • Power supply unit defective • I/O board (IOB) defective • BCU defective • TRIAC short on PSU (PSU defective)

	A	Fusing overheat error 1 (hardware detection)
544		A fusing temperature (at the center) over 250°C is detected by the fusing temperature monitor circuit in the BCU board.
344		I/O board (IOB) defective
		BCU defective
		TRIAC short on bridge board (bridge board defective)

	Α	Fusing lamp consecutive full power 1
545		After warm-up the fusing lamp remains at full power for 10 seconds without the hot roller rotating.
343		Thermistors (center) warped
		Disconnected or defective thermistors (center)
		Defective fusing lamp

Zero cross error • The zero cross signal is detected three times even though the heater relay is off when turning on the main power. • The zero cross signal is not detected for 2 seconds even though the heater relay is on after turning on the main power or closing the front door. • The detection error occurs twice or more in the 11 zero cross signal detections. This error is defined when the detected zero cross signal is less than 45. • Defective fusing lamp relay • Defective fusing lamp relay circuit • Unstable power supply

Fusing thermistor open (end)

551

Α

The thermistor (end) detects 0°C or less for 16 sec.

Fusing thermistor (end) disconnected

Fusing thermistor (end) connector defective Fusing temperature warm-up error (end) This SC is generated if the following condition occurs: • The thermistor (end) does not detect an 8°C increment in the fusing temperature for 1.5 sec. just after the fusing temperature reached 45°C. • The temperature of the center thermistor does not reach 60°C for 7 seconds after the fusing lamps turned on. • The temperature of the end thermistor does not reach the target temperature for 26 seconds after the fusing lamps turned on. • Thermistor warped or broken • Input voltage is unwarranted

Fusing overheat error 2 (software detection)

Fusing unit jam The fusing sensor detected a fusing unit paper late jam three times. The paper was late and the fusing exit sensor could not detect the paper three times. Remove the paper that is stopped in the fusing unit. Check that the fusing unit is clean and has no obstacles in the paper feed path. If the error persists, replace the fusing unit.

Important

- SC559 does not operate until SP1159 has been set to "1" (ON). This sets the machine to count the number of occurrences of paper late jams in the fusing unit. The default setting is "0" (OFF).
- SC559 is issued after the third occurrence of a paper late jam in the fusing unit. Once this SC has been issued, the machine cannot be used until the service technician removes the cause of the jam and restores it to normal operation.
- The jam counter is reset after a sheet of paper successfully passes the fusing exit sensor after the cause of the jam has been removed.

SC Tables: SC6xx

Mechanical counter error: BK

This SC is only for NA models.

610	D	The machine detects the mechanical counter error when SP5987-001 is set to "1".
		Disconnected mechanical counter
		Defective mechanical counter
621	D	Communication timeout error between IOB and finisher or mailbox
		The IOB receives the break signal which is generated by the finisher or the mailbox only just after the main switch is turned on.
		The IOB receives the break signal which is generated by URAT.
		Defective main control board of the peripheral
		Defective BCU or IOB
		Disconnected peripheral

Paper feed unit communication error While the IOB communicates with a peripheral, an SC code is displayed if one of following conditions occurs. • The IOB receives the break signal which is generated by the peripheral only just after the main switch is turned on. • The IOB receives the break signal which is generated by URAT. • Defective main control board of the peripheral • Defective BCU or IOB • Disconnected peripheral

		2nd Paper Bank communication error
		This SC is not issued for this machine.
623	D	When a communication error signal between the 1st paper bank and 2nd paper bank is received.
		Loose connector

636	D	IC Card Error
		External authentication module error
-01		This SC is generated if the external authentication is enabled and following condition occurs:
-01	-	No external authentication module
		SD card error or external authentication module broken
		No DESS module
	-	Version error
-02		The version of the external authentication module is not correct.
		Incorrect module version

	-	OSM User Code File Error
-11		The correct "usercode" file could not be found in the root folder of the SD card because the file is not present, or the existing file is corrupted or the wrong type file.
-11		Make sure the "usercode" file is installed in the root folder of the SD card where the eccm.mod file is saved.
		Note: Check the eccm.mod file is in the root folder of the SD card.

637	D	Tracking Information Notice Error	
		Tracking Application Error	
		When the tracking information is lost, this SC is issued.	
-01	-	The machine failed to give notice the tracking information to the tracking SDK application.	
		Tracking information is lost, and the machine cannot count correctly.	
	-	Tracking Information Notice Error	
		When the tracking information is lost, this SC is issued.	
-02		The machine failed to give notice the tracking information to the management server.	
		Tracking information is lost, and the machine cannot count correctly.	

	D	BCU communication error
641		The BCU does not respond to the frame transmitted from the controller.
		Defective controller
		Detective BCU

450		Communication error of the remote service modem
650	В	(Embedded RCG-N)

		Communication line error
	-	The supplied voltage is not sufficient due to a defective communication line or defective connection.
-05		Incorrect SP settings
		Disconnected telephone line
		Disconnected modem board
		Consult with the user's local telephone company.
		Modem board error 2
-14		The modem board is installed even though the RCG-N is installed.
	-	Disconnect the Wireless LAN or Ethernet LAN board
		1. Uninstall the modem board, if it is installed.
		2. Check that the Wireless LAN or Ethernet LAN is working properly.
651		Incorrect dial up connection
	С	-01: Program parameter error
		-02: Program execution error
		An unexpected error occurs when the modem (Embedded RCG-M) tries to call the center with a dial up connection.
		Caused by a software bug
		ID2 mismatching
		ID2 for @Remote certification is mismatching between the controller board and NVRAM.
		Used controller board installed
652	D	Used NVRAM installed
		An unexpected error occurs when the modem (Embedded RCG-M) tries to call the center with a dial up connection.
		Install the correct controller board or new controller board.
		2. Install the correct NVRAM or new NVRAM.

e 1

	D	ID2 error
		ID2 stored in the NVRAM is incorrect.
653		Used NVRAM installed
		An unexpected error occurs when the modem (Embedded RCG-M) tries to call the center with a dial up connection.
		Clear the ID2 in the NVRAM, and then input a correct ID2.

669

D

EEPROM error

		[1]	Open communication error: ID error
		[2]	Open communication error: Channel error
		[3]	Open communication error: Device error
		[4]	Open communication error: Communication failed error
		[5]	Open communication error: Communication time error
		[6]	Open communication error: Communication suspended error
		[7]	Open communication error: Buffer full error
		[8]	Close communication error: No error code
		[9]	Close communication error: ID error
		[10]	Close communication error: No error code
		[11]	Data write error: ID error
-	-	[12]	Data write error: Channel error
		[13]	Data write error: Device error
		[14]	Data write error: Communication suspended error
		[15]	Data write error: Communication time over error
		[16]	Data write error: Communication suspended error
		[1 <i>7</i>]	Data write error: Buffer full error
		[18]	Data write error: No error code
		[19]	Data read error: ID error
		[20]	Data read error: Channel error
		[21]	Data read error: Device error
		[22]	Data read error: Communication failed error
		[23]	Data read error: Communication time over error

		[24]	Data read error: Communication suspended error
		[25]	Data read error: Buffer full error
		[26]	Data read error: No error code
		[27]	Device detection error: ID error
		[28]	Device detection error: Channel error
		[29]	Device detection error: Device error
_	_	[30]	Device detection error: Communication failed error
		[31]	Device detection error: Communication time over error
		[32]	Device detection error: Communication suspended error
		[33]	Device detection error: Buffer full error
		[34]	Device detection error: No error code
		1 '	f EEPROM communication fails three times after the machine has detected the M error.
		• C	aused by noise
		•	

670	D	Engine startup error
		The BCU fails to respond with the prescribed time when the machine is turned on.
		Connections between BCU and controller board are loose, disconnected, or damaged
		1. Replace the BCU
		2. Replace the controller board

SC672 RTB 17

		Transmission error in controller board
674	D	Video transmission error is detected in the controller board.
		Defective Controller Board

SC Tables: SC7xx

720	В	3000-Sheet Finisher Error
		Finisher exit guide plate motor error
		The exit guide plate HP sensor does not detect the home position of the exit guide plate within the specified number of pulses after the exit guide plate has moved to its home position.
		The exit guide plate HP sensor does not turn off within the specified number of pulses after the exit guide plate has moved from its home position.
-24		The 1st detection failure issues a jam error, and the 2nd failure issues this SC code.
		Exit guide plate motor disconnected, defective
		Exit guide plate motor harness is loose or broken
		Exit guide plate HP sensor disconnected, defective
		Exit guide plate HP sensor harness is loose or broken
		Exit guide plate motor overloaded due to obstruction

ദ

Finisher punch motor error • The punch HP sensor does not detect the home position of the punch unit within the specified number of pulses after the punch unit has moved to its home position. • The punch HP sensor does not turn off within the specified number of pulses after the punch unit has moved from its home position. The 1st detection failure causes a jam error, and the 2nd failure causes this SC code. -25 Punch motor disconnected or defective Punch motor harness is loose or broken. • Punch HP sensor disconnected, defective Punch HP sensor harness is loose or broken Punch motor overload due to obstruction Finisher jogger motor error • The jogger HP sensor does not detect the home position of the jogger fences within the specified number of pulses after the jogger fences have moved to its home position. • The jogger HP sensor does not turn off within the specified number of pulses after the jogger fences have moved from its home position. The 1st failure issues an original jam message, and the 2nd failure issues this SC code. -30 · Jogger motor disconnected, defective • Jogger motor harness is loose or broken · Jogger HP sensor disconnected, defective • Jogger HP sensor harness is loose or broken • Jogger motor overloaded due to obstruction Defective main board

Finisher corner stapler rotation motor error • The corner stapler HP sensor does not detect the home position of the corner stapler within the specified number of pulses after the corner stapler has moved to its home position. • The corner stapler HP sensor does not turn off within the specified number of pulses after the corner stapler has moved from its home position. -43 The 1st detection failure causes a jam error, and the 2nd failure causes this SC code. • Corner stapler rotation motor disconnected, defective • Corner stapler rotation motor harness is loose or broken · Corner stapler rotation HP sensor disconnected, defective • Corner stapler rotation HP sensor harness is loose or broken • Corner stapler rotation motor overloaded due to obstruction Finisher corner stapler motor error The 1st detection failure causes a jam error, and the 2nd failure causes this SC code. • The stapler motor does not switch off within the prescribed time after operating. • Staple jam -44 Corner stapler motor disconnected, defective Corner stapler motor harness is loose or broken Corner stapler HP sensor disconnected, defective Corner stapler HP sensor harness is loose or broken • Corner stapler motor overloaded

		Clamp roller retraction motor error
		 The clamp roller HP sensor does not detect the home position of the clamp roller cam within the specified number of pulses after the clamp roller cam has moved to its home position.
		 The clamp roller HP sensor does not turn off within the specified number of pulses after the clamp roller cam has moved from its home position.
-55	-	The 1st detection failure causes a jam error, and the 2nd failure causes this SC code.
		Clamp roller retraction motor disconnected, defective
		Clamp roller retraction motor harness is loose or broken
		Clamp roller HP sensor disconnected, defective
		Clamp roller HP sensor harness is loose or broken
		Clamp roller retraction motor overloaded due to obstruction
		Stack junction gate motor error
	-	The stack junction gate HP sensor does not detect the home position of the stack junction gate within the specified number of pulses after the stack junction gate has moved to its home position.
		 The stack junction gate HP sensor does not turn off within the specified number of pulses after the stack junction gate has moved from its home position.
-57		The 1st detection failure causes a jam error, and the 2nd failure causes this SC code.
		Stack junction gate motor disconnected, defective
		Stack junction gate motor harness is loose or broken
		Stack junction gate HP sensor disconnected, defective
		Stack junction gate HP sensor harness is loose or broken
		Stack junction gate motor overloaded due to obstruction
	-	Booklet stapler motor error 1
		The 1st detection failure causes a jam error, and the 2nd failure causes this SC code.
40		The front stapler unit saddle-stitch motor does not start operation within the specified time.
-60		Staple jam
		Front stapler motor disconnected, defective
		Front stapler motor harness is loose or broken
		Front stapler motor overloaded

		Booklet staple motor error 2
		The 1st detection failure causes a jam error, and the 2nd failure causes this SC code.
4.1		The rear stapler unit saddle-stitch motor does not start operation within the specified time.
-61	-	Staple jam
		Rear stapler motor disconnected, defective
		Rear stapler motor harness is loose or broken
		Rear stapler motor overloaded
		Tray lift motor error
		The upper tray paper height sensor does not change its status with the specified time after the tray raises or lowers.
	-	The 1st detection failure causes a jam error, and the 2nd failure causes this SC code.
-70		Tray lift motor disconnected, defective
		Tray lift motor harness is loose or broken
		Upper tray paper height sensor disconnected, defective
		Upper tray paper height sensor is loose or broken
		Tray lift motor overloaded due to obstruction
		Finisher Tray 1 shift motor error
		The shift roller HP sensor does not detect the home position of the upper tray within the specified number of pulses after the upper tray has moved to its home position.
		 The shift roller HP sensor does not turn off within the specified number of pulses after the upper tray has moved from its home position.
-71	_	The 1st detection failure issues a jam error, and the 2nd failure issues this SC code.
		Shift tray motor disconnected, defective
		Shift tray motor harness is loose or broken
		Shift tray HP sensor disconnected, defective
		Shift tray HP sensor is loose or broken
		Shift tray motor overloaded due to obstruction

		Shift jogger motor 1 error
-72	-	The side fence does not retract within the specified number of pulses after the shift jogger motor 1 switches on. The 1st detection failure issues a jam error, and the 2nd failure issues this SC code.
		 Shift jogger motor 1 disconnected, defective Shift jogger motor 1 harness is loose or broken Shift jogger 1 HP sensor disconnected, defective Shift jogger 1 HP sensor harness is loose or broken Shift jogger motor 1 overloaded due to obstruction
iogger motor 2 switches on. The 1st detection failure issues a jam error, and the Shift jogger motor 2 disconnected, defective Shift jogger motor 2 harness is loose or broke Shift jogger 2 HP sensor disconnected, defective Shift jogger 2 HP sensor harness is loose or broke		The side fence does not retract within the specified number of pulses after the shift
Shift jogger retraction motor error The side fences do not retract within the specified number of pulses after the remotor switches on.		The side fences do not retract within the specified number of pulses after the retraction motor switches on. The 1st detection failure issues a jam error, and the 2nd failure issues this SC code. Shift jogger retraction motor disconnected, defective Shift jogger retraction motor harness is loose or broken Shift jogger retraction HP sensor disconnected, defective Shift jogger retraction HP sensor harness is loose or broken

		Return roller motor error
		This occurs during the operation of the lower tray pressure motor.
		Motor disconnected, defective
-75	-	Motor harness disconnected, defective
		Home position sensor disconnected, defective
		Home position sensor harness disconnected, defective
		Motor overloaded due to obstruction
		Punch movement motor error
		The punch movement HP sensor does not detect the home position of the punch unit within the specified number of pulses after the punch unit has moved to its home position.
-80	-	 The punch movement HP sensor does not turn off within the specified number of pulses after the punch unit has moved from its home position.
		The 1st detection failure causes a jam error, and the 2nd failure causes this SC code.
		Punch movement motor disconnected, defective
		Punch movement motor harness is loose or broken
		Punch movement motor overloaded due to obstruction
		Paper position sensor slide motor error
		The paper position sensor moves but is not detected at the home position within the specified number of pulses.
-81	-	The 1st detection failure causes a jam error, and the 2nd failure causes this SC code.
		Paper position sensor slide motor harness disconnected, defective
		Paper position sensor slide motor harness is loose or broken
		Paper position sensor slide motor overloaded due to obstruction

		Upper transport motor error
		The upper transport motor in the finisher is not operating.
-10	-	The motor harness is loose or broken
		Upper transport motor disconnected, defective
		 Upper transport motor overloaded due to obstruction (jammed paper, paper scraps, etc.)
		Lower transport motor error
		The lower transport motor in the finisher is not operating.
-14	-	The motor harness is loose or broken
		Lower transport motor disconnected, defective
		Lower transport motor drive overloaded due to obstruction (jammed paper, paper scraps, etc.)
		Exit motor error
		The exit motor in the finisher is not operating.
-17	-	The motor harness is loose or broken
		Exit motor disconnected, defective
		 Exit motor drive overloaded due to obstruction (jammed paper, paper scraps, etc.)
		Finisher exit guide plate motor error
		The exit guide plate HP sensor does not detect the home position of the exit guide plate within the prescribed time after the exit guide plate has moved to its home position.
		The exit guide plate HP sensor does not turn off within the prescribed time after the exit guide plate has moved from its home position.
-24	_	The 1st detection failure issues a jam error, and the 2nd failure issues this SC code.
		Exit guide plate motor harness loose, broken
		Exit guide plate HP sensor harness loose, broken
		Exit guide plate motor disconnected, defective
		Exit guide plate HP sensor disconnected, defective
		Finisher exit guide plate motor drive overloaded due to obstruction (jammed paper, paper scraps, etc.)

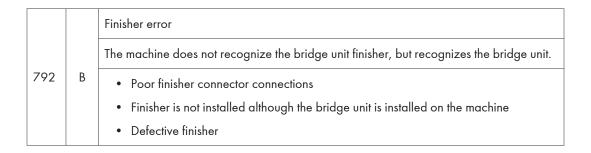
Jogger fence motor error • The jogger HP sensor does not detect the home position of the jogger fences within the prescribed time after the jogger fences have moved to its home position. • The jogger HP sensor does not turn off within the prescribed time after the jogger fences have moved from its home position. The 1st failure issues an original jam message, and the 2nd failure issues this SC code. -30 • The motor harness is loose or broken • Jogger fence HP sensor harness loose, broken · Jogger fence motor disconnected, defective · Jogger fence HP sensor disconnected, defective Jogger motor drive overloaded due to obstruction (jammed paper, paper scraps, etc.) Feed-out belt motor error The feed-out HP sensor does not detect the home position of the feed-out belt within the prescribed time after the feed-out belt has moved to its home position. • The feed-out HP sensor does not turn off within the prescribed time after the feedout belt has moved from its home position. The 1st detection failure causes a jam error, and the 2nd failure causes this SC code. -41 Feed-out belt motor harness loose or broken • Feed-out belt HP sensor harness loose or broken · Feed-out belt motor disconnected, defective • Feed-out belt HP sensor disconnected, defective Feed-out belt motor drive overloaded due to obstruction (jammed paper, paper scraps, etc.)

Stapler movement motor • The stapler HP sensor does not detect the home position of the stapler within the prescribed time after the stapler has moved to its home position. • The stapler HP sensor does not turn off within the prescribed time after the stapler has moved from its home position. The 1st detection failure issues a jam error, and the 2nd failure causes this SC code. -42 Stapler movement motor harness loose or broken • Stapler HP sensor harness loose, broken Stapler movement motor disconnected, defective • Stapler HP sensor disconnected, defective Stapler or motor drive overloaded due to obstruction (jammed paper, paper scraps, etc.) Corner stapler motor error The corner stapler motor does not switch off within the prescribed time after operating. • The corner stapler HP sensor does not detect the home position of the corner stapler within the prescribed time after the corner stapler has moved to its home position. • The corner stapler HP sensor does not turn off within the prescribed time after the corner stapler has moved from its home position. -44 The 1st detection failure issues a jam error, and the 2nd failure causes this SC code. Staple jam Corner stapler motor disconnected, defective • Corner stapler motor harness is loose or broken • Corner stapler HP sensor disconnected, defective Number of sheets in stack exceeds allowed number of sheets for stapling Stapler motor obstructed

Tray lift motor error The upper tray paper height sensor does not change its status with the specified time after the tray raises or lowers. The 1st detection failure causes a jam error, and the 2nd failure causes this SC code. -70 • Tray lift motor disconnected, defective • Tray lift motor harness is loose or broken Stack height sensor disconnected, defective Tray lift motor overloaded due to obstruction (jammed paper, paper scraps, etc.) Shift tray motor error • The shift roller HP sensor does not detect the home position of the upper tray within the specified number of pulses after the upper tray has moved to its home position. • The shift roller HP sensor does not turn off within the specified number of pulses after the upper tray has moved from its home position. -71 The 1st detection failure issues a jam error, and the 2nd failure issues this SC code. • Shift tray motor disconnected, defective • Shift tray motor harness is loose or broken Shift tray HP sensor disconnected, defective Shift tray motor overloaded due to obstruction (jammed paper, paper scraps, etc.) Shift motor error

Shift motor error The shift motor HP sensor does not detect any change for 1.86 seconds after the shift motor has turned on at power on or during its operation. • Defective shift motor • Defective shift motor HP sensor

	791	D	Bridge unit error
			The machine recognizes the finisher, but does not recognize the bridge unit.
			Bridge unit is not installed
			Bridge unit is installed incorrectly
			Defective bridge unit



SC Tables: SC8xx

		Energy save I/O sub-system error	
816	D	Energy saver sub-system detects an error.	
		Defective controller board	
-01	-	Sub-system error	
-03	-	STR denied error	
-04	-	Kernel communication driver error	
-05	-	STR preprocessing error	
-13	-	open () error	
-14	-	Memory address designation error	
-15			
to	-	open () error	
-18			
-19	-	double open () error	
-20	-	open () error	
-22	-	Parameter error	
-23			
to	-	read () error	
-24			
-25	-	write () error	

-26		
to	_	write () communication retry error
-28		
-29		
to	-	read () communication retry error
-30		
-36		
to	-	Sub-system error
-94		

	817	С	Monitor Error
			This is a file detection and electronic file signature check error when the boot loader attempts to read the self-diagnostic module, system kernel, or root system files from the OS Flash ROM, or the items on the SD card in the controller slot are false or corrupted.
			OS Flash ROM data defective; change the controller firmware
		SD card data defective; use another SD card	

818	С	Watchdog timer error
		The watchdog timer detect the error even if system processing normally.
		System program defective
		Controller board defective
		Optional board defective

	С	Fatal kernel error	
		Due to a control error, a RAM ove following messages was displayed	orflow occurred during system processing. One of the don the operation panel.
		0x6261	6261 6420 6469 7200 00 -> "bad dir"
		0x696e	0x69742064 -> "init died"
		0x766d	0x5f706167 -> "vm_pageout: VM is full"
819		554C	UL (USB error)
			Error in the OS
			"init died", "vm_pageout: VM is full", "Cache Error"
		System program defective	
		Controller board defective	
		Optional board defective	
		Replace controller firmware	



• For more details about this SC code error, execute SP5990 to print an SMC report so you can read the error code. The error code is not displayed on the operation panel.

920		Self-diagnostics error: CPU
020	C	[XXXX]: Detailed error code

CPU error During the self-diagnostic, the controller CPU detects an error. There are 47 types of error code (0001 to 4005) depending on the cause of the error. The CPU detects an error and displays the specific error code with the program address where the error occurs. • System firmware problem • Defective controller [0001] to [06FF] 1. Turn the main switch off and on. [0801] to 2. Reinstall the controller system firmware. [4005] 3. Replace the controller. When the problem cannot be fixed with the above procedure, the following information displayed on the screen needs to be fed back to a technical support center. SC code Detailed error code • Program address CPU/Memory Error • System firmware problem Defective RAM-DIMM [0701] to Defective controller [070A] 1. Reinstall the controller system software. 2. Replace the RAM-DIMM. 3. Replace the controller.

82	С	Self-diagnostics error: ASIC [XXXX]: Detailed error code
		ASIC error
[OBC	001	The write-&-verify check error has occurred in the ASIC.
[050	~1	Defective ASIC device
		Replace the controller board.

	Self-diagnosis error: ASIC
	The CPU checks if the ASIC timer works correctly compared with the CPU timer. If the ASIC timer does not function in the specified range, this SC code is displayed.
[OD05]	System firmware problem
	Defective RAM-DIMM
	Defective controller
	Replace the controller board.
	Video bridge device (ASIC) error 1
[50A1]	The CPU does not detect the video bridge device.
	Defective I/F between the video bridge device and controller
	Video bridge device (ASIC) register error 1
[50A2]	The CPU detects the video bridge device, but detects error data from the video bridge device.
	Defective I/F between the video bridge device and controller



• For more details about this SC code error, execute SP5990 to print an SMC report so you can read the error code. The error code is not displayed on the operation panel.

822	В	Self-diagnostic error: HDD [XXXX]: Detailed error code
[3003]		 Check performed only when HDD is installed: HDD device busy for over 31 s. After a diagnostic command is set for the HDD, but the device remains busy for over 6 s.
		HDD defective HDD harness disconnected, defective
[3004]		No response to the self-diagnostic command from the ASIC to the HDDs.
		HDD defective

823	В	Self-diagnostic error: NIB [XXXX]: Detailed error code
[6101]		MAC address check sum error The result of the MAC address check sum does not match the check sum stored in ROM.
[6104]		PHY IC error The PHY IC on the controller cannot be correctly recognized.
[6105]		PHY IC loop-back error An error occurred during the loop-back test for the PHY IC on the controller.

		Self-diagnostic error : NVRAM
		NVRAM device does not exist, NVRAM device is damaged, or NVRAM socket damaged.
824	С	NVRAM defective
		Controller board defective
		NVRAM backup battery exhausted
		NVRAM socket damaged

826	С	Self-diagnostic Error: RTC/optional NVRAM
[1501]		The one second counted by the RTC is different from the one second counted by the CPU on the controller.
		Defective RTC device
		The RTC device is not detected.
[15FF]		Defective RTC device NVRAM without RTC installed
		Discharged backup battery

827	С	Self-diagnostic error: Standard SDRAM DIMM
		[XXXX]: Detailed error code

	Verification error
	Error detected during a write/verify check for the standard RAM (SDRAM DIMM).
[0201]	 Loose connection Defective SDRAM DIMM Defective controller
	Resident memory error
	The SPD values in all RAM DIMM are incorrect or unreadable.
[0202]	Defective RAM DIMM
	Defective SPD ROM on RAM DIMM
	Defective 12C bus
	Replace the RAM DIMM.

828	С	Self-diagnostic error: ROM [XXXX]: Detailed error code
[0101]		The boot monitor and OS program stored in the ROM DIMM is checked. If the check sum of the program is incorrect, this SC code is displayed.
		1. Replace the controller board.

829	В	Self-diagnostic error: Optional RAM [XXXX]: Detailed error code
		Verification error
		Error detected during a write/verify check for the optional RAM (SDRAM DIMM).
[0301]	 Loose connection Defective SDRAM DIMM Defective controller
		Turn the main switch off and on. Replace the SDRAM DIMM. Replace the controller.

[0302]	Memory structure data error
	The memory structure data error for the optional RAM (SDRAM DIMM) is detected when the self-diagnostic is executed.
	Defective RAM DIMM
	Defective SPD ROM on RAM DIMM
	Defective 12C bus
	Replace the RAM DIMM.

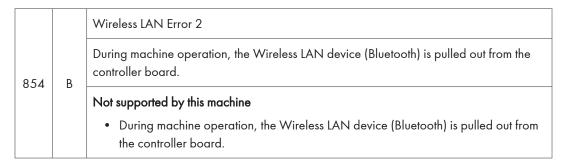
833	С	Self-diagnostic error 8: Engine I/F ASIC
[OF30]		ASIC (Mandolin) for system control could not be detected. After the PCI configuration, the device ID for the ASIC could not be checked.
[0F31]		Replace the bridge board.
[OF41]		ASIC (Mandolin) for system control could not be detected. After the PCI configuration, the device ID for the ASIC could not be checked.
		Replace the bridge board.
		Could not initialize or read the bus connection.
[50B1]		Check for loose connections at the mother board.
		Replace the bridge board.
		Value of the SSCG register is incorrect.
[50B2]		Check for loose connections at the mother board.
		Replace the bridge board.

835	В	Self-diagnostic error: Centronic device
[1102]		Loopback connector is connected but check results in an error.
		IEEE1284 connector error
		Centronic loopback connector defective
		Replace the controller board.

	Loopback connector is connected but check results in an error.
	ASIC device error
[110C]	IEEE1284 connector error
	Centronic loopback connector defective
	Replace the controller board.
	Centronic loopback connector is not connected for detailed self-diagnostic test.
	Centronic loopback connector not connected correctly
[1120]	Centronic loopback connector defective
	ASIC device defective
	Replace the controller board.

838	С	Self-diagnostic Error: Clock Generator
[2701]		A verify error occurred when setting data was read from the clock generator via the I2C bus.
		Defective clock generator
		Defective I2C bus
		Defective I2C port on the CPU
		Replace the controller board.

839	С	USB NAND Flash ROM error
[0001]		USB NAND Flash ROM cannot be read.
[9001]		Defective controller board
[9101]		The ID of the USB NAND Flash ROM cannot be read.
		Defective controller board
[0110]		The USB NAND Flash ROM controller is disconnected.
[9110]		Defective controller board



	В	Wireless LAN error	
855		B	An error is detected on the wireless LAN card (802.11a/g, g).
		Wireless LAN card defective	
		Wireless LAN card connection incorrect	

		USB I/F Error
857	В	The USB driver is not stable and caused an error.
007		Bad USB card connection
		Replace the controller board

	A	HDD Encryption unit error 1
858		A serious error occurs when data is encrypted to update an encryption key with the HDD encryption unit.
-00	_	Encryption key acquisition error: The controller fails to get a new encryption key.
		Defective controller board Replace the controller board.
-01	_	Encryption key setting for HDD error: The controller fails to copy a new encryption key to the HDD.
-01	-	Defective SATA chip on the controller board Replace the controller board.

-02	-	NVRAM data encryption error 1: An error occurs while the NVRAM data is encrypted.
		Defective NVRAM on the controller board Replace the NVRAM.
-30	-	NVRAM data encryption error 2: An error occurs before the NVRAM data is encrypted.
-30		Defective controller board Replace the controller board.
-31	-	Other error: A serious error occurs while the data is encrypted.
		Same as SC991

B A serious error occurs when the HDD data is encrypted to update an encryption key with the HDD encryption unit. HDD check error: The HDD is not correctly installed. • No HDD installed • Unformatted HDD • The encryption key on the controller is different from the one on the HDD 1. Install the HDD correctly. 2. Initialize the HDD. Power failure during the data encryption: The data encryption (NVRAM and HDD) has not been completed. • Power failure during the data encryption Initialize the HDD. Data read/write error: The DMAC error is detected twice or more.			HDD Encryption unit error 2
The HDD is not correctly installed. No HDD installed Unformatted HDD The encryption key on the controller is different from the one on the HDD Install the HDD correctly. Initialize the HDD. Power failure during the data encryption: The data encryption (NVRAM and HDD) has not been completed. Power failure during the data encryption Initialize the HDD. Data read/write error:	859	В	
-01 - Unformatted HDD • The encryption key on the controller is different from the one on the HDD 1. Install the HDD correctly. 2. Initialize the HDD. Power failure during the data encryption: The data encryption (NVRAM and HDD) has not been completed. • Power failure during the data encryption Initialize the HDD. Data read/write error:			
The data encryption (NVRAM and HDD) has not been completed. • Power failure during the data encryption Initialize the HDD. Data read/write error:	-01	-	 Unformatted HDD The encryption key on the controller is different from the one on the HDD Install the HDD correctly.
Data read/write error:	-02	-	The data encryption (NVRAM and HDD) has not been completed. • Power failure during the data encryption
Same as SC863	-10	-	Data read/write error: The DMAC error is detected twice or more.

	В	HDD startup error at main power on
		HDD is connected but a driver error is detected.
		The driver does not respond with the HDD within 30 s.
860		HDD is not initialized
		Label data is corrupted
		Defective HDD
		Initialize the HDD with SP5832-001.

0.41	D	HDD re-try failure
		At power on, the HDD is detected. Power supply to the HDD is interrupted after the system has entered the energy save mode, but after the HDD has been awakened from the energy save mode, it does not return to the ready status within 30 sec.
861		 Harness between HDD and controller board disconnected, defective HDD power connector disconnected HDD defective Controller board defective

	D	Bad sector number error
		The number of bad sectors in the HDD (image data area) goes over 101.
862		Defective HDD
		Format the HDD with SP5832-001.
		Replace the HDD.

863	D	HDD data read failure
-----	---	-----------------------

during o	written to the HDD cannot be read normally, due to bad sectors generated peration. 101] to [023] indicate the type of partition where the error occurred.
[001]	An area which does not belong to a partition
[002]	a partition
[003]	b partition
[004]	c partition
[005]	d partition
[006]	e partition
[007]	f partition
[800]	g partition
 [009]	h partition
[010]	I partition
[011]	j partition
[012]	k partition
[013]	I partition
[014]	m partition
[015]	n partition
[016]	o partition
[017]	p partition
[018]	q partition
[019]	r partition

	-	[020]	s partition
		[021]	q partition
		[022]	t partition
-		[023]	u partition
		Note: If the is written	D defective the bad sectors are generated at the image partition, the bad sector information to NVRAM, and the next time the HDD is accessed, these bad sectors will not sed for read/write operation.

		_	IDD operation, the HDD cannot respond to a CRC error query. Data transfer execute normally while data is being written to the HDD.
		Note: [0	01] to [023] indicate the type of partition where the error occurred.
		[001]	An area which does not belong to a partition
		[002]	a partition
		[003]	b partition
		[004]	c partition
		[005]	d partition
		[006]	e partition
		[007]	f partition
		[800]	g partition
-	-	[009]	h partition
		[010]	I partition
		[011]	į partition
		[012]	k partition
		[013]	I partition
		[014]	m partition
		[015]	n partition
		[016]	o partition
		[017]	p partition
		[018]	q partition
		[019]	r partition

•		
	п	

		[020]	s partition						
		[021]	q partition						
-	-	[022]	t partition						
		[023]	u partition						
									• HD[

865	D	HDD access error
-----	---	------------------

		HDD res	ponded to an error during operation for a condition other than those for 864.
		Note: [0	01] to [023] indicate the type of partition where the error occurred.
		[001]	An area which does not belong to a partition
		[002]	a partition
		[003]	b partition
		[004]	c partition
		[005]	d partition
		[006]	e partition
		[007]	f partition
		[008]	g partition
-	-	[009]	h partition
		[010]	I partition
		[011]	j partition
		[012]	k partition
		[013]	I partition
		[014]	m partition
		[015]	n partition
		[016]	o partition
		[017]	p partition
		[018]	q partition
		[019]	r partition



SD card error 1: Confirmation The machine detects an electronic license error in the application on the SD card in the controller slot immediately after the machine is turned on. The program on the SD card contains electronic confirmation license data. If the program does not contain this license data, or if the result of the check shows that the license data in the program on the SD card is incorrect, then the checked program cannot execute and this SC code is displayed. Program missing from the SD card Download the correct program for the machine to the SD card

	SD card error 2: SD card removed	
867	D	The SD card in the slot is removed while the machine is on.
		Insert the SD card, then turn the machine off and on.

868	D	SD card error 3: SC card access		
		An error occurs while an SD card is used.		
		SD card not inserted correctly		
001,0	001, 002	SD card defective		
		Controller board defective		
		Note: If you want to try to reformat the SC card, use SD Formatter Ver 1.1.		

870

Address book data error

The address book data cannot be read from the HDD, SD card or flash ROM on the controller where it is stored, or the data read from the media is defective.

• Software defective:

Turn the machine off/on. If this is not the solution for the problem, then replace the controller firmware.

- Data corruption
- HDD defective.

More Details

В

 Do SP5846-046 (Initialize All Setting & Addr Book) to reset all address book data.

- 2. Reset the user information with SP5832-001 (HDD HDD Formatting (All)).
- 3. Replace the HDD.
- 4. If there is the address book data backed up with SD card, restore the address book data. Configure the same address book encryption key as the one configured when backing up.

HDD mail receive data error

872 B

• The machine detects that the HDD is not operating correctly at power on.

• The machine detects that the HDD is not operating correctly (can neither read nor write) while processing incoming email.

- HDD defective
- The machine is turned off while the HDD is being accessed.

Do SP5832-001 to format the all data on the HDD.

HDD mail send data error

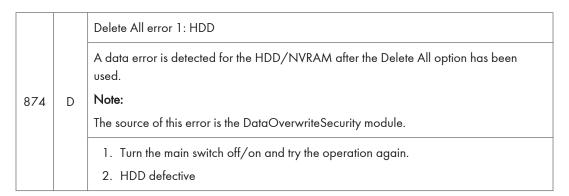
873

В

An error is detected on the HDD immediately after the machine has been turned on, or power has been turned off while the machine has used the HDD.

1. Do SP5832-001 (HDD – HDD Formatting (All)) to initialize the HDD.

Replace the HDD

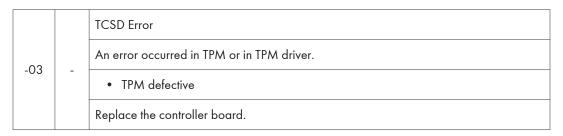


875	D	Delete All	error 2: Data area
		An error o	occurs while the machine deletes data from the HDD.
		-001	An error occurs in hddchack-i.
		-002	Failed to delete data from the HDD.
		Turn the m	ain switch off/on and try the operation again

876	D	Log Data Error
		An error is detected in the handling of the log data at power on or during machine operation. This can be caused by switching the machine off while it is operating.
	-	Log Data Error 1
-01		Damaged log data file in the HDD
		Initialize the HDD with SP5832-001.
	-	Log Data Error 2
-02		An encryption module not installed
		 Disable the log encryption setting with SP9730-004 ("0" is off.) Install the DESS module.
	-	Log Data Error 3
-03		Invalid log encryption key due to defective NVRAM data
		1. Initialize the HDD with SP5832-001.
		2. Disable the log encryption setting with SP9730-004 ("0" is off.)

-04	-	Log Data Error 4		
		Unusual HDD encryption function due to defective NVRAM data		
		Initialize the HDD with SP5832-001.		
	-	Log Data Error 5		
-05		Installed a NVRAM or HDD which was used in another machine		
-03		1. Reinstall the previous NVRAM or HDD.		
		2. Initialize the HDD with SP5832-001.		
	-	Log Data Error 99		
-99		Other than the above causes		
		Ask your supervisor.		

878	D	USB Flash Error
	-	TPM system authentication error
		The system firmware is not authenticated by TPM (security chip).
-00		Incorrect updating for the system firmware
		Defective flash ROM on the controller board
		Replace the controller board.
	-	USB Flash Error
		File system in the USB flash device is defective.
-01		Cannot mount partition 3 in the USB flash device.
		Encryption key does not exist.
		Cannot find the file for KMMD to be operated.
		Replace the controller board.
	-	TPM Error
-02		An error occurred in TPM or in TPM driver.
-02		TPM defective
		Replace the controller board.



881	D	Authentication area error
-01	-	Authentication application error is detected.
		Error data in an authentication application reaches the management limit.

899	D	Software performance error
		If the processing program shows abnormal performance and the program is abnormally ended, this SC is issued.
		Controller board defective
		Software defective

SC Tables: SC9xx

900	D	Electrical total counter error
		The total counter contains something that is not a number.
		NVRAM incorrect type
		NVRAM defective
		NVRAM data scrambled
		Unexpected error from external source
		 Counter was not finished counting which SRM demand during the SRM is receiving the PRT.

920	В	Printer error	
-----	---	---------------	--

-00		No response at PM start up
-01		Timeout error during the PM operation
-02	_	Working memory error
-03		Cannot start-up the filtering process
-04		Abnormal exit from the filtering process
		An internal application error was detected and operation cannot continue.
-	-	Software defective; turn the machine off/on, or change the controller firmware
		Insufficient memory

921	В	Printer font error
-00	-	Resident font is not found
-01	-	Option font is not found
	-	A necessary font is not found in the SD card.
-		A necessary font is not found in the SD card.
		The SD card data is corrupted.

925	В	Net File function error
-00	-	HDD is defective
-01	-	NetFile management file is broken
-	-	The NetFile file management on the HDD cannot be used, or a NetFile management file is corrupted and operation cannot continue. The HDDs are defective and they cannot be debugged or partitioned, so the Scan Router functions (delivery of received faxes, document capture, etc.), Web services, and other network functions cannot be used. HDD status codes are displayed below the SC code.
		Refer to the four procedures below (Recovery from SC 925).

Here is a list of HDD status codes:

Display	Meaning
(-1)	HDD not connected
(-2)	HDD not ready
(-3)	No label
(-4)	Partition type incorrect
(-5)	Error returned during label read or check
(-6)	Error returned during label write or check
(-7)	"filesystem" repair failed
(-8)	"filesystem" mount failed
(-9)	Drive does not answer command
(-10)	Internal kernel error
(-11)	Size of drive is too small
(-12)	Specified partition does not exist
(-13)	Device file does not exist

Recovery from SC 925

Procedure 1

If the machine shows SC codes for HDD errors (SC860 to SC865) with SC 925, do the recovery procedures for SC860 to SC865.

Procedure 2

If "Procedure 1" is not the solution for the problem, do SP5832-001 (HDD – HDD Formatting (All)), then turn the machine power off and on.

SP5832-001 erases all document and address book data on the hard disks. Ask the customer before you do this SP code.

Procedure 3

If "Procedure 2" is not the solution for the problem, replace the HDD.

Software error 1 990 D The software performs an unexpected function and the program cannot a		Software error 1
		The software performs an unexpected function and the program cannot continue.
		Software defective, re-boot

		Software error 2
The software performs an unexpected function. However, processing allows the program to continue.		The software performs an unexpected function. However, unlike SC990, recovery processing allows the program to continue.
		Software defective, re-boot

In order to	o get mo	ore details about SC990 and SC991:
Execute S errors.	iP7403	or print an SMC Report (SP5990) to read the history of the 10 most recent logged
		Undefined error
992	D	Defective software program
		An error undetectable by any other SC code occurred
		Application Item Error
994	С	The number of executed application items on the operation panel reach the maximum limit for the operation panel structure.
		Too much executed application items
	1	
		Software Error 3: Cannot select application function
997	В	An application does not start after the user pushed the correct key on the operation panel.
		Software bug
		A RAM or DIMM option necessary for the application is not installed or not installed correctly.
		Software Error 4: Application cannot start
		Pagistar processing does not operate for an application within 60 s after the

	D	Software Error 4: Application cannot start				
998		Register processing does not operate for an application within 60 s after the machine power is turned on. No applications start correctly, and all end abnormally.				
		 Software bug A RAM or DIMM option necessary for the application is not installed or not installed correctly. 				

Electrical Component Defects

Sensors

Component (Symbol)	CN	Condition	Symptom	
By-pass Paper Length	236-2	Open	Paper size error	
Sensor	(IOB)	Shorted		
Duplex Entrance	217-A8 (IOB)	Open	Jam Z	
Doplex Ellitance	217-A0 (10b)	Shorted	Jam Z	
Duplex Cover	217-A11	Open	"Open Cover" is displayed.	
Duplex Cover	(IOB)	Shorted	"Open cover" cannot be detected.	
Dunlau Evit	217-A14	Open	Jam Z	
Duplex Exit	(IOB)	Shorted	am Z (Jam 1)	
		Open	The Paper End indicator lights even if paper is placed on the by-pass tray.	
By-pass Paper End	217-B3 (IOB)	Shorted	The Paper End indicator does not light even if there is no paper on the by-pass tray.	
	217-B9,	Open		
By-pass Paper Size	B10,B12,B13 (IOB)	Shorted	Paper size error	
Toner Overflow	217-B15	Open	CPU cannot detect the toner overflow even the waste toner in the transfer belt unit is full.	
Toner Overflow	(IOB)	Shorted	CPU detects the toner overflow even the waste toner in the transfer belt unit is not full.	

Component (Symbol)	CN	Condition	Symptom
Paper Feed 1	216-A4 (IOB)	Open/Shorted	No symptom, but this may cause Jam A, and some pieces of paper are remaining at the paper feed unit when tray 1 is opened.
Relay 1	216-A7 (IOB)	Open	Jam A
Keldy I	210-A7 (IOB)	Shorted	Jam A, B
	214 410	Open	The Paper End indicator lights even if paper is placed in the paper tray 1.
Paper End 1	216-A10 (IOB)	Shorted	The Paper End indicator does not light even if there is no paper in the paper tray 1.
Tray Lift 1	216-A13 (IOB)	Open/ Shorted	SC501 is displayed.
Paper Feed 2	216-B4 (IOB)	Open/ Shorted	No symptom, but this may cause Jam A and some pieces of paper are remaining at the paper feed unit when tray 2 is opened.
Relay 2	214 P7 (IOP)	Open	Jam A
Keldy 2	216-B7 (IOB)	Shorted	Jam A, B
	216-B10 (IOB)	Open	The Paper End indicator lights even if paper is placed in the paper tray 2.
Paper End 2		Shorted	The Paper End indicator does not light even if there is no paper in the paper tray 2.
Tray Lift 2	216-B13 (IOB)	Open/ Shorted	SC502 is displayed.
Registration	209-2 (IOB)	Open	Jam A (Jam 8, 17)
Registration	207-2 (100)	Shorted	Jam A, B (Jam 1)

Component (Symbol)	CN	Condition	Symptom	
Paper Size 1	209-4, 5, 5, 8 (IOB)	Open/ Shorted	Paper size error in tray 1	
Paper Size 2	209-9, 10, 11, 13 (IOB)	Open/ Shorted	Paper size error in tray 2	
Lower Paper Height 1	210-4 (IOB)	Open/ Shorted	Remaining paper volume in tray 2 on	
Lower Paper Height 2	210-7 (IOB)	Open/ Shorted	the LCD is wrong.	
Upper Paper Height 1	210-12 (IOB)	Open/ Shorted	Remaining paper volume in tray 1 on	
Upper Paper Height 2	210-15 (IOB)	Open/ Shorted	the LCD is wrong.	
Junction Jam	221-A10 (IOB)	Open/ Shorted	Jam C	
D 5. it	221 02 (100)	Open	Jam C	
Paper Exit	221-B2 (IOB)	Shorted	Jam C	
Fusing Exit	221-B5 (IOB)	Open	Jam C	
Tusing LXII	221-03 (100)	Shorted	Jam C	
D O II	201 00 (100)	Open	Paper overflow message is not displayed when a paper overflow condition exists.	
Paper Overflow	221-B8 (IOB)	Shorted	Paper overflow message is displayed when a paper overflow condition does not exist.	
TD (Toner Density)	213-14 (IOB)	Open	The add toner indicator blinks even if there is toner in the development unit.	
		Shorted	SC390 is displayed.	

Component (Symbol)	CN	Condition	Symptom
Web End	208-16 (IOB)	Open	CPU detects the web end even the web is not used up.
Web Liid	200-10 (108)	Shorted	CPU cannot detect the web end even the web is used up.
ID (Income Demoks)	208-11 (IOB)	Open	SC350 is displayed after copying.
ID (Image Density)		Shorted	SC351 is displayed after copying.
		Open	CPU cannot detect paper even a sheet of paper remains at the fusing unit.
Fusing Entrance	208-8 (IOB)	Shorted	CPU detects paper even a sheet of paper does not remain at the fusing unit.

Switches

Component (Symbol)	CN	Condition	Symptom
Right Door	221-B10	Open	"Open Cover" is displayed even if the right door is closed.
kigili Dool	(IOB)	Shorted	The LCD goes blank when the right door is opened.
Main Power	903-1,2 (PSU)	Open	The machine does not turn on.
Main rower		Shorted	The machine does not turn off.
Interlock	913-1,2	Open	"Doors/Covers Open" is displayed even if the front or right door is closed.
іпіегіоск	(PSU)	Shorted	The LCD goes blank when the front or right door is opened.

Blown Fuse Conditions

ACAUTION

• Use a correct rating fuse for the fuse replacement. Never use a wrong rating fuse. If do so, the machine may be damaged.

г	Rating		Comment of the commen	
Fuse	115V	210 to 230V	Symptom at power on	
Power Supp	ly Board			
FU21	6.3A / 250V	6.3A / 250V	SC 533 (Power to IOB)	
FU22	6.3A / 250V	6.3A / 250V	No response	
FU23	10A / 250V	10A / 250V	"Open Cover" is displayed. (Power to Interlock Switch)	
FU24	10A / 250V	10A / 250V	"Open Cover" is displayed. (Power to Interlock Switch)	
FU25	6.3A / 250V	6.3A / 250V	Alert LED turns on and operation panel does not turn on. (Power to MB)	
FU26	6.3A / 250V	6.3A / 250V	Stack paper in the optional paper feed unit or LCT is not detected. SC 503 is issued after opening and closing the tray 3 or 4. (Power to optional PFU or LCT)	
FU27	6.3A / 250V	6.3 A/ 250V	The machine does not detect a finisher. (Power to optional Finisher)	
FU101	15A / 250V	8A / 250V	No response	
FU102	12A / 250V	4A / 250V	No response	

Fuses

Fuse Address	Part No.	Q'ty
FU11	11071229	1
FU21, 22, 25, 26, 27	11071295	5
FU23, 24	11071216	2
FU101	Differs depending on the voltage system. • 100V: 11071252 • 200V: 11071218	1
FU102	Differs depending on the voltage system. • 100V: 11071320 • 200V: 11071217	1
FU103, 12, 14	11071225	3

6

7. Energy Saving

Energy Save

Energy Saver Modes

Customers should use energy saver modes properly, to save energy and protect the environment.

Power Consump. Warm-up Operation Mode Ready Mode Energy saving!! Sleep Mode (Sleep Mode Timer / Eco Night Sensor) Main Power Off (Eco Night Sensor) Plug-in w_m1322126

The area shaded grey in this diagram represents the amount of energy that is saved when the timers are at the default settings. If the timers are changed, then the energy saved will be different. For example, if the sleep mode timer is set to 240 min., the grey area will disappear, and no energy is saved before 240 min. expires.

Timer Settings

The user can set these timers with User Tools (System settings > Timer settings)

• Sleep mode timer (1 – 240 min):

The machine waits this amount of time to enter the sleep mode.

Default setting: 1 min

Eco Night Sensor (1/5/30/60/120 min):

The machine waits this amount of time to enter the sleep mode or to turn off the power automatically after the night sensor ambient light level is low.

Default setting: Power Off / 120 min / 1

Return to Stand-by Mode

The recovery time from the sleep mode is 15 sec.

Recommendation

We recommend that the default settings should be kept.

- If the customer requests that these settings should be changed, please explain that their energy
 costs could increase, and that they should consider the effects on the environment of extra energy
 use.
- If it is necessary to change the settings, please try to make sure that the timer settings are not too
 long. Try with a shorter setting first, such as 30 min., then go to a longer one (such as 60 min.) if the
 customer is not satisfied.
- If the timers are all set to the maximum value, the machine will not begin saving energy until 240
 minutes has expired after the last job. This means that after the customer has finished using the
 machine for the day, energy will be consumed that could otherwise be saved.
- If you change the settings, the energy consumed can be measured using SP8941, as explained below.

Energy Save Effectiveness

SP 8941 (Machine Status) keeps a record of the amount of time that the machine spends in each mode.

- 8941-001: Operating mode
- 8941-002: Standby mode
- 8941-004: Low power mode

With this data, and the power consumption values from the specifications, we can estimate the amount of energy that is used by the machine.

This should only be used as a reference value, because the power consumption specifications are measured in a controlled environment with a constant power supply.

To get an exact measurement at the customers site, a watt meter must be used to measure the actual energy consumed.

To use SP8941 to calculate the energy consumed:

- At the start of the measurement period, read the values of SP8941 001 to 004.
- At the end of the measurement period, read the values of SP8941 001 to 004 again.
- Find the amount of time spent in each mode (subtract the earlier measurement from the later measurement).
- Multiply this by the power consumption spec for each mode.

7

• Convert the result to kWh (kilowatt hours)

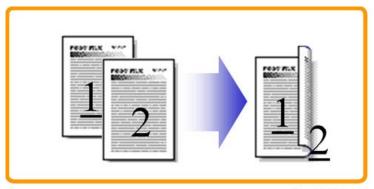
Paper Save

Effectiveness of Duplex/Combine Function

Duplexing and the combine functions reduce the amount of paper used. This means that less energy overall is used for paper production, which improves the environment.

1. Duplex:

Reduce paper volume in half!



d062d102

2. Combine mode:

Reduce paper volume in half!



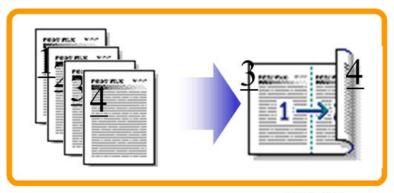
d062d100

7

7

3. Duplex + Combine:

Using both features together can further reduce paper volume by 3/4!



d062d101

To check the paper consumption, look at the total counter and the duplex counter.

The total counter counts all pages printed.

- For one duplex page, the total counter goes up by 2.
- For a duplex job of a three-page original, the total counter goes up by 3.

The duplex counter counts pages that have images on both sides.

- For one duplex page, the duplex counter goes up by 1.
- For a duplex job of a three-page original, the duplex counter will only increase by 1, even though
 two sheets are used.

How to calculate the paper reduction ratio

How to calculate the paper reduction ratio, when compared with Single-sided copying, with no 2-in-1 combine mode

Paper reduction ratio (%) = Number of sheets reduced: A/Number of printed original images: B x 100

- Number of sheets reduced: A
 - = Output pages in duplex mode/2 + Number of pages in Single-sided with combine mode + Number of pages in Duplex with combine mode x 3/2

$$A = ((2) + (3) + (4))/2 + (5) + (6) \times 3/2$$

- Number of printed original images: B
 - = Total counter6 + Number of pages in Single-sided with combine mode + Number of pages in Duplex with combine mode

$$B = (1) + (5) + (6)$$

- (1) Total counter: SP 8581 001 (pages)
- (2) Single-sided with duplex mode: SP 8421 001 (pages)

- (3) Double-sided with duplex mode: SP 8421 002 (pages)
- (4) Book with duplex mode: SP 8421 003 (pages)
- (5) Single-sided with combine mode: SP 8421 004 (pages)
- (6) Duplex with combine mode: SP 8421 005 (pages)

Model AL-P2 Machine Code: M132 Appendices

TABLE OF CONTENTS

1. Appendix: General Specifications	
General Specifications	3
Main Frame	3
Power Consumption	
Printer Controller	
Supported Paper Sizes	
Paper Feed	7
Paper Exit	12
Software Accessories.	17
Printer Drivers	17
Utility Software	18
Optional Equipment	19
Two-tray Paper Feed Unit (D580)	19
LCT 2000-sheet (D581)	19
LCT 1200-sheet (D631)	20
Bridge Unit (D634)	20
1000-Sheet Finisher (D588)	21
3000-Sheet Finisher (D636)	22
Punch Unit (D570) for 3000-Sheet Finisher	24
Output Jogger Unit (B703)	25
2. Appendix: PM Tables	
Maintenance Tables	27
Mainframe	27
Options	30
3. Appendix: Service Program Mode Tables	
Service SP Tables	33
SP1-xxx	33
Engine SP Tables-1	42
SP1-xxx: Feed	42
Engine SP Tables-2	57
SP2-xxx: Drum	57
Engine SP Tables-3	78
CD2 D	70

Engine SP Tables-4	81
SP4-xxx: Scanner	81
Engine SP Tables-5	82
SP5-xxx: Mode	82
Engine SP Tables-6	135
SP6-xxx: Peripherals	135
Engine SP Tables-7	143
SP7-xxx: Data Log	143
Engine SP Tables-8	158
SP8-XXX: Data Log2	158
Input Check	181
Copier	181
Options	186
Output Check	190
Copier	190
1000-Sheet Finisher (D588)	194
3000 /2000-Sheet (Booklet) Finisher (D636/D637)	195
Test Pattern Printing	197

1. Appendix: General Specifications

General Specifications

Main Frame

Configuration	Desktop						
Print Process	•	Dry electrostatic transfer system					
	,	,					
Resolution	200 / 300 / 600) dpi					
Gradation	256 tones						
First Print (Normal mode)	3.5 seconds or les (A4 / LT LEF)	ss					
Warm-up Time		s from main power on. (23°C) s from sleep mode off. (23°C)					
Print Paper Size	Standard Tray:	A3 / DLT (11" x 17") - A5 LEF Custom: Width: 182 - 297 mm (7.2" - 11.7") Length: 148 mm - 432 mm (5.8" - 17")					
	By-pass Tray:	12" x 18" / 305 x 457.2 mm, A3 / DLT (11" x 17") - A6 SEF, Postcard Custom: Width: 90 - 305 mm (3.6" - 12") Length: 148 - 1260 mm (5.8" - 49.6")					
	Duplex:	A3 / DLT(11" x 17") – A5 LEF / LT					
	Paper trays:	60 - 216 g/m² (16 lb. Bond - 80 lb. Cover)					
Print Paper Weight	By-pass:	52 - 216 g/m² (14 lb. Bond - 80 lb. Cover)					
	Duplex:	60 - 169 g/m² (16 lb. Bond - 90 lb. Index)					
Printing speed:	Maximum 50 ppn	n (A4 / LT LEF)					

First Print (Normal mode)	3.5 seconds or less (A4 / LT LEF)				
) T:	25 seconds or less from	main power on. (23°C)			
Warm-up Time	15 seconds or less from	sleep mode off. (23°C)			
	Standard:				
	1,200 sheets				
	(550 sheets/tray x 2 wi	ith 100 sheets in the by-pass tray)			
Paper Capacity:	Option:				
	4,400 sheets				
	(550 sheets/tray x 2 with LCT and 2000-sheet LC	ith 100 sheets in the by-pass tray, 1200-sheet T)			
	Standard exit tray:				
	• 500 sheets (A4 / LT or less)				
	• 250 sheets (B4 / LG or more)				
	Bridge Unit Tray				
Output Papar Capacity	• 250 sheets (A4 / LT or less)				
Output Paper Capacity	• 125 sheets (B4 / LG or more)				
	1000-sheet finisher				
	• 250 + 1000 sheets (80 g/m²)				
	3000-sheet finisher:				
	• 250 + 3000 sheets (80 g/m²)				
	North America:	120 – 127V / 60Hz, 12 A			
Power Source	Europe/Asia:	220 – 240 V/50, 60 Hz, 7 A			
	Taiwan	110V/60Hz, 14 A			
Dimensions (W x D x H)	670 x 684 x 640 mm				
Weight	Less than 73 kg (160.9 lb.)				
Toner Replenishment	Cartridge exchange (630 g)				
Total Counter	Electric counter				

Noise Emission: Printing	48dB or less	
Noise Emission: Stand-by	72dB or less	

Power Consumption

Basic		Power Consumption
On a makin n	NA	874W
Operating	EU, Asia	874W
Sleep Mode	NA	3.5W or less
	EU, Asia	3.5W or less
A4	NA	1550W or less
Maximum	EU, Asia	1470W or less



- The above measurements were made in accordance with ISO 7779.
- In the above "Panel Off" condition, the polygonal mirror motor is not rotating.

Printer Controller

	Standard
	RPCS (Refined Printing Command Stream)
	• PCL 6(XL)/5e
Dainton I am ann ann	PDF Direct
Printer Languages:	Adobe PostScript 3
	MediaPrint: JPEG/TIFF
	Option
	• IPDS

	PCL 5e:				
	300 x 300 dpi				
	600 x 600 dpi : Fast (1-bit)				
	PCL 6:				
	600 x 600 dpi : Fast (1-bit)				
Resolution and Gradation:	PS3 / PDF Direct:				
	300 x 300 dpi / 600 x 600 dpi				
	XPS:				
	600 x 600 dpi : Fast (1-bit)				
	IPDS:				
	300 x 300 dpi/ 600 x 600 dpi				
	PCL 6/5e (Standard):				
	45 Compatible fonts				
	13 International fonts, 6 Bitmap fonts				
Resident Fonts:	Adobe PostScript 3 (Optional) / PDF Direct				
	136 Compatible fonts				
	IPDS (Optional)				
	108 Compatible fonts				
	Standard:				
	USB2.0 Type A (2 ports) and Type B				
	• Ethernet (100 Base-TX/10 Base-T)				
	3 SD slots (Operation panel, Option use, and service use)				
Host Interfaces:	Optional:				
	Gigabit Ethernet (1000 Base-T)				
	IEEE1284 parallel x 1				
	• IEEE802.11a/b/g (Wireless LAN)				
	NIC2Port (Print server)				
Network Protocols:	TCP/IP (IPv4, IPv6), IPX/SPX (Optional)				
	Standard: 512 MB				
Memory	Maximum: 1024 MB				
	(Resident 512 MB + Additional 512 MB)				
HDD	120 GB				

ſ

Supported Paper Sizes

Paper Feed

North America

BT: By-pass Tray, Std Tray: Standard Tray, Op Tray: Optional Tray, LCT 1000: Large Capacity Tray: 1000-sheet, LCT 1200: Large Capacity Tray: 1200-sheet, DU: Duplex Unit

Paper	Size (W x L)	ВТ	Std Tray	Op Tray	LCT 1000	LCT 1200	DU
A3 SEF	297 x 420mm	В	В	В	-	-	S
A4 SEF	210 x 297mm	В	Α	Α	-	-	S
A4 LEF	297 x 210mm	В	В	В	В	В	S
A5 SEF	148 x 210mm	В	-	-	-	-	S
A5 LEF	210 x 148mm	В	Α	А	-	-	S
A6 SEF	105 x 148mm	В	-	-	-	-	S
B4 SEF	257 x 364mm	В	В	В	-	-	S
B5 SEF	182 x 257mm	В	Α	Α	-	-	S
B5 LEF	257 x 182mm	В	В	В	-	В	S
B6 SEF	128 x 182mm	В	-	-	-	-	S
DLT SEF	11" x 17"	А	Α	Α	-	-	S
Legal SEF	8.5" x 14"	В	А	Α	-	-	S
Foolscap SEF	8.5" x 13"	В	В	В	-	-	S
Letter SEF	8.5" x 11"	А	Α	Α	-	-	S
Letter LEF	11" x 8.5"	А	Α	Α	В	В	S
Government Legal SEF	8.25" x 14"	В	В	В	-	-	S
Folio SEF	8.25" x 13"	В	В	В	-	-	S

Paper	Size (W x L)	ВТ	Std Tray	Op Tray	LCT 1000	LCT 1200	DU
F/GL SEF	8" x 13"	В	В	В	-	-	S
G LT SEF	8" x 10.5"	В	В	В	-	-	S
G LT LEF	10.5" x 8"	В	В	В	-	-	S
Eng Quatro SEF	8" x 10"	В	В	В	-	-	S
Eng Quatro LEF	10" x 8"	В	-	-	-	-	S
Executive SEF	7.25" x 10.5"	В	В	В	-	-	S
Executive LEF	10.5" x 7.25"	В	Α	Α	-	-	S
Half Letter SEF	5.5" x 8.5"	Α	-	-	-	-	S
12" x 18" (A3W) SEF	12" x 18"	В	В	В	-	-	-
11" x 15" SEF	11" x 15"	В	В	В	-	-	S
11" x 14" SEF	11" x 14"	В	В	В	-	-	S
10" x 15" SEF	10" x 15"	В	В	В	-	-	S
10" x 14" SEF	10" x 14"	В	В	В	-	-	S
Com10 SEF	4.13"x 9.5"	В	-	-	-	-	-
Com 10 LEF	9.5"x 4.13"	В	В	В	-	-	-
Monarch SEF	3.88"x 7.5"	В	-	-	-	-	-
Monarch LEF	7.5"x 3.88"	В	-	-	-	-	-
C5 SEF	162 x 229mm	В	-	-	-	-	-
C5 LEF	229 x 162mm	В	В	В	-	-	-
C6 SEF	114 x 162mm	В	-	-	-	-	-
C6 LEF	162 x 114mm	В	-	-	-	-	-
DL Env SEF	110 x 220mm	В	-	-	-	-	-
DL Env LEF	220 x 110mm	В	В	В	-	-	-

Paper	Size (W x L)	ВТ	Std Tray	Op Tray	LCT 1000	LCT 1200	DU
Custom	Width						
	Length						

Custom	ВТ	Std / Op Tray	LCT1000 / 1200	DU
Width	90 -305mm (3.55"- 12")	182 - 297mm (7.17"- 11.69")	-	90 / 297mm (3.55"- 11.69")
Length	148 – 600mm (5.83"- 23.62")	148 – 432mm (5.83"- 17")	-	148 - 432mm (5.83"- 17")

Remarks:

А	Supported and the size is automatically detected.
В	Supported but the size is not automatically detected. (The size needs to be set by operation panel and also printer driver.)
S	Supported
-	Not supported

Europe/ Asia

BT: By-pass Tray, Std Tray: Standard Tray, Op Tray: Optional Tray, LCT 1000: Large Capacity Tray: 1000-sheet, LCT 1200: Large Capacity Tray: 1200-sheet, DU: Duplex Unit

Paper	Size (W x L)	ВТ	Std Tray	Op Tray	LCT 1000	LCT 1200	DU
A3 SEF	297 x 420mm	Α	Α	Α	-	-	Υ
A4 SEF	210 x 297mm	Α	Α	Α	-	-	Υ
A4 LEF	297 x 210mm	Α	Α	Α	В	В	Y
A5 SEF	148 x 210mm	Α	-	-	-	-	Υ
A5 LEF	210 x 148mm	А	Α	Α	-	-	Y

Paper	Size (W x L)	ВТ	Std Tray	Op Tray	LCT 1000	LCT 1200	DU
A6 SEF	105 x 148mm	Α	-	-	-	-	Υ
B4 SEF	257 x 364mm	В	Α	Α	-	-	Υ
B5 SEF	182 x 257mm	В	Α	Α	-	-	Υ
B5 LEF	257 x 182mm	В	Α	Α	-	В	Υ
B6 SEF	128 x 182mm	В	-	-	-	-	Υ
DLT SEF	11" x 17"	В	В	В	-	-	Υ
Legal SEF	8.5" x 14"	В	В	В	-	-	Υ
Foolscap SEF	8.5" x 13"	В	В	В	-	-	Υ
Letter SEF	8.5" x 11"	В	Α	Α	-	-	Y
Letter LEF	11" x 8.5"	В	В	В	В	В	Υ
Government Legal SEF	8.25" x 14"	В	В	В	-	-	Y
Folio SEF	8.25" x 13"	В	В	В	-	-	Y
F/GL SEF	8" x 13"	В	В	В	-	-	Υ
G LT SEF	8" x 10.5"	В	В	В	-	-	Υ
G LT LEF	10.5" x 8"	В	В	В	-	-	Υ
Eng Quatro SEF	8" x 10"	В	В	В	-	-	Υ
Eng Quatro LEF	10" x 8"	В	-	-	-	-	Y
Executive SEF	7.25" x 10.5"	В	В	В	-	-	Υ
Executive LEF	10.5" x 7.25"	В	В	В	-	-	Υ
Half Letter SEF	5.5" x 8.5"	В	-	-	-	-	Y
12" x 18" (A3W) SEF	12" x 18"	В	В	В	-	-	-
11" x 15" SEF	11" x 15"	В	В	В	-	-	Υ
11" x 14" SEF	11" x 14"	В	В	В	-	-	Y

Paper	Size (W x L)	ВТ	Std Tray	Op Tray	LCT 1000	LCT 1200	DU
10" x 15" SEF	10" x 15"	В	В	В	-	-	Υ
10" x 14" SEF	10" x 14"	В	В	В	-	-	Υ
Com 10 SEF	4.13"x 9.5"	В	-	-	-	-	-
Com 10 LEF	9.5"x 4.13"	В	В	В	-	-	-
Monarch SEF	3.88"x 7.5"	В	-	-	-	-	-
Monarch LEF	7.5"x 3.88"	В	-	-	-	-	-
C5 SEF	162 x 229mm	В	-	-	-	-	-
C5 LEF	229 x 162mm	В	В	В	-	-	-
C6 SEF	114 x 162mm	В	-	-	-	-	-
C6 LEF	162 x 114mm	В	-	-	-	-	-
DL Env SEF	110 x 220mm	В	-	-	-	-	-
DL Env LEF	220 x 110mm	В	В	В	-	-	-
	Width						
Custom	Length						

Custom	ВТ	Std / Op Tray	LCT1000 / 1200	DU
Width	90 -305mm (3.55"- 12")	182 - 297mm (7.17"- 11.69")	-	90 / 297mm (3.55"- 11.69")
Length	148 – 600mm (5.83"- 23.62")	148 - 432mm (5.83"- 17")	-	148 - 432mm (5.83"- 17")

Remarks:

А	Supported and the size is automatically detected.
В	Supported but the size is not automatically detected. (The size needs to be set by operation panel and also printer driver.)
S	Supported

- Not supported

Paper Exit

3000 Sheet Finisher (D636)

MF: Main Frame, Prf: Proof, Clr: Clear, Shf: Shift, Stp: Staple, SS: Saddle Stitch,

2P: 2 Holes Punch, N2P: North Europe 2 Holes, 3P: 3 Holes Punch,

Punch 4 P: 4 Holes Punch, N4P: North Europe 4 Holes Punch

	Size		3000-sheet finisher								
Paper	(W x L)	MF	Prf	Clr	Shf	Stp	SS	2P/ N2P	3P	4P	N4P
A3 W	12" x 18"	Υ	Υ	Υ	Υ	30	15	-	-	-	-
A3 SEF	297 x 420 mm	Y	Y	Y	Υ	30	15	Y	Y	Y	Y
A4 SEF	210 x 297 mm	Υ	Y	Y	Υ	50	15	Y	-	-	Y
A4 LEF	297 x 210 mm	Υ	Y	Y	Υ	50	-	Y	Y	Y	Y
A5 SEF	148 x 210 mm	Υ	Y	Y	Υ	-	-	Y	-	-	Y
A5 LEF	210 x 148 mm	Y	Y	Υ	Υ	-	-	Y	-	-	Y
A6 SEF	105 x 148 mm	Υ	Y	Y	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
B4 SEF	257 x 364 mm	Y	Y	Υ	Υ	30	15	Y	Y	Y*4	Y*4
B5 SEF	182 x 257 mm	Y	Y	Y	Υ	50	15	Y	-	-	Y
B5 LEF	257 x 182 mm	Y	Y	Y	Υ	50	Υ	Y	Υ	Υ	Y

	Size					3000	-sheet	finisher			
Paper	(W x L)	MF	Prf	Clr	Shf	Stp	SS	2P/ N2P	3P	4P	N4P
B6 SEF	128 x 182 mm	Y	Y	Y	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Ledger	11" x 1 <i>7</i> "	Υ	Υ	Υ	Υ	30	15	Υ	Υ	Υ	Y
Letter SEF	8.5" x 11"	Υ	Υ	Υ	Υ	50	15	Υ	-	-	Υ
Letter LEF	11" x 8.5"	Υ	Υ	Υ	Υ	50	-	Υ	Υ	Υ	Υ
Legal SEF	8.5" x 14"	Υ	Υ	Υ	Υ	30	15	Y	-	-	Y
Government Legal SEF	8.25" x 14"	Y	Y	Y	Y	30	-	Y	-	-	Y
Half Letter SEF	5.5" x 8.5"	Y	Y	Y	Y	-	-	Y	-	-	Y
Executive SEF	7.25" x 10.5"	Y	Y	Y	Υ	50	-	Y	-	-	Y
Executive LEF	10.5" x 7.25"	Y	Y	Y	Υ	50	-	Y	Y	Υ	Y
F SEF	8" x 13"	Υ	Y	Υ	Υ	30	-	Υ	-	-	Y
Foolscap SEF	8.5" x 13"	Υ	Υ	Υ	Υ	30	-	Υ	-	-	Υ
	8.25" x 13"	Y	Y	Y	Υ	30	-	Y	-	-	Y
Folio SEF	11" x 15"	Υ	Υ	Υ	Υ	30	-	Υ	Y	Υ	Y
	10" x 14"	Υ	Υ	Υ	Υ	30	-	Υ	Y	-	Υ
	8" x 10"	Υ	Y	Υ	Υ	50	-	Υ	-	-	Y
8K	267 x 390 mm	Y	Y	Y	Υ	30	-	Y	Y	Y	Y
16K SEF	195 x 267 mm	Υ	Y	Y	Υ	50	-	Y	-	-	Y

	Size			3000-sheet finisher								
Paper	(W x L)	MF	Prf	Clr	Shf	Stp	SS	2P/ N2P	3P	4P	N4P	
16K LEF	267 x 195 mm	Υ	Y	Y	Y	50	-	Y	Y	Y	Y	
Custom		Υ	Y	Υ	-	-	-	Y*3	Y*3	Y*3	Y*3	
Com 10 Env.	4.125" x 9.5"	Υ	Y*1	Y*2	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	
Monarch Env.	3.875" x 7.5"	Υ	-	Y	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	
C6 Env.	114 x 162 mm	Υ	-	Υ	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	
C5 Env.	162 x 229 mm	Υ	-	Y	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	
DL Env.	110 x 220 mm	Y	-	Y	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	

Remarks:

Y	Supported
15	Output up to 15 sheets
30	Output up to 30 sheets
50	Output up to 50 sheets
-	Not supported

^{*1:} Minimum 100 mm or more, Maximum 600 mm or less

^{*2:} Minimum 100 mm or more, Maximum 600 mm or less

[•] Longer paper (feed length) than DLT (432 mm) is not guaranteed in this mode.

^{*3:} Minimum 100 mm for 2P, 230 mm for 3P, 255 mm for 4P, 125 mm for N4P

^{*4:} Corner stapling is not available in this mode.

1000-Sheet Finisher (D588)

MF: Main Frame, Prf: Proof, Clr: Clear, Shf: Shift, Stp: Staple

D	Size	MF		1000-she	et finisher		1 D:-
Paper	(W x L)	MF	Prf	Clr	Shf	Stp	1 Bin
A3 W	12" x 18"	Υ	Υ	Υ	Υ	30	-
A3 SEF	297 x 420 mm	Υ	Υ	Υ	Υ	30	Υ
A4 SEF	210 x 297 mm	Y	Y	Υ	Y	50	Υ
A4 LEF	297 x 210 mm	Y	Y	Y	Y	50	Υ
A5 SEF	148 x 210 mm	Y	Y	Y	Y	-	Y
A5 LEF	210 x 148 mm	Y	Y	Y	Y	-	Y
A6 SEF	105 x 148 mm	Y	Y	-	-	-	-
B4 SEF	257 x 364 mm	Y	Y	Y	Y	30	Υ
B5 SEF	182 x 257 mm	Y	Y	Y	Y	50	Y
B5 LEF	257 x 182 mm	Y	Y	Y	Y	50	Υ
B6 SEF	128 x 182 mm	Y	Y	-	-	-	N
Ledger	11" x 17"	Y	Y	Y	Y	30	Υ
Letter SEF	8.5" x 11"	Y	Y	Y	Y	50	Υ
Letter LEF	11" x 8.5"	Y	Y	Y	Y	50	Υ
Legal SEF	8.5" x 14"	Y	Y	Y	Y	30	Y
Government Legal SEF	8.25" x 14"	Y	Y	Y	Y	30	Y
Half Letter SEF	5.5" x 8.5"	Y	Y	Y	Y	-	Υ
Executive SEF	7.25" x 10.5"	Y	Y	Y	Y	50	Y
Executive LEF	10.5" x 7.25"	Y	Y	Υ	Y	50	Υ
F SEF	8" x 13"	Y	Y	Υ	Υ	30	Υ
Foolscap SEF	8.5" x 13"	Y	Y	Υ	Y	30	Υ

D	Size	AAE	1000-sheet finisher				1 D:-
Paper	(W×L)	MF	Prf	Clr	Shf	Stp	1 Bin
	8.25" x 13"	Y	Υ	Υ	Υ	30	Y
Folio SEF	11" x 15"	Y	Υ	Υ	Υ	30	Y
FOIIO SEF	10" x 14"	Y	Υ	Υ	Υ	30	Υ
	8" x 10"	Υ	Υ	Υ	Υ	30	Y
8K	267 x 390 mm	Y	Y	Υ	Υ	30	Υ
16K SEF	195 x 267 mm	Y	Υ	Υ	Υ	50	Y
16K LEF	267 x 195 mm	Y	Υ	Υ	Υ	50	Υ
Custom		Y	Υ	-	-	-	-
Com 10 Env.	4.125" x 9.5"	Y	-	-	-	-	-
Monarch Env.	3.875" x 7.5"	Y	-	-	-	-	-
C6 Env.	114 x 162 mm	Y	-	-	-	-	-
C5 Env.	162 x 229 mm	Y	-	-	-	-	-
DL Env.	110 x 220 mm	Y	-	-	-	-	-

Remarks:

Y	Supported
30	Output up to 30 sheets
50	Output up to 50 sheets
-	Not supported

Software Accessories

The printer drivers and utility software are provided on one CD-ROM. An auto-run installer allows you to select which components to install.

Printer Drivers

Printer Language	Windows XP*1*6	Windows Vista*2*6	Windows 7*3*6
PCL 5e/6	Yes	Yes	Yes
PS3	Yes	Yes	Yes

Printer Language	Windows Server 2003 ^{*4*6}	Windows Server 2008 or later*5*6	Macintosh* ⁷
PCL 5e/6	Yes	Yes	No
PS3	Yes	Yes	Yes

^{* 1} Microsoft Windows XP Professional Edition / Home Edition

UNote

- The PCL5c/6 and PS3 drivers are provided on the CD-ROM
- The PS3 drivers are all genuine Adobe PS drivers, except for Windows XP / 2003 / Vista / 7.
- A PPD file for each operating system is provided with the driver.

^{*2} Microsoft Windows Vista Home Basic / Home Premium / Business / Enterprise / Ultimate

^{*3} Microsoft Windows 7 Home Premium / Professional / Enterprise / Ultimate

^{*4} Microsoft Windows Server 2003 Standard Edition / Enterprise Edition, Microsoft Windows Server 2003 R2 Standard Edition / Enterprise Edition

^{*5} Microsoft Windows Server 2008 Standard / Enterprise, Microsoft Windows Server 2008 R2 Standard / Enterprise

^{*6} Supports both versions (32/64 bit)

^{*7} Mac OS X 10.4 or later (native mode). Any versions higher than Mac OS X 10.7 are not supported.

Utility Software

Software	Description
Font Manager	A font management utility with screen fonts for the printer
(XP / Vista)	This is provided on the printer drivers CD-ROM

d

1

Optional Equipment

Two-tray Paper Feed Unit (D580)

Paper Feed System:	FRR
Paper Height Detection:	5 steps (100%, 70%, 30%, 10% (Near end), and Empty)
Capacity:	550 sheets x 2 trays
Paper Weight:	60 to 216 g/m² (16 to 80 lb. Cover)
Paper Size:	A3 SEF to A5, DLT SEF to HLT
Power Source:	DC 24V, 5V (from the main frame)
Power Consumption:	Less than 40 W (Max.)/ Less than 25 W (Ave,)
Dimensions (W x D x H):	580 mm x 629 mm x 260 mm (22.8" x 24.8" x 10.2")
Weight:	26 kg (57.3 lb.)

LCT 2000-sheet (D581)

Paper Size:	A4 LEF/LT LEF
Paper Weight:	52 to 256 g/m² (- to 68 lb.)
Tray Capacity:	2,000 sheets (80 g/m², 20lb.)
Remaining Paper Detection:	5 steps (100%, 70%, 30%, 10%, Empty): Right Tray 4 steps (100%, 70%, 30%, Empty): Left Tray
Power Source:	DC 24 V, 5 V (from copier/printer)
Power Consumption:	55 W (Max.)/30 W (Ave.)
Weight:	26 kg (57.3 lb.)
Size (W x D x H):	580 mm x 620 mm x 260 mm (22.8" x 24.4" x 10.2")

LCT 1200-sheet (D631)

Paper Size:	A4 LEF/LT LEF/B5 LEF
Paper Weight:	$52 \text{ to } 256 \text{ g/m}^2 \text{ (- to } 68 \text{ lb.)}$
Tray Capacity:	1,200 sheets (80 g/m², 20lb.)
Remaining Paper Detection:	5 steps (100%, 70%, 30%, 10%, Empty)
Power Source:	DC 24 V, 5 V (from copier/printer)
Power Consumption:	55 W (Max.)/25 W (Ave.)
Weight:	14 kg (30.8 lb.)
Size (W x D x H):	348 mm x 540 mm x 290 mm (13.7" x 21.3" x 11.4")

Bridge Unit (D634)

	Standard sizes A6 SEF to A3, HLT to DLT
Paper Size:	Non-standard sizes
	Width: 90 to 305 mm
	Length: 148 to 1260 mm
Paper Weight:	52 g/m2 to 256 g/m2, 16 lb. to 68 lb.
Paper Capacity:	250 sheet (A4/81/2" x 111/2" or smaller: 80g/m2/20 lbs) 125 sheet (B4 81/2" x 111/2" or larger: 80g/m2/20 lbs)
Power Source:	DC 24 V, 5 V (form the copier/printer)
Dimensions (W x D x H):	415 mm x 412 mm x 111 mm (16.3" x 16.2" x 4.4")
Weight	5 kg (11 lb.)

1

1000-Sheet Finisher (D588)

Upper Tray

Paper Size:	12" x 18"/305 x 457.2 mm, A3 to A6, 11" x 17" to 5.5" x 8.5"
Paper Weight:	52 to 256 g/m² (14 to 68 lb. Bond)
Paper Capacity:	250 sheets (A4, LT or smaller) 50 sheets (B4, LG or larger)

Lower Tray

Paper Size:	No staple mode: 12" x 18"/305 x 457.2 mm, A3 to B5, DLT to HLT Staple mode: 12" x 18"/305 x 457.2 mm, A3, B4, A4, B5, DLT to LT						
Paper Weight:		No staple mode: 52 to 160 g/m ² (14 lb. Bond to 60 lb. Cover) Staple mode: 64 to 90 g/m ² (17 to 24 lb. Bond)					
Stapler Capacity:	50 sheets (A4, B5, LT) 30 sheets (A3, B4, DLT, LG)						
	No staple mode: 1,000 sheets (A4/LT or smaller: 80 g/m², 20 lb.) 500 sheets (B4 /LG or larger: 80 g/m², 20 lb.) Staple mode: (80 g/m², 20 lb., number of sets)						
	Paper Size	Sheets	Sets				
Paper Capacity:	A4,/LT LEF, B5 LEF	2 to 9	100				
	A4,/LT LEF,	10 to 50	100 to 20				
	A4,/LT LEF, B5 LEF	10 to 50	50 to 10				
	A3, B4, DLT, LG	2 to 9	50				
	A3, B4, DLT, LG	10 to 30	50 to 10				

Ш

Staple positions:	Top, Bottom, 2 Staples			
Staple Replenishment:	Cartridge (5,000 staples/cartridge)			
Power Source:	DC 24 V, 5 V (from the copier/printer)			
Power Consumption:	50 W			
Weight:	25 kg (55.2 lbs)			
Dimensions (W x D x H):	520 x 520 x 790 mm (20.5" x 20.5" x 31.2")			

3000-Sheet Finisher (D636)

Finisher				
Dimension (w	x d x h)	657 mm x 613 mm x 960 mm (25.9" x 24.2" x 37.8")		
Weight		Less than 54 kg (119 lb.) (no punch unit) Less than 56 kg (123.5 lb.) (with punch unit)		
Power Consu	mption	Less than 96 W		
Noise		Less than 75 db		
Configuration	1	Console type attached base-unit		
Power Source	9	From base-unit		
	Stack Capacity	250 sheets: A4, 8.5" x 11" or smaller 50 sheets: B4, 8.5" x 14 or larger		
Proof Tray Paper Size		A6 SEF, B6 SEF, A5-A3 SEF, 5.5" x 8.5"-11" x 17" SEF, 12" x 18" SEF		
Paper Weight		52 g/m ² - 160 g/m ² (14 lb. Bond - 60 lb. Cover)		

		3,000 sheets	A4 LEF, 8.5" x 11" LEF			
	Stack Capacity	1,500 sheets	A3 SEF, A4 SEF, B4 SEF, B5, 11" x 17" SEF, 8.5" x 14" SEF, 8.5" x 11" SEF, 12" x 18" SEF			
Shift Tray		500 sheets	A5 LEF			
Jilli Huy		100 sheets	A5 SEF, B6 SEF, A6 SEF, 5.5" x 8.5" SEF			
Paper Size		A5 - A3 SEF, A6 SEF, B6 SEF, 5.5" x 8.5"- 11" x 17" SEF, 12" x 18" SEF				
Paper Weight		52 g/m² - 256 g/m² (14 lb. Bond - 68 lb. Bond)				
Staples						
Paper Size	Paper Size		B5 - A3 8.5" x 11" - 11" x 17", 12" x 18"			
Paper Weight		64 g/m ² - 90 g/m ² (17 lb. Bond - 20 lb. Bond)				
Staple Position	n	Top, Bottom, 2 S	Staple, Top-slant			
	C D C:	50 sheets	A4, 8.5" x 11" or smaller			
Stapling	Same Paper Size	30 sheets	B4, 8.5" x 14" or larger			
Capacity	Mixed Paper Size	30 sheets	A4 LEF + A3 SEF, B5 LEF + B4 SEF, 8.5" x11" LEF + 11" x 17" SEF			

Staple Replenishment	Cartridge exchange / 5000 pins per cartridge					
Stapled Stack Capacity (same size)	Paper Size	Pages/Set	Sets			
	A 4 EE Q 5 1 1 EE	20 - 50 pages	150 - 60 sets			
	A4 LEF, 8.5" x 11" LEF	2 - 19 pages	150 sets			
	A4 SEF, B5, 8.5" x 11"	15 - 50 pages	100 - 30 sets			
	SEF	2 - 14 pages	100 sets			
	Others	15 - 30 pages	100 - 33 sets			
	Omers	2 - 14 pages	100 sets			

Stapled Stack Capacity (mixed sizes)	A4 LEF & A3 SEF, B5 LEF & B4 SEF, 8.5" x11" LEF & 11" x 17" SEF,	2 - 30 pages	50 set	
--------------------------------------	--	--------------	--------	--

Punch Unit (D570) for 3000-Sheet Finisher

Available Punch Units		NA		2/3 holes switchable		
		EU		2/4 holes switchable		
			avia	4 holes		
		NA 2-ho	oles	Up to 5,000 sheets		
		NA 3-hc	oles	Up to 5,000 sheets		
Punch Waste	e Replenishment	EU 2-ho	les	Up to 14,000 sheets		
		EU 4-ho	les	Up to 7,000 sheets		
		Scanding	avia 4-holes	Up to 7,000 sheets		
Paper Weig	ht	52 g/m ² - 163 g/m ² , 1		4 lb Bond - 43 lb Bond		
	NA 2-holes	SEF	A5 to A3, 5.5" x 8.5" to 11" x 17"			
	TVA Z-Holes	LEF	A5 to A4, 5.5" x 8.5" , 8.5" x 11"			
	NA 3-holes	SEF	A3, B4, 11" x	(17"		
	14A 5-Holes	LEF	A4, B5, 8.5"	x 11"		
Paper	EU 2-holes	SEF	A5 to A3, 5.5" x 8.5" to 11" x 17"			
Sizes	LO 2-110163	LEF	A5 to A4, 5.5" x 8.5", 8.5" x 11"			
	EU 4-holes		A3, B4, 11"x	17"		
	20 4 110103	LEF	A4, B5, 8.5" x 11"			
	Scandinavia 4-	SEF	A5 to A3, 5.5	" x 8.5" to 11" x 17"		
	holes		A5 to A4, 5.5" x 8.5", 8.5" x 11"			

1

Output Jogger Unit (B703)

This jogger unit is installed above the shift tray of the Finisher SR4080.

Paper Size:	
Paper Weight:	
Tray Capacity:	250 sheets (80 g/m ² , 20 lb., A4 / LT)
Power Source:	
Power Consumption:	
Weight:	
Size (W x D x H):	

2. Appendix: PM Tables

Maintenance Tables

Amounts mentioned as the PM interval indicate the number of prints.

Mainframe

Chart: A4 (LT)/5%

Mode: 4 copies / original (prints/job)

Ratio 30%

Environment: Normal temperature and humidity

Yield may change depending on circumstances and print conditions.

Symbol keys: C: Clean, R: Replace, L: Lubricant, I: Inspect

ltem	160K	320K	800K	EM	Remarks	
Drum (OPC) Area						
Charge Roller	R					
Charge Roller Cleaning Roller	R					
Drum Cleaning Blade 1	R					
Side Seal	С					
Cleaning Entrance Seal	С				Blower brush	
OPC Drum	R			I	Perform SP3-001-2 after the replacement.	
Pick-off Pawls	R					
Spurs	С			I	Dry cloth	
Quenching Lamp		С				
ID Sensor	С			I	Perform SP3-001-2 after blower brush cleaning.	
Development Unit		1			1	

ltem	160K	320K	800K	EM	Remarks
Development Case	С			I	Dry cloth
Development Drive Gears				I	Dry cloth
Development Filter	R				
Developer	R			I	
Entrance Seal	С			I	
Side Seal	С				
Development Sleeve	С				Dry cloth
Transfer Belt Unit					
Transfer Belt	R				
Transfer Belt Cleaning Blade	R				Dry cloth To prevent damage to the cleaning blade, always replace these items together.
Transfer Belt Rollers	С				Dry cloth
Entrance Seal	С				Dry cloth
Used Toner Tank	С				Empty the tank
Seal (for paper dust)	С				
Transfer Entrance Guide	С			С	Dry cloth
Fusing Unit	,				
Hot Roller	R				
Pressure Roller	R				
Fusing Thermistors	R				
-	R				Blower brush or dry cloth
Cleaning Roller	С				

ltem	160K	320K	800K	EM	Remarks
Cleaning Roller Bushings	L				Grease: Barrierta JFE 55/2
Fusing Entrance and Exit Guide Plates	С				Damp cloth Water / Alcohol
-	R				
Brake Pad		R			
-		R			
Paper Feed					
Registration Roller	С			I	Damp cloth
Registration Sensor	С			I	Blower brush
Dust Blades	С			I	Detach and tap gently on flat surface to empty. Blower brush.
Feed Rollers	1			I	Damp cloth
Pick-up Belts	I			I	Damp cloth
Separation Rollers	I			I	Damp cloth
By-pass Feed Roller	I			I	Damp cloth
By-pass Pick-up Roller	I			I	Damp cloth
By-pass Separation Roller	I			I	Damp cloth
Paper Feed Guides	1			I	Blower brush or dry cloth
Relay Rollers	1			I	Damp cloth
Bottom Plate Pad	I			I	Damp cloth
Bottom Plate Pad (By-pass feed)	I			I	Damp cloth
By-pass Feed Roller Gear	L			I	Silicone Grease G-501
Relay Sensors	С			I	Blower brush

ltem	160K	320K	800K	EM	Remarks
Paper Feed Sensors	I			I	Blower brush
Duplex Unit					
Inverter Rollers	I			I	Damp cloth
Transport Rollers	I			I	Damp cloth
Entrance Sensor	I			ı	Blower brush
Exit Sensor	С			ı	Blower brush
Paper Exit					
Paper Exit Sensor	I			ı	Blower brush
Junction Gate Jam sensor	С			ı	Blower brush
Fusing Exit Sensor	I			I	Blower brush
Paper Exit Rollers	I			I	Damp cloth
Junction Transport Roller	I			I	Damp cloth
Paper Exit Guide	I			I	Damp cloth

Options

Amounts mentioned as the PM interval indicate the number of prints/ originals.

Symbol key: C: Clean, R: Replace, L: Lubricate, I: Inspect

Paper Feed Unit (D580)

ltem	EM	Remarks
Feed Roller	С	Dry cloth
Separation Roller	С	Dry cloth
Pick-up Roller	С	Dry cloth
Paper Feed Sensor	С	Dry cloth
Relay Sensor	С	Dry cloth

Item	EM	Remarks
Relay Roller	С	Damp cloth
Bottom Plate Pad	С	Damp cloth

1200-Sheet LCT (D631)

ltem	EM	Remarks
Feed Roller	С	Dry cloth
Separation Roller	С	Dry cloth
Pick-up Roller	С	Dry cloth
Paper Feed Sensor	С	Dry cloth
Relay Sensor	С	Dry cloth
Relay Roller	С	Damp cloth
Bottom Plate Pad	С	Damp cloth

2000-Sheet LCT (D581)

Item	EM	Remarks
Feed Roller	С	Dry cloth
Separation Roller	С	Dry cloth
Pick-up Roller	С	Dry cloth
Paper Feed Sensor	С	Dry cloth
Relay Sensor	С	Dry cloth
Relay Roller	С	Damp cloth
Bottom Plate Pad	С	Damp cloth

1000-Sheet Finisher (D588)

ltem	150K	300K	450K	EM	Remarks
Rollers				С	Damp cloth (Water / Alcohol)
Discharge Brush	С			С	Dry cloth
Sensors				С	Blower brush
Jogger Fences	I			ı	Replace if required

3000-Sheet Finisher (D636)

ltem	EM	Remarks
Rollers	С	Damp cloth (Water / Alcohol)
Discharge Brush	С	Dry cloth
Sensors	С	Blower brush
Jogger Fences	I	Replace if required

3000-Sheet Finisher Punch Unit (D570)

Item	EM	Remarks
Punch Chads	С	Discard chads

Bridge Unit (D634)

ltem	EM	Remarks
Rollers	С	Damp cloth (Water / Alcohol)
Copy Tray	С	Dry or damp cloth
Sensors	С	Blower brush

3. Appendix: Service Program Mode Tables

Service SP Tables

SP1-xxx

1001	Bit Swi	Bit Switch				
001	Bit Swi	tch 1	0	1		
	bit 0	DFU	-	-		
	bit 1	DFU	-	-		
	bit 2	DFU	-	-		
	bit 3	No I/O Timeout	0: Disable	1: Enable		
		Enable: The MFP I/O Timeout setting will have no effect. I/O Timeouts will never occur.				
	bit 4	SD Card Save Mode	0: Disable	1: Enable		
		Enable: Print jobs will be saved to an SD Card in the	GW SD slot.			
	bit 5	DFU	-	-		
	bit 6	DFU	-	-		
	bit 7	[RPCS,PCL]: Printable area frame border	0: Disable	1: Enable		
		Enable: The machine prints all RPCS and PCL jobs w printable area.	ith a border on	the edges of the		

1001 Bit Switch

002	Bit Swit	rch 2	0	1		
	bit 0	DFU	-	-		
	bit 1	DFU	-	-		
	bit 2	Applying a collation Type	Shift Collate	Normal Collate		
		A collation type (shift or normal) will be applied to a a 'Collate Type' configured.	ll jobs that do r	not already have		
		●Note				
		If #5-0 is enabled, this Bit Switch has no effect.				
	bit 3	[PCL5e/c,PS]: PDL Auto Switching	0: Enable	1: Disable		
		Disable: The MFPs ability to change the PDL processor mid-job.				
	Some host systems submit jobs that contain both PS and PCL5e/c. If An switching is disabled, these jobs will not be printed properly.					
	bit 4	DFU	-	-		
	bit 5	DFU	-	-		
	bit 6	DFU	-			
	bit 7	DFU	-	-		

1001	Bit Switch
------	------------

003	Bit Swi	tch 3	0	1
	bit 0	DFU	-	-
	bit 1	DFU	-	-
	bit 2	[PCL5e/c]: Legacy HP compatibility	0: Disable	1: Enable
	Enable: Uses the same left margin as older HP models such as HP4000/H In other words, the left margin defined in the job (usually " <esc>*r0A") wi changed to "<esc>*r1A"</esc></esc>			
	bit 3	DFU	-	-
	bit 4	DFU	-	-
	bit 5	DFU	-	-
	bit 6	DFU	-	-
	bit 7	DFU	-	-

1001	Bit Swit	Bit Switch			
004	Bit Switch 4		0	1	
	bit 0	DFU	-	-	
	bit 1	DFU	-	-	
	bit 2	DFU	-	-	
	bit 3	IPDS print-side reversal	0: Disable	1: Enable	
		Enable: Increases printing speed but simplex pages may be printed on the back side of the sheet.			
	bit 4	DFU	-	-	
	bit 5 DFU		-	-	
	bit 6	DFU	-	-	
	bit 7	IPDS support tools	0: Disable	1: Enable	
		Enable: Enables the port for IPDS support tools.			

|--|

005	Bit Swi	Bit Switch 5		1
		Show "Collate Type", "Staple Type" and "Punch Type" buttons on the operation panel.	Disable	Enable
	bit 0	If enabled, users will be able to configure a Collate Type from the operation panel. The available types configured options.		•
		After enabling the function, the settings will appear u	under:	
		"User Tools > Printer Features > System"		
	bit 1	Multiple copies if a paper size or type mismatch occurs	0: Disable (Single copy)	1: Enable (Multiple copy)
	If a paper size or type mismatch occurs during the printing of multiple copies, only single copy is output by default. Using this Bit Switch, the device can be configure to print all copies even if a paper mismatch occurs.			
	bit 2	Prevent SDK applications from altering the contents of a job	0: Disable	1: Enable
	If this BitSw is enabled, SDK applications will not be able to alter print data. The achieved by preventing SDK applications from accessing a module called the Filter".			
		Note: The main purpose of this BitSw is for troublesh applications on data.	ooting the effec	cts of SDK
	bit 3	[PS] PS Criteria	Pattern3	Pattern 1
		Change the number of PS criterion used by the PS in job is PS data or not.	nterpreter to de	termine whether a
		Pattern3: includes most PS commands.		
		Pattern1: A small number of PS tags and headers		
	bit 4	Increase max number of the stored jobs to 1000 jobs.	Disable (100)	Enable (1000)
		Enable: Changes the maximum number of jobs the Job Type settings to 1000. The default is 100.	at can be store	d on the HDD via
	bit 5	DFU	_	_

bit 6	Method for determining the image rotation for the edge to bind on.	0: Disable	1: Enable
	If enabled, the image rotation will be performed as they were in the specifications of older models for the binding of pages of mixed orientation jobs.		
	The old models are below:		
	- PCL: Pre-04A models		
	- PS/PDF/RPCS:Pre-05S models		
bit 7	Letterhead mode printing	0: Disable	1: Enable (Duplex)
	Routes all pages through the duplex unit.		
If this is disabled, simplex pages or the last page of an odd-paged duplex job not routed through the duplex unit. This could result in problems with letterhead, printed pages.			
	Only affects pages specified as Letterhead paper.		

006	Bit Swit	rch 6 DFU	-	-			
1001							
1001	Bit Swit	rch					
007	Bit Swit	Bit Switch 7 0 1					
		Print path	0: Disable	1: Enable			
	bit 0 If enabled, simplex pages (in mixed simplex/duplex PS/PCL5 jobs only) and the last page of an odd paged duplex job (PS, PCL5, PCL6), are always routed through the duplex unit. Not having to switch paper paths increases the print speed slightly.						
	bit 1 to 7	DFU	-	-			

1001

Bit Switch

1001	Bit Swit	Bit Switch		
008	Bit Switch 8 DFU		-	-
	bit 0 to 3	DFU	-	-

	bit 4	PCL edge to edge printing setting	0: Disable (Standard)	1: Enable (BMS)
Switches the edge to edge printing setting for custom-made machines (BMS).				es (BMS).
	bit 5 to 7	DFU	-	-

1001	Bit Swi	Bit Switch			
009	Bit Switch 9		0	1	
	bit 0	PDL Auto Detection timeout of jobs submitted via USB or Parallel Port (IEEE 1284).	"Disabled (Immediatel y)"	"Enabled (10 seconds)"	
	Sil C	To be used if PDL auto-detection fails. A failure of PDL autodetection doesn't necessarily mean that the job can't be printed. This bit switch tells the device whether to time-out immediately (default) upon failure or to wait 10 seconds.			
	bit 1	DFU	-	-	
	bit 2	Job Cancel	Disabled (Not cancelled)	Enabled (Cancelled)	
		If this bit switch, all jobs will be cancelled after a jam occurs. Note: If this bitsw is enabled, printing under the following conditions might result in problems: - Job submission via USB or Parallel Port - Spool printing (WIM >Configuration > Device Settings > System)			
	bit 3	PCL/PS bypass tray paper rotation (SEF/LEF)	0: Disable	1: Enable	
	This bitsw causes the device to revert to the behavior of previous generations. It only takes effect if "Bypass Tray Setting Priority" = "Driver/Command". Previous spec (bitsw=1): If a standard sized paper mismatch occurred in the bypass tray, the MFP always prompted for SEF paper. If this bitsw=0 (default) then in the event of a standard sized paper mismatch, the MFP will always prompt for paper of the rotation (SEF/LEF) determined by the MFP bypass tray paper setting or by the bypass tray sensor.				

bit 4	Response to PJL USTATUS when multiple collated copies are printed	0: Disable	1: Enable	
	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	ATUS with the number of pages in the current copy. Instead the total number of pages for all copies.		
Bit 5 to 7	DFU	-	-	

1001	Bit Swit	Bit Switch			
010	Bit Switch 10		0	1	
	bit 0 to 4	DFU	-	-	
	bit 5	List / Test Print Lock	0: Disable	1: Enable	
		If enabled, you can lock or unlock the [List/Test Print] items under the Pinter Features menu when the Store and Skip Errored Job Function is on.			
	Bit 6	Optional charge machines	-	-	
		If enabled, you can use the optional charge machines when the Store and Skip Errored Job Function is on.	0: Disable	1: Enable	
	Bit 7	DFU	-	-	

1001	Bit Swi	Bit Switch			
011	Bit Switch 11 0			1	
	bit 0 List / Test Print menu		0: Disable	1: Enable	
	When enabled, the [Multiple Lists] menu is displayed in [List / Test Print] under the Printer Features menu.				
	bit 1	Interrupt printing	0: Job	1: Page	
		Selects the units for the interrupt printing function. When you select "0," you can interrupt printing of a job while being processed.			
		When you select "1," you can interrupt printing of a	page while be	ing processed.	

Bit 2	DFU		
to 7		-	-

1001	Bit Switch			
012	Bit Switch 12		0	1
	bit 0 to 7	DFU	-	-

1003	[Clear Setting]	
1000 001	Initialize Printer System	
1003 001	Initializes settings in the "System" menu of the user mode.	
1003 003 Delete Program		

1004	[Print Summary]	
1004001	Print Printer Summary	
1004 001	Prints the service summary sheet (a summary of all the controller settings).	

1005	
1005 002	

1007	[Supply Info.]
	[0 to 1 / 1]
1007 001	0: Displays the info.
	1: Does not display the info.

1110	[Media Print Device Setting]	
1110 002	0: Disable 1: Enable	Selects the setting for the media print device.

1111	[All Job Delete Mode]
------	-----------------------

я
ж

1111 001	0: Excluding New Job	Selects whether to include an image processing job in jobs subject to full cancellation from the SCS job list.
----------	----------------------	--

Engine SP Tables-1

SP1-xxx: Feed

	Leading Edge Registration		
1001*	Adjusts the leading edge registration by changing the registration clutch operation timing.		
001	Tray: Plain		
002	Tray: Thick 1		
003	Tray: Thick 2		
004	By-pass: Plain	[0 - 0 / 0 / 0]]	
005	By-pass: Thick 1	[-9 to 9/ 0 / 0.1 mm step]	
006	By-pass: Thick 2		
007	Duplex: Plain		
008	Duplex: Thick 1		

	Side-to-Side Registration		
1002*	Adjusts the side to side registration by changing the laser main scan start position for each mode.		
001	By-pass		
002	Tray 1		
003	Tray 2		
004	Tray 3	[-4 to 4/0/0.1 mm step]	
005	Tray 4		
006	LCT		
007	Duplex		

	Registration Buckle Adjustment Adjusts the paper feed motor timing. Paper feed motor timing determines the amount of paper buckle at Registration. (A "+" setting causes more buckling.)		
1003*			
001	Tray 1: Plain		
002	Tray 1: Thick 1		
003	Tray 1: Thick 2		
004	Tray 2, 3, 4: Plain	[-9 to 5 / -4 / 1 mm step]	
005	Tray 2, 3, 4: Thick1		
006	Tray 2, 3, 4: Thick2	-	
007	By-pass: Plain		
008	By-pass: Thick 1	[-9 to 5 / -2 / 1 mm step]	
009	By-pass: Thick 2		
010	Duplex: Plain	[-9 to 5 / -4 / 1 mm step]	
011	Duplex: Thick 1	[-9 to 5 / -3 / 1 mm step]	
012	LCT: Plain		
013	LCT: Thick 1	[-9 to 5 / -4 / 1 mm step]	
014	LCT: Thick2		

By-pass Paper Size Detection Controls paper size detection for the by-pass feed table.		
		or the by-pass feed table.
001	Detection Timing [-15 to 15 / 0 / 5 mm step]	
002	LG Detection	[0 to 1 / 0 / 1] 0: LT SEF, 1: LG

	Fusing Idling	
1103*	Switches fusing idling on/off. When on, printing will not start until enough time has elapsed so the hot roller can reach optimum temperature. This ensures even heat on the hot roller.	
	Switch on if fusing on the 1st and 2nd copies is incomplete (this may occur if the is cold.). You must switch SP1103-1 ON before you set the fusing interval with SP1103-2.	
001	Enable Fusing Idling	0 = Off , 1 = On
002	Interval	[0 to 60 / 30 / 1 sec.]
003	Idling Time at Every Job	Sets the machine to fusing idling only for 30 sec. for every job (when the original is set on the ARDF, when the ARDF cover is opened, etc.) and the fusing unit has reached the reload temperature (optimum temperature for operation). [0 to 30 / 0 / 1 sec.] 0: No idling done before a job.

Fusing Temperature Control

On-Off/Phase

Selects the fusing temperature control method. After changing this setting, be sure to turn the machine off and on again with the main power switch to enable the new setting.

[0 to 1 / 0 / 1]

O: Normal (ON/OFF control). Allows full application from ac power supply to bring the hot roller up to the target fusing temperature then shuts off. Determines the on-time from the present temperature (detected by the thermistor on the hot roller) and the temperature of 1 cycle before.

1104*

1: Phase (hysterisis) control. Sets the upper and lower limits for the temperature; at the lower temperature the fusing lamp is on and at the higher temperature the fusing lamp is off.

Change this setting to "0" only if the user has excessive electrical noise or interference on the power supply line. Such interference can cause voltage to drop when power is applied using the ON/OFF control method.

Interference can be caused by the general poor quality of the power supply lines, or if the machine is sharing a power supply with other electrical devices such as fluorescent lights. Before changing this setting, make sure that the machine is connected to a power supply not shared by other electrical equipment.



 Selecting Phase control ("1") could cause the fusing temperature control board to emit low pitched noise

Fusing Temperature Adjustment Allows adjustment of the hot roller temperature at the center and ends of the roller for the quality or thickness of the paper. The hot roller in this machine has two fusing lamps: one heats the center of the roller, the other heats both ends. Each fusing lamp can be adjusted separately. The "re-load temperature" is the "print ready temperature". When the fusing temperature exceeds this setting, the machine can operate. Do not set up a re-load temperature (Re-load Temp. = Fusing. Temp – SP Value.) that is higher than the SP1-105-2 setting. Roller Center [100 to 170 / 150 / 1 deg] Adjusts the fusing temperature at the center of the hot roller.

002	Roller Ends	[100 to 170 /	155 / 1 deg]	
002	Adjusts the fusing temperature at the ends of the hot roller.			
	Re-load Temp. Minus: Roller Center		[0 to 60 / 0 / 1 deg]	
	Sets the reload temperature for the target temperature.	center of the hot	roller. This setting depends on the	
003	Reload temp. = Target Temp – This	SP Setting		
	U Note			
	Do not set a temperature that i Trays)	s higher than the	setting for SP1105 1 (Roller Center:	
	Re-load Temp. Minus: Roller Ends		[0 to 60 / 0 / 1 deg]	
	Sets the reload temperature for the target temperature.	ends of the hot re	oller. This setting depends on the	
004	Reload temp. = Target Temp – This SP Setting			
	↓ Note			
	 Do not set a temperature that is higher than the setting for SP1105 2 (Roller Ends: Trays) 			
005 to 022	The following SPs adjust the fusing temperature at the center or ends of the hot roller for each paper type.			
005	Roller Center: M-Thick	[100 to 1	70 / 155 / 1 deg]	
006	Roller Ends: M-Thick	[100 to 1	70 / 160 / 1 deg]	
007	Roller Center: Thick 1	[100:	170 / 100 / 1 1	
008	Roller Ends: Thick 1	[100 to	170 / 130 / 1 deg]	
009	Roller Center: Thick 2	[100	170 /450 / 1 1	
010	Wait Temp: Center Minus	[100 to	170 / 150 / 1 deg]	
011	Wait Temp: Ends Minus	[100 to 1	170 / 140 / 1 deg]	
012	Roller Ends: Thin	[100 to 1	70 / 145 / 1 deg]	
013	Roller Center: OHP: Plain	[100 to 1	70 / 150 / 1 deg]	
014	Roller Ends: OHP: Plain		/ /	
015	Roller Center: OHP: Thick	[100 to 1	170 / 155 / 1 deg]	

016	Roller Ends: OHP: Thick	[100 to 170 / 160 / 1 deg]
017	Roller Center: Special 1	[100 to 170 / 150 / 1 deg]
018	Roller Ends: Special 1	[100 to 170 / 155 / 1 deg]
019	Roller Center: Special 2	[100 to 170 / 150 / 1 deg]
020	Roller Ends: Special 2	[100 to 170 / 155 / 1 deg]
021	Roller Center: Special 3	[100 to 170 / 150 / 1 deg]
022	Roller Ends: Special 3	[100 to 170 / 155 / 1 deg]
023	Feed Waiting: Plain	Turns the feed waiting mode on or off for each
024	Feed Waiting: M-Thick	paper type. [0 to 1 / 0 / 1]
025	Feed Waiting: Thick 1	0=Off, 1=On
026	Feed Waiting: Thick 2	The paper waits at the registration roller until
027	Feed Waiting: Thin	the fusing temperature reaches the prescribed temperature (adjustable with SP1105-028 to -37). If you enable this feature, also set SP 1105-38 to a convenient value for the customer.
028	Feed Wait: Center Minus: Plain	
029	Feed Wait: Ends Minus: Plain	
030	Feed Wait: Center Minus: M-Thick	
031	Feed Wait: Ends Minus: M-Thick	
032	Feed Wait: Center Minus: Thick 1	Adjusts the offset value for each re-load temperature to exit the feed waiting mode.
033	Feed Wait: Ends Minus: Thick 1	[0 to 60 / 0 / 1 deg]
034	Feed Wait: Center Minus: Thick 2	
035	Feed Wait: Ends Minus: Thick 2	
036	Feed Wait: Center Minus: Thin	
037	Feed Wait: Ends Minus: Thin	

		Sets the maximum feed waiting time.
038 Feed Waiting: Maximum Time	[0 to 30 / 0 / 1 sec]	
	Feed Waiting: Maximum Time	The paper is fed when the time specified with this SP has passed even though the fusing temperature has not reached the prescribed
		temperature.
		0: Disabled.

1106	Fusing Temperature Display	
001	Roller Center	Displays the temperature of the fusing unit.
002	Roller Ends	[-20 to 250 / 0 / 1 deg]
003	Machine Inside at Power On	Displays the temperature inside the machine.
004	Machine Inside	[-20 to 250 / 0 / 1 deg]

1109	Fusing Nip Band Check	
1109	Checks the fusing nip band.	
001	Execution	
002*	Idling Rotation Time	[0 to 120 / 60 / 1 sec]
	Specifies the fusing rotation time before executing SP1109-001.	
003*	Pre-Idling Time	[5 to 30 / 10 / 1 sec]
003	Specifies the time that the paper stops in the fusing unit for measuring the nip.	

1159*	Fusing Jam Detection	
1139	SC Display	

[0 to 1 / 0 / 1] 0:OFF, 1:ON

This SP setting determines whether SC559 is issued after three paper late jams occur in the fusing unit. After this SP code is turned on, a counter monitors the number of paper late jams that occur in the fusing unit. After the 3rd occurrence of a fusing jam, SC559 is issued and the machine cannot be used until the service technician releases the error.

U Note

Switching the machine off/on does not reset this jam counter. The counter is reset
after the cause of the jam has been removed and a sheet of paper successfully
passes the fusing exit sensor.

	MotorSpeedAdjust		
	Adjusts the speeds of each motor. Each step decreases or increases motor speed in 0.05% increments		
	Regist: Registration motor, Feed: Feed motor,		
1801*	Duplex: Duplex/By-pass motor, Inve	erter: Duplex inverter motor,	
	Exit: Paper exit motor, Bridge: Bridge unit drive motor,		
	OpcMot: Drum motor, TransferMot:	Transfer/Development Motor,	
	FusingMot: Fusing motor, DevPuddleMot: Development Paddle motor		
001	Regist: 90: Thick 2		
002	Regist: 154: Thick 1	[-2 to 2 / 0.4 / 0.05 %]	
003	Regist: 180: Plain	[-2 10 2 / 0.4 / 0.03 %]	
004	Regist: 230: Plain		
005	Feed: 90: Thick 2	[-2 to 2 / -0.4 / 0.05 %]	
006	Feed: 154: Thick 1	[-2 10 2 / -0.4 / 0.00 /0]	
007	Feed: 180: Plain	[-2 to 2 / -1 / 0.05 %]	
008	Feed: 230: Plain	[-2 10 2 / -1 / 0.03 /6]	
009	Duplex_CW: 90: Thick 2	[-4 to 4 / 0.4 / 0.1 %]	
010	Duplex_CW: 154: Thick 1	[- 10 - 7 0.4 / 0.1 /0]	

0.7.7	D 01/120 Pl :		
011	Duplex_CW: 180: Plain	[-4 to 4 / -2.3 / 0.1 %]	
012	Duplex_CW: 230: Plain		
013	Duplex_CCW: 90: Thick 2	[-4 to 4 / 0.4 / 0.1 %]	
014	Duplex_CCW: 154: Thick 1	[-410 47 0.47 0.170]	
015	Duplex_CCW: 180: Plain	[-4 to 4 / -0.2 / 0.1 %]	
016	Duplex_CCW: 230: Plain	[-4104/-0.2/0.1%]	
017	Inverter_CW: 90: Thick 2		
018	Inverter_CW: 154: Thick 1		
019	Inverter_CW: 180: Plain		
020	Inverter_CW: 230: Plain		
021	Inverter_CCW: 90: Thick 2		
022	Inverter_CCW: 154: Thick 1		
023	Inverter_CCW: 180: Plain		
024	Inverter_CCW: 230: Plain	[4 4 / 0 / 0 1 9/]	
025	Exit_CW: 90: Thick 2	[-4 to 4 / 0 / 0.1 %]	
026	Exit_CW: 154: Thick 1		
027	Exit_CW: 180: Plain		
028	Exit_CW: 230: Plain		
029	Bridge: 90: Thick 2		
030	Bridge: 154: Thick 1		
031	Bridge: 180: Plain		
032	Bridge: 230: Plain		

033	OpcMot:90	
034	OpcMot:154	
035	OpcMot:180	
036	OpcMot:230	
037	TransferMot:90	
038	TransferMot: 154	[-4 to 4 / 0 / 0.01 %]
039	TransferMot: 180	[-4104/0/0.01%]
040	TransferMot:230	
041	FusingMot:90	
042	FusingMot:154	
043	FusingMot: 180	
044	FusingMot:230	
045	DevPuddleMot	[-4 to 4 / 0 / 0.1 %]

1902*	Cleaning Web Setting	
001	Web Consumption	[0 to 120 / 0 / 1 %]
001	Displays the consumed amount of the	web roll.
002	Web Motor Interval	[3 to 130 / 6.7 / 0.1 sec]
002	Adjusts the interval for web motor rotation.	
003	Web Motor Time	[0.3 to 10 / 4.2 / 0.1 sec]
003	Adjusts the rotation time of the web motor.	
	Web Near End Setting	EU [0 to 100 / 90 / 1 %]
004		ASIA/NA [0 to 100 / 92 / 1 %]
	Adjusts the threshold for web near end.	
005	Web Motor Interval: Thick 1	[3 to 130 / 11.2 / 0.1 sec]
003	Adjusts the interval for web motor rotation (thick 1).	

006	Web Motor Interval: Thick 2	[3 to 130 / 16.8 / 0.1 sec]	
008	Adjusts the interval for web motor rotation (thick 2).		
	Paper Interval Time	[0 to 10 / 5 / 1 sec]	
007	Adjusts the threshold for paper feeding. When the time between trailing edge detection and leading edge detection is within the value of this setting, the machine determines that the paper is still being fed.		
008	Web Motor Setting: Web End	[0 to 60 / 27 / 1 sec]	
008	Adjusts the motor rotation time after the web end.		
009	Web Motor Rotation: Power On	[0 to 10 / 0 / 1 times]	
009	Adjusts the number of web motor rotations at the re-load state.		
010	Web Motor Interval: Pre-idle	[0 to 30 / 0 / 1 sec]	
010	Adjusts the motor waiting time after the fusing motor idling.		
011	Web Motor Rotation: Pre-idle	[0 to 10 / 0 / 1 times]	
011	Adjusts the number of web motor rotations at the fusing idling state.		

1903	Cleaning Web Setting	
001	Total Paper Counter	[0 to 999999999 / 0 / 1 sec]
001	Displays the total paper feeding time.	
000	Total Web Motor Drive Time	[0 to 999999999 / 0 / 1 sec]
002	Displays the total time of web motor rotation.	

1904	FusingDuplex Set	
001	Set 0:Off/1:On	[0 or 1 / 0 / 1]
001	0:Off/1:On	
002	Aft Reload ChgTime	[0 to 999 / 20 / 1 sec]

1907* Paper Feed Timing Adj. (DFU)

001	Feed Solenoid ON: Plain	
002	Feed Solenoid ON: Thick	[-10 to 40 / 0 / 2.5 mm]
003	Feed Solenoid OFF: Plain	
004	Feed Solenoid OFF: Thick	
005	Feed Clutch ON: Plain	
006	Feed Clutch ON: Thick	[-10 to 10 / 0 / 1 mm]
007	Stop Position before Inverter	
008	Stop Position after Inverter	
009	Re-Feed Stop Position	
010	By-pass Solenoid OFF	[0 to 40 / 0 / 1 mm]
011	By-pass Solenoid ON	[0 to 1 / 1 / 1 mm]
012	By-pass Feed Clutch ON	
013	Exit Roller: Shift: 180	
014	Exit Roller: Shift: 230	
015	Exit: Junction Solenoid ON	
016	Exit: Junction Solenoid OFF	[-10 to 10 / 0 / 1 mm]
017	Bridge: Junction Solenoid ON	
018	Bridge: Junction Solenoid OFF	
019	1-Bin: Junction Solenoid ON	
020	1-Bin: Junction Solenoid OFF	
021	Shift Motor ON	[-1 to 1 / 0 / 0.1 mm]
022	Re-Feed Stop Position S Size	[-10 to 10 / 0 / 1 mm]

1908*	F1 Plate Adjj (DFU)	
	Adjust the paper feed timing for the optional paper feed unit.	

001	A3,DLT:100%	[-10 to 10 / 0 / 1 mm]	
	Adjust the paper feed timing for plain paper.		
	000	A3,DLT:70%	[-10 to 10 / 0 / 1 mm]
002	Adjust the paper feed timing for thick paper.		

	CPM Down Setting		
1916*	When this machine gets a sequence of coping/printing jobs, the machine uses CPM down mode to prevent the fusing temperature from becoming too low.		
001	Temp.: Plain		
002	Temp.: M-Thick	Adjusts the thresholds for each	
003	Temp.: Thick 1	environmental condition (between Low and Medium).	
004	Temp.: Thick 2	[10 to 23 / 17 / 1 deg]	
005	Temp.: Thin		
006	ON/OFF: Low: Plain		
007	ON/OFF: Low: M-Thick		
008	ON/OFF: Low: Thick 1		
009	ON/OFF: Low: Thick 2	Turns on or off the CPM down setting for	
010	ON/OFF: Low: Thin	each paper type and ambient temperature.	
011	ON/OFF: Medium: Plain	[0 to 1 / 0 / 1]	
012	ON/OFF: Medium: M-Thick	0= Off, 1= On	
013	ON/OFF: Medium:: Thick 1		
014	ON/OFF: Medium: Thick 2		
015	ON/OFF: Medium: Thin		

016	Waiting Time: Low: Plain	
017	Waiting Time: Low: M-Thick	
018	Waiting Time: Low: Thick 1	
019	Waiting Time: Low: Thick 2	Adjusts the threshold time to enter the CPM
020	Waiting Time: Low: Thin	down mode. [0 to 180 / 60 / 1 sec]
021	Waiting Time: Medium: Plain	The machine determines whether the CPM
022	Waiting Time: Medium: M-Thick	down mode is activated or not after the time specified with these SPs has passed.
023	Waiting Time: Medium: Thick 1	
024	Waiting Time: Medium: Thick 2	
025	Waiting Time: Medium: Thin	
026	Temp.: Low: Plain	
027	Temp.: Low: M-Thick	
028	Temp.: Low: Thick 1	
029	Temp.: Low: Thick 2	Adjusts the threshold temperature of the fusing unit to enter the CPM down mode.
030	Temp.: Low: Thin	[100 to 200 / 120 / 1 deg]
031	Temp.: Medium: Plain	If the temperature of the fusing unit is less than the temperature specified with these
032	Temp.: Medium: M-Thick	SPs, the machine changes the CPM
033	Temp.: Medium: Thick 1	(adjustable with SP1916-36 to -45).
034	Temp.: Medium: Thick 2	
035	Temp.: Medium: Thin	
036	CPM: Low: Plain	Adjusts the CPM in the CPM down mode. [30 to 45 / 45 / 5 cpm]
037	CPM: Low: M-Thick	Adjusts the CPM in the CPM down mode. [30 to 45 / 45 / 5 cpm]
038	CPM: Low: Thick 1	Adjusts the CPM in the CPM down mode. [5 to 25 / 25 / 5 cpm]

039	CPM: Low: Thick 2	Adjusts the CPM in the CPM down mode. [5 to 15 / 15 / 5 cpm]
040	CPM: Low: Thin	
041	CPM: Medium: Plain	Adjusts the CPM in the CPM down mode. [30 to 45 / 45 / 5 cpm]
042	CPM: Medium: M-Thick	[coloud / 40 / copin]
043	CPM: Medium: Thick 1	Adjusts the CPM in the CPM down mode. [5 to 25 / 25 / 5 cpm]
044	CPM: Medium: Thick 2	Adjusts the CPM in the CPM down mode. [5 to 15 / 15 / 5 cpm]
045	CPM: Medium: Thin	Adjusts the CPM in the CPM down mode. [30 to 45 / 45 / 5 cpm]

1930*	OnOff Time Adjust	
	On Time Adjust	[0 to 100 / 40 / 10 msec]
001	Adjusts the Off-On interval of the transfer belt contact motor. ("On" means that the transfer belt is in contact with the drum.)	
002	Off Time Adjust	[0 to 100 / 20 / 10 msec]
	Adjusts the On-Off interval of the transfer belt contact motor. ("Off" means that the transfer belt is away from the drum.)	

1950*	Tray Lock at Jam	[0 or 1 / 0 / 1] 0= OFF, 1= ON
	Not used	

Engine SP Tables-2

SP2-xxx: Drum

2001*	Charge Bias	
001	Setting (Copying)	[1000 to 2000 / 1500 / 10 V]
001	Adjusts the voltage applied to the charge roller for copying.	
	Setting (P Pattern)	[0 to 700 / 250 / 10 V]
002	Adjusts the voltage applied to the charge roller when making the VSDP ID sensor pattern (for charge roller voltage correction). The actual charge roller voltage is this value plus the value of SP2001-1.	

2005*	Bias Control		
	Bias Correction 1	[0.1 to 1 / 0.85 / 0.05 step]	
001	Adjusts the lower threshold value for the charge roller correction. When the value of VSDP/VSG is greater than this value, the charge roller voltage increases by 30 V (e.g., from -500 to -530).		
	Bias Correction 2	[0.1 to 1 / 0.9 / 0.05 step]	
002	Adjusts the upper threshold value for the charge roller correction. When the value of VSDP/VSG is greater than this value, the charge roller voltage decreases by 30 V (absolute value).		
003	Bias Adjustment 1	[1000 to 2000 / 1500 / 10 vol]	
003	Adjusts the lower limit value for charge roller voltage correction.		
004	Bias Adjustment 2	[1000 to 2000 / 2000 / 10 vol]	
004	Adjusts the upper limit value for charge roller voltage correction.		
005	Bias Adjustment 3	[0 to 100 / 30 / 10 vol]	
	Adjusts the correction voltage adjustment step size.		

2102*	Magnification Adjustment
-------	--------------------------

	001	Main Scan	[-2 to 2 / 0 / 0.1 %]
		Adjusts the magnification in the main scan direction for copy mode and printer mode.	
	002	Sub Scan	[-1 to 1 / 0 / 0.1%]
		Adjusts the magnification in the sub scan direction for copy mode and printer mode.	

	Erase Margin Adjustment	
2103*	Adjusts the erase margin by deleting image data at the margins. L Size: 297.1 mm or more (length) M Size: 216.1 to 297 mm (length) S Size: 216 mm or less (length)	
001	Leading Edge	
002	Trailing Edge	[0 to 9 / 3 / 0.1 mm]
003	Left	[0 to 9 / 2 / 0.1 mm]
004	Right	[0 10 9 / 2 / 0.1 mm]
005	Duplex Trail.: L Size: Plain	[0 to 4 / 1 / 0.1 mm]
006	Duplex Trail.: M Size: Plain	[0 to 4 / 0.8 / 0.1 mm]
007	Duplex Trail.: S Size: Plain	[0 to 4 / 0.6 / 0.1 mm]
008	Duplex Left: Plain	[04-15/ 03 /01]
009	Duplex Right: Plain	[0 to 1.5 / 0.3 / 0.1mm]
010	Duplex Trail.: L Size: Thick	[0 to 4 / 0.8 / 0.1 mm]
011	Duplex Trail.: M Size: Thick	[0 to 4 / 0.6 / 0.1 mm]
012	Duplex Trail.: S Size: Thick	[0 to 4 / 0.4 / 0.1 mm]
013	Duplex Left: Thick	[04-15/ 01 /01]
014	Duplex Right: Thick	[0 to 1.5 / 0.1 / 0.1mm]

	LD Power Adjustment(DFU)	
2105*	Adjusts the LD power for each mode. Each LD power setting is decided by the process control.	
001	LD1: Copy	[50 to 70 / 5 / 1]
002	LD2: Copy	[-50 to 79 / 5 / 1]
003	LD1: Printer/Fax	[50 to 70 / 5 /1]
004	LD2: Printer/Fax	[-50 to 79 / 5 / 1]

2106*	POL REV TIME (Polygon motor rotation time)	
	PRE TIME	[0 to 60 / 10 / 1 sec]
001	Adjusts the time of polygon motor rotation before a job. If this is set to "0", this SP is not activated.	
	POST TIME	[0 to 60 / 0 / 1 sec]
002	Adjusts the time of the polygon motor rotation after a job. If this is set to "0", the polygon motor never switches off in standby mode. However, if the machine enters the energy saver mode, the polygon motor will ignore the zero setting and switch itself off.	

2	109	Test Pattern	
	001	Pattern Selection	[0 to 24 / 0 / 1] Test pattern of the GAVD

	0: None 1: Vertical Line (1 dot) 2: Vertical Line (2 dot) 3: Horizontal Line (1 dot) 4: Horizontal Line (2 dot) 5: Grid Vertical Line 6: Grid Horizontal Line 7: Grid pattern small 8: Grid Pattern Large 9: Argyle Pattern Small 10: Argyle Pattern Large 11: Independent pattern	t) e (1 dot)	13: Independent Pattern (4 dot) 14: Trimming Area 15: Hound's Tooth Check (Vertical) 16: Hound's Tooth Check (Horizontal) 17: Black Band (Horizontal) 18: Black band (Vertical) 19: Checker Flag Pattern 20: Grayscale (Vertical Margin) 21: Grayscale (Horizontal Margin) 22: Two Beam Density Pattern 23: Full Dot Pattern
002	Density	· ·	of the test pattern which is output in this SP is not used for the Grayscale patterns.

2201*	Development Bias Adjustment	
001	Development Bias	[200 to 700 / 560 / 10V]
	Adjusts the development bias for copying. Use as a temporary measure to correct faint copies from an aging drum.	
000	ID Sensor Pattern [200 to 700 / 400 / 10V]	
002	Adjusts the development bias for the ID sensor pattern for VSP	

		Forced Toner Supply
2207		Forces the toner bottle to supply toner at 1-second intervals for up to 30 seconds. To start, press [EXECUTE].

	Toner Supply Mode	[0: Sensor, 1: pixel]
2208*	,	2 should be set to its default value. Use image pixel ary measure if the ID or TD sensor is defective.

2209*	Toner Supply Rate	
	Toner Rate	[10 to 800 / 60 mg/s / 5 mg]
001	Sets the amount of toner supplied every second by the toner supply motor. The lengt of time the motor remains on is determined by the data read by the TD sensor and IE sensor. Increasing this value reduces the toner supply clutch on time. Use a lower value if the user tends to make lots of copies that have a high proportion of black.	
	Correction Data	[25 to 300 / 300 / 25]
002	Displays the toner supply correction coefficient (K). It can also be used to adjust K, but the value is changed again when VT is measured for the next copy.	
	The toner supply rate depends on the amount of toner in the toner bottle. This change is corrected using this coefficient. This SP can be used to check the toner supply condition. The lower the value of K, the lower the toner density	

2210*	P Pattern Cycle	
2210	Sets the interval between ID sensor pattern prints.	
	Job Page Count [0 to 200 / 10 / 1 sheet]	
Sets the interval between ID sensor pattern printing. For users that do not me copies daily, set a smaller interval to compensate for the effects of seasons weather changes.		, , ,
	Forced Page Count [2 to 999 / 100 / 1 sheet]	
002*	Sets the interval between ID sensor pattern printing. Forces creation of the ID sensor pattern to prevent low density copies for customers who use the copier for long copy jobs.	

Toner End Setting Selects the detection type for toner end. [0 to 2 / 0 / 1 step] [0: 90 copies, 1: No copies, 2: 10 copies] **Note • 90 copies: Toner end is determined if a low density image (Vref < Vt(10)) is detected 90 times after toner near end. • If "1" is selected, the machine stops printing when the TD sensor output drops below the prescribed level. • Select 1 or 2 if the customer normally makes copies of very high density.

	Vref Setting
	Adjusts the TD sensor reference voltage (Vref). Change this value after replacing the development unit with another development unit that contains toner.
	[1 to 5 / 4 / 0.01]
2220*	 Check the value of SP2-220 in both the machine containing the test unit and the machine that you are going to move it to.
	Install the test development unit, and then input the VREF for this unit into SP2-220.
	3. After the test, put back the old development unit, and change SP2-220 back to the original value.

Reverse Interval Drum,Transfer	[0 to 2000 / 0 / 1 sheets]
Adjusts the threshold for the reverse rotation motors. This helps the drum and transfer by will interrupt a multiple printing job.	on of the drum and development/transfer elt cleaning operations. This reverse rotation

2223*	Vt Display	
001	Current	[0 to 5 / 4 / 0.01]
001	Displays the TD sensor output voltage for the immediately previous copy.	
	Average 10 copies	[0 to 5 / 4 / 0.01]
002	Displays the average of the most recent TD sensor outputs (from the previous 10 copies).	

003	Rate of Change	[-10000 to 10000 / 0 / 1]
	Displays the rate of change in the TD sensor output.	
004	GAIN	[0 to 255 / 0 / 1]
	Displays the GAIN value used to calculate the on time for the toner supply motor.	
005	Image Pixel Count	[0 to 255 / 0 / 1]
	Displays the image pixel count.	

	Developer Lot
2228*	Displays the lot number of the developer. (The lot number is embossed on the top edge of the developer pack.)

	Transfer Current Adjustment		
2301*	If the transfer current of image area is set highly than normal, the print image is easily come out. If the leading transfer current is set as same, the black line is come out due to exfoliation leave.		
001	Image Area: 1st Side	[10 to 100 / 45 / 1 µA]	
001	Adjusts the transfer current for pri	Adjusts the transfer current for printing the first side of the paper	
002	Image Area: 2nd Side	[10 to 100 / 40 / 1 µA]	
002	Adjusts the transfer current for printing the second side of the paper		
	Leading Edge: 1st Side	[10 to 100 / 20 / 1 µA]	
003	Adjusts the transfer current for copying at leading edge the first side of the paper.		
	Increase the current to separate the paper from the drum properly in high humidity and high temperature conditions.		
	Leading Edge: 2nd Side	[10 to 100 / 20 / 1 µA]	
004	Adjusts the transfer current for copying at leading edge the second side of the paper. Increase the current to separate the paper from the drum properly in high humidity and high temperature conditions.		

	By-pass: Image Area	[10 to 100 / 45 / 1 µA]
005	Adjusts the transfer current for copying from the by-pass tray.	
	If the user normally feeds thicker paper from the bypass tray, use a higher setting.	
	By-pass: Leading Edge	[10 to 100 / 20 / 1 µA]
006	Adjusts the transfer current for copying at the leading edge of paper fed from the bypass tray.	
	Increase the current to separate the paper from the drum properly in high humidity and high temperature conditions.	
008	No Image Area (SSP)	[10 to 100 / 15 / 1 µA]
	Adjusts the transfer current for copying.	

2309*	Current: Paper Size Correction (SSP)	
	Paper Lower Width (a)	[1 to 150 / 150 / 1 mm]
001	Adjusts the lower paper width threshold for the transfer current, charge voltage, and development bias corrections.	
	Use this SP when an image problem (e.g., insufficient toner transfer) occurs with a small width paper. If the paper width is smaller than this value, the transfer current will be multiplied by the factor in SP2-309-3 (paper tray) or SP2-309-5 (by-pass).	
	Paper Upper Width (a)	[151 to 296 / 216 / 1 mm]
002	Adjusts the upper paper width threshold for the transfer current, charge voltage, and development bias corrections. As for SP2-309-1, but the factors are in SP2-309-4 (paper tray) and SP2-309-6 (bypass).	
	Paper Tray: Plain (alpha)	[1 to 3 / 1 / 0.1]
003	Adjusts the transfer current correction coefficient used if the paper width is less than the setting of SP2-309-1.	
004	Paper Tray: Plain (beta)	[1 to 3 / 1 / 0.1]
	Adjusts the transfer current correction coefficient used if the paper width is less than the setting of SP2-309-2.	

	By-pass: Plain (gamma)	[1 to 3 / 1.1 / 0.1]
005	Adjusts the transfer current correction coefficient used if the paper width is less than the setting of SP2-309-1.	
	By-pass: Plain (delta)	[1 to 3 / 1.1 / 0.1]
006	Adjusts the transfer current correction coefficient used if the paper width is less than the setting of SP2-309-2.	
007	Paper Tray: Thick 1 (alpha)	[1, 2/1/01]
008	Paper Tray: Thick 1 (beta)	[1 to 3 / 1 / 0.1]
009	By-pass: Thick 1 (gamma)	[], 2 /11 /01]
010	By-pass: Thick 1 (delta)	[1 to 3 / 1.1 / 0.1]
011	Paper Tray: Thick 2 (alpha)	[1, 2/11/01]
012	Paper Tray: Thick 2 (beta)	[1 to 3 / 1.1 / 0.1]
013	By-pass: Thick 2 (gamma)	[], 2 /1 5 /0 1]
014	By-pass: Thick 2 (delta)	[1 to 3 / 1.5 / 0.1]
015	Paper Tray: M-Thick (alpha)	[12/1/01]
016	Paper Tray: M-Thick (beta)	[1 to 3 / 1 / 0.1]
017	By-pass: M-Thick (gamma)	[] - 2 / 1 1 / 0 1]
018	By-pass: M-Thick (delta)	[1 to 3 / 1.1 / 0.1]
019	Paper Tray: Thin (alpha)	[12/1/01]
020	Paper Tray: Thin (beta)	[1 to 3 / 1 / 0.1]
021	By-pass: Thin (gamma)	[], 2/11/01]
022	By-pass: Thin (delta)	[1 to 3 / 1.1 / 0.1]
023	Paper Tray: Special 1 (alpha)	[12 /1 /0.1]
024	Paper Tray: Special 1 (beta)	[1 to 3 / 1 / 0.1]
025	By-pass: Special 1 (gamma)	[], 2 /11 /01]
026	By-pass: Special 1 (delta)	[1 to 3 / 1.1 / 0.1]

027	Paper Tray: Special 2 (alpha)	[1 to 3 / 1 / 0.1]
028	Paper Tray: Special 2 (beta)	
029	By-pass: Special 2 (gamma)	[1 to 3 / 1.1 / 0.1]
030	By-pass: Special 2 (delta)	
031	Paper Tray: Special 3 (alpha)	[1 to 3 / 1 / 0.1]
032	Paper Tray: Special 3 (beta)	
033	By-pass: Special 3 (gamma)	[1 to 3 / 1.1 / 0.1]
034	By-pass: Special 3 (delta)	

	Current: Paper Type Correction (SSP)	
Adjusts the transfer current for each paper type. If the transfer area is set higher than normal, the print image easily contransfer current is set the same, black lines come out.		nage easily comes out. If the leading edge
001	Image 1st Side: Thick 1	[10 to 100 / 18 / 1 µA]
001	Adjusts the transfer current for the first side	e of the paper (Thick 1).
	Leading Edge 1st Side: Thick 1	[10 to 100 / 15 / 1 µA]
002	Adjusts the transfer current for the leading edge of the first side of the paper. Increase the current to separate the paper from the drum properly in high humidity and high temperature conditions (Thick 1).	
003	Image 2nd Side: Thick 1	[10 to 100 / 18 / 1 HA]
003	Adjusts the transfer current for the second side of the paper (Thick 1).	
	Leading Edge 2nd Side: Thick 1	[10 to 100 / 15 / 1 µA]
Adjusts the transfer current for the leading edge of the second side 1). Increase the current to separate the paper from the drum proper and high temperature conditions.		
005	Image: Thick 2	[10 to 100 / 18 / 1 µA]
005	Adjusts the transfer current (Thick 2).	

	Leading Edge: Thick 2	[10 to 100 / 15 / 1 µA]	
006	Adjusts the transfer current for the leading edge of paper (Thick 2). Increase the current to separate the paper from the drum properly in high humidity and high temperature conditions.		
007	Image: OHP	[10 to 100 / 20 / 1 µA]	
007	Adjusts the transfer current (OHP).		
	Leading Edge: OHP	[10 to 100 / 20 / 1 µA]	
008	Adjusts the transfer current for the leading edge of paper (OHP). Increase the current to separate the paper from the drum properly in high humidity and high temperature conditions.		
000	Image: Envelope	[10 to 100 / 20 / 1 µA]	
009	Adjusts the transfer current (Envelopes).		
	Leading Edge: Envelope	[10 to 100 / 20 / 1 µA]	
010	Adjusts the transfer current for the leading edge of paper (Envelopes). Increase the current to separate the paper from the drum properly in high humidity and high temperature conditions.		
011	Image 1st Side: M-Thick	[10 to 100 / 32 / 1 µA]	
011	Adjusts the transfer current for the first side of the paper (M-Thick).		
	Leading Edge 1st Side: M-Thick	[10 to 100 / 20 / 1 µA]	
012	Adjusts the transfer current for the leading edge of the first side of the paper (M-Th Increase the current to separate the paper from the drum properly in high humidity high temperature conditions.		
010	Image 2nd Side: M-Thick	[10 to 100 / 32 / 1 µA]	
013	Adjusts the transfer current for the second side of the paper (M-Thick).		
	Leading Edge 2nd Side: M-Thick	[10 to 100 / 20 / 1 µA]	
014	Adjusts the transfer current for the leading edge of the second side of the paper (M-Thick). Increase the current to separate the paper from the drum properly in high humidity and high temperature conditions.		
015	Image 1st Side: Special 1	[10 to 100 / 45 / 1 µA]	
Adjusts the transfer current for the first side of the paper (Special 1).		e of the paper (Special 1).	

	Leading Edge 1st Side: Special 1	[10 to 100 / 20 / 1 µA]	
016	Adjusts the transfer current for the leading edge of the first side of the paper (Special 1). Increase the current to separate the paper from the drum properly in high humidity and high temperature conditions.		
017	Image 2nd Side: Special 1	[10 to 100 / 40 / 1 µA]	
017	Adjusts the transfer current for the second	side of the paper (Special 1).	
	Leading Edge 2nd Side: Special 1	[10 to 100 / 20 / 1 µA]	
018	Adjusts the transfer current for the leading edge of the second side of the paper (Special 1). Increase the current to separate the paper from the drum properly in high humidity and high temperature conditions.		
010	Image 1st Side: Special 2	[10 to 100 / 32 / 1 µA]	
019	Adjusts the transfer current for the first side of the paper (Special 2).		
	Leading Edge 1st Side: Special 2	[10 to 100 / 32 / 1 µA]	
020	Adjusts the transfer current for the leading edge of the first side of the paper (Special 2). Increase the current to separate the paper from the drum properly in high humidity and high temperature conditions.		
001	Image 2nd Side: Special 2	[10 to 100 / 32 / 1 µA]	
021	Adjusts the transfer current for the second side of the paper (Special 2).		
	Leading Edge 2nd Side: Special 2	[10 to 100 / 32 / 1 µA]	
022	Adjusts the transfer current for the leading edge of the second side of the paper (Special 2). Increase the current to separate the paper from the drum properly in humidity and high temperature conditions.		
000	Image 1st Side: Special 3	[10 to 100 / 32 / 1 µA]	
023	Adjusts the transfer current for the first side of the paper (Special 3).		
	Leading Edge 1st Side: Special 3	10 to 100 / 32 / 1 ^µ A]	
Adjusts the transfer current for the leading edge of the first side of the paper 3). Increase the current to separate the paper from the drum properly in his and high temperature conditions.			
005	Image 2nd Side: Special 3	[10 to 100 / 32 / 1 µA]	
025	Adjusts the transfer current for the second side of the paper (Special 3).		

	Leading Edge 2nd Side: Special 3	[10 to 100 / 32 / 1 µA]
026	Adjusts the transfer current for the leading (Special 3). Increase the current to separa humidity and high temperature conditions	ate the paper from the drum properly in high

	PTL Control (SSP)	
2602*	Use this SP when an image problem occurs caused by the pick-off pawls. This SP is for line speeds of 230 or 180 mm/s. Set PTL control (SP2603-001) to "1: ON" after installing the PTL. If PTL control is set to ON, black lines come out. Set SP2911-002 (or 005, 008, 011) to "20" when using the PTL.	
001	1 st Side: OFF/ON	[0 to 1 / 0 / 1]
001	Sets the PTL control setting for printing the first side of the paper.	
	1 st Side: OFF Timing	[-10 to 10 / 2 / 1]
002	Sets the PTL control time for printing the first side of the paper when SP2602-001 is set to "1".	
003	2nd Side: OFF/ON	[0 to 1 / 0 / 1]
003	Sets the PTL control setting for printing the second side of the paper.	
	2nd Side: OFF Timing	[-10 to 10 / 2 / 1]
004	Sets the PTL control time for printing the second side of the paper when SP2602-003 is set to "1".	

		PTL Control: 154 mm/s (SSP)		
	Use this SP when an image problem occurs caused by the pick-off pawls. This SP the line speed of 154 mm/s. Set PTL control (SP2603-001) to "1: ON" after instate the PTL. If the PTL control is set to ON, black lines come out. Set SP2911-002 (or 008, 011) to "20" when using the PTL.		rol (SP2603-001) to "1: ON" after installing	
	001	1 st Side: OFF/ON	[0 to 1 / 0 / 1]	
	001	Sets the PTL control setting for printing the first side of the paper.		
		1 st Side: OFF Timing	[-10 to 10 / 2 / 1]	
	002	Sets the PTL control time for printing the first side of the paper when SP2602-001 is set to "1".		

003	2nd Side: OFF/ON	[0 to 1 / 0 / 1]
003	Sets the PTL control setting for printing the second side of the paper.	
	2nd Side: OFF Timing	[-10 to 10 / 2 / 1]
004	Sets the PTL control time for printing the second side of the paper when SP2602-003 is set to "1".	

	PTL Control: 90 mm/s (SSP)	
2604*	Use this SP when an image problem occurs caused by the pick-off pawls. This SP is for the line speed of 90 mm/s. Set PTL control (SP2603-001) to "1: ON" after installing the PTL. If the PTL control is set to ON, black lines come out. Set SP2911-002 (or 005, 008, 011) to "20" when using the PTL.	
001	1 st Side: OFF/ON	[0 to 1 / 0 / 1]
001	Sets the PTL control setting for printing the first side of the paper.	
	1 st Side: OFF Timing	[-10 to 10 / 2 / 1]
002	Sets the PTL control time for printing the first side of the paper when SP2602-001 is set to "1".	
003	2nd Side: OFF/ON	[0 to 1 / 0 / 1]
003	Sets the PTL control setting for printing the second side of the paper.	
	2nd Side: OFF Timing	[-10 to 10 / 2 / 1]
004	Sets the PTL control time for printing the second side of the paper when SP2602-003 is set to "1".	

	TD Sensor Initial Setting	Initialization
2801*	Performs the TD sensor initial setting and allows the service technician to enter the lot number of the developer. (The lot number is embossed on the edge of the developer package.) This SP mode controls the voltage applied to the TD sensor to make the TD sensor output about 3.0 V. Press "Execute" to start. After finishing this, the TD sensor output voltage is displayed.	
	Use this mode only after installing the machine, changing the TD sensor, or adding new developer.	

2022*	TD Sensor Manual Setting	
2802*	Allows you to adjust the TD sensor output manually for the following.	
	VTS	[1 to 5 / 4.78 / 0.01 vol]
001	Adjusts the TD sensor output (VT). Change this value after replacing the development unit with another one that already contains toner. For example, when using a development unit from another machine for test purposes. To adjust VT, use a similar procedure as for SP2-220.	
VTMAX [1 to 5 / 4.78 / 0.01vol]		[1 to 5 / 4.78 / 0.01vol]
002	Adjusts the maximum value for SP2802 1.	
000	VTMIN	[1 to 5 / 1 / 0.0 l vol]
003	Adjusts the minimum value for SP2802 1.	
Process Setting		
2805	Performs the developer initialization. Press "Execute" to start. This SP should be performed after doing SP2801 at installation and after replacing the drum.	
2810	Grayscale Setting	
2010	Initializes the LD power setting. This SP should be done after replacing the drum.	

2812*	Drum Reverse Rotation (SSP)	
001	Reverse time [0 to 9 / 4 / 1]	
001	Sets the reverse time of the drum motor after the end of a job.	
002	Interval time	[0 to 19 / 9 / 1]
002	Sets the waiting time of the drum motor reverse after the end of a job.	

2911*	Transfer Current On/Off Timing (SSP)	
La (On Timing) [-20 to 20 / 0 / 1 mm] Adjust the timing to turn on the transfer current for the leading edge.		[-20 to 20 / 0 / 1 mm]
		current for the leading edge.

002	Lb (Switch Timing)	[0 to 30 / 10 / 1 mm]	
002	Adjust the timing to switch transfer current from the leading edge to the image area.		
003	Lc (Off Timing)	[-20 to 20 / -5 / 1 mm]	
003	Adjust the timing to turn off the transfer	current for the image area.	
00.4	La (On Timing): Special 1	[-20 to 20 / 0 / 1 mm]	
004	Adjust the timing to turn on the transfer	current for the leading edge (Special 1).	
	Lb (Switch Timing): Special 1	[0 to 30 / 1 0 / 1 mm]	
005	Adjust the timing to switch transfer current from the leading edge to the image area (Special 1).		
00/	Lc (Off Timing): Special 1	[-20 to 20 / -5 / 1 mm]	
006	Adjust the timing to turn off the transfer	current for the image area (Special 1).	
007	La (On Timing): Special 2	[-20 to 20 / 0 / 1 mm]	
007	Adjust the timing to turn on the transfer current for the leading edge (Special 2).		
	Lb (Switch Timing): Special 2	[0 to 30 / 10 / 1 mm]	
008	Adjust the timing to switch transfer current from the leading edge to the image area (Special 2).		
222	Lc (Off Timing): Special 2	[-20 to 20 / -5 / 1 mm]	
009	Adjust the timing to turn off the transfer current for the image area (Special 2).		
010	La (On Timing): Special 3	[-20 to 20 / 0 / 1 mm]	
010	Adjust the timing to turn on the transfer current for the leading edge (Special 2).		
	Lb (Switch Timing): Special 3	[0 to 30 / 10 / 1 mm]	
011	Adjust the timing to switch transfer current from the leading edge to the image area (Special 2).		
010	Lc (Off Timing): Special 3	[-20 to 20 / -5 / 1 mm]	
012	Adjust the timing to turn off the transfer	current for the image area (Special 2).	

2912*	Transfer Reverse Rotation
-------	---------------------------

002	Interval	[0 to 10 / 3 / 1]
002	Sets the reverse time of the transfer/de	evelopment motor after the end of a job.

2914*	Paper Setting	
	C-alpha	[0 to 400 / 150 / 10vol]
001	Adjusts the charge roller voltage used when paper with a small width is fed from the by-pass tray. The paper width below which the correction starts depends on the value of SP2-309-1.	
	Use this SP when an image problem (such as white spots at the center of black dots or breaks in thin black lines) occurs when paper with a small width is fed from the by-pass feed tray.	
	C-beta	[0 to 400 / 0 / 10vol]
002	Adjusts the charge roller voltage used when paper with a small width is fed from the by-pass tray. The paper width below which the correction starts depends on the value of SP2-309-2.	
	Use this SP when an image problem (see 2-914-1) occurs when paper with a small width is fed from the by-pass feed tray.	
	B-gamma	[0 to 300 / 200 / 10vol]
003	Adjusts the development bias used when paper with a small width is fed from the bypass tray. The paper width below which the correction starts depends on the value of SP2-309-1.	
	Use this SP when an image problem (see 2-914-1) occurs when paper with a small width is fed from the by-pass feed tray.	
	B-delta	[0 to 300 / 50 / 10vol]
004	Adjusts the development bias used when paper with a small width is fed from the bypass tray. The paper width below which the correction starts depends on the value of SP2-309-2.	
	Use this SP when an image pro width is fed from the by-pass fe	blem (see 2-914-1) occurs when paper with a small ed tray.

2940*	Toner consump. (SSP)
-------	----------------------

	[0: OFF 1: ON]	[0 to 1 / 1 / 1]
OO1 If this SP is set to ON, the tor Setting) is executed. This pre		bottle consumes toner when SP2801 (TD Sensor Initial nts image offset.
	Setting	[0 to 1 / 0.06 / 0.01]
002	Specifies the threshold value for the toner consumption mode if SP2940-001 is set to ON.	

2040*	Toner Overflow Sensor	[0 = OFF, 1= ON]
Selects whether or not the toner overflow sensor is activated.		w sensor is activated.

	Trans Cleaning Blade Forming (SSP)	
00/4	Applies a pattern of toner to the transfer belt at a defined interval between sheets on the transfer belt in order to reduce friction between the belt surface and the cleaning blade.	
2964*	Under conditions of high temperature and high humidity, the density control feature may reduce the amount of toner, which also reduces the amount of toner on the surface of the transfer belt. With less toner on the belt, the friction between the belt and the blade increases, and could cause the blade to bend or scour the surface of the belt.	
001	0: OFF, 1: ON	[0 to 1 / 0 / 1]
002	Pattern Interval	[1 to 100 / 15 / 1 sheet]
003	Pattern Number	[1 to 3 / 1 / 1 line]
004	Pattern LD Power	[0 to 15 / 2 / 1]

	Grayscale Limit (SSP)
2972*	Controls the halftone density level to prevent deterioration of the OPC. The halftone density is detected by the ID sensor, and the machine adjusts the intensity of the LD beam according to the upper/lower limit setting.

	Upper Limit	[0 to 100 / 63 / 1vol]
Defines the upper limit for grayscale. A larger value allows a wider range of halftones at the pale end image contains pale areas with fuzzy borders surrounded by dar value to make the borders clearer.		ange of halftones at the pale end of the scale. If the fuzzy borders surrounded by dark areas, reduce this
	Lower Limit	[0 to 100 / 57 / 1vol]
002	Defines the lower limit for grayscale. A smaller value allows a wider range of halftones at the dark end of the scale.	

		Grayscale Cycle (SSP)	[0 to 1000 / 100 / 10 sheets]
	Set s the halftone operation interval in order to prevent deterioration of the Conumber of copies exceeds this setting, at the end of the job, or if the door is and closed, charge correction is executed.		setting, at the end of the job, or if the door is opened

	2974*	Image Density	
Adjustment Mode [1 to 5 / 3 / 1] Adjusts image density. Changing this setting adjusts development bias a output voltage that in turn raises or lowers image density.		[1 to 5 / 3 / 1]	

2975*		Near End Setting		
		Detection Time	[0 to 2000 / 0 / 10 sec]	
	A:	Sets a time for toner supply motor rotation for issuing the toner near end warning on the operation panel. The time may need to be shorter for customers who run especially large print jobs (working at night, for example) to ensure earlier warning of the toner near end condition so toner out does not interrupt a long job.		

	Bottle Motor Time	
2976*	Displays the total ON time of the toner supply motor, calculated from when the toner bottle was replaced. Use this to check that the toner end count (SP2975) is working properly.	
	When SP2975 is set to any value other than "0", this value is displayed when it matches the setting of SP2975. When SP2975 is set to "0", SP2976 is disabled. SP2976 is automatically set to zero by toner end recovery.)	
	Time	[0 to 7,000,000 / 0 / 1 msec]

2077*	Toner End Status		
2977*	Indicates the toner near end or end condition.		
[0 to 10 / 0 / 1] 0: Not detected 1: Detected by SP2975-001 2: Vt (10) - Vref > 0.2 and Vsp > 0.6 3: Vt (10) - Vref > 0.45 4: 0.45 > Vt (10) - Vref > 0.2 and toner of 5 to 10: Not used		0: Not detected 1: Detected by SP2975-001 2: Vt (10) - Vref > 0.2 and Vsp > 0.6 3: Vt (10) - Vref > 0.45 4: 0.45 > Vt (10) - Vref > 0.2 and toner end counter > 300	
[0 to 10 / 0 / 1] 0: Not detected 1: Vsp > 2.0 2: Toner end counter > 90 when SP2213- 3: Toner end counter < 90 and Vt (10) > (10)		0: Not detected 1: Vsp > 2.0 2: Toner end counter > 90 when SP2213-001 is set to "0". 3: Toner end counter < 90 and Vt (10) > (Vref + 0.3) when SP2213-001 is set to "0". 4: When SP2213-001 is set to "2" 5: Vsp > 0.9 when SP2213-001 is set to "2"	

	Charge Counter	[0 to 1000000 / 0 / 1 sheets]	
2980*	Set the number of pages to print after toner and carrier initialization before the charge input is increased to compensate for deterioration over time in the polarity of the carrier.		
	The strength in the polarity of the carrier in the toner will eventually decrease and cause lower charge output. Setting the charge output to increase after a specified number of copies can compensate for this effect.		

Engine SP Tables-3

SP3-xxx: Process

3001	P Sensor Setting		
	Current	[0 to 43 / 13 / 0.1 mA]	
001*	Allows you to reset the PWM of the ID sensor LED to avoid a service call error after clearing NVRAM or replacing the NVRAM. The PWM data is stored by executing SP-3001-2.		
	Initialization	-	
002	Performs the ID sensor initial setting. ID sensor output for the bare drum (VSG) is adjusted automatically to 4.0 ±0.2 V.		
	Press "Execute" to start. Perform this setting after replacing or cleaning the ID sensor, replacing the drum, or clearing NVRAM.		

3045*	Toner End Setting DFU	
001	ON/OFF	[0 to 1 / 0 / 1] 0 = Off, 1 = On

	P Sensor Output		
	Displays the current VSG, VSP, VSDP, and grayscale control.		
3103*	If the P sensor does not detect the P pattern, "VSP = 5.0 V/VSG = 5.0 V" is displayed and an SC code is generated.		
	If the P sensor does not detect the bare area of the drum, "VSP = 0.0 V/VSG =0.0 V" is displayed and an SC code is generated.		
001	Vsg	[0 to 5 / 0 / 0.01]	
002	Vsp	[0 to 5 / 0 / 0.01]	
003	Vsdp	[0 to 5 / 0 / 0.01]	
004	Vsm/Vsg	[0 to 5 / 0 / 0.01]	

3902*	New PCU Detection (Not used)
-------	------------------------------

2

001	ON/OFF Setting	[0 to 1 / 0 / 1] 0: On, 1: Off
	Turns on or off the new unit detection for the transfer belt unit and fusing unit.	

	Hot Roller Stripper Cleaning
3905*	"Cleaning A": 15 sec. off/on cycle for the fusing motor.
	"Cleaning B": Off (45 sec.) and On (15 sec.) cycle for the fusing motor.
	1st Cleaning: Interval
001	Sets the threshold for the 1st cleaning mode.
	"Cleaning A" is done once.
	[0 to 5 / 5 / 1 sheets]
	1 st Cleaning: Mode Setting
002	Sets the number of additional execution times of the 1st cleaning mode.
	[0 to 5 / 0 / 1 times]
	2nd Cleaning: Interval
003	Sets the threshold for the 2nd cleaning mode.
	"Cleaning A" is done twice.
	[6 to 49 / 30 / 1 sheets]
	2nd Cleaning: Mode Setting
004	Sets the number of additional execution times of the 2nd cleaning mode.
	[0 to 5 / 0 / 1 times]
	3rd Cleaning: Interval
	Sets the threshold for the 3rd cleaning mode.
005	"Cleaning A" is done twice and "Cleaning B" is done "N" times.
	"N" is specified with SP3905-006.
	[50 to 999 / 100 / 1 sheets]

	3rd Cleaning: Mode Setting
	Sets the number of execution times of the 3rd cleaning mode.
006	[0 to 5 / 0 / 1 times]
	Note
	 All fans remain on during cleaning and then switch off 60sec after the cleaning cycle ends.
	Cleaning Priority Setting
007	[0 to 1 / 0 / 1 sheets]
007	0: Priority to printing (No job interruption)
	1: Priority to cleaning (Job interruption)

Engine SP Tables-4

SP4-xxx: Scanner

There are no Group 4 SP modes for this machine.

Engine SP Tables-5

SP5-xxx: Mode

5009*	Add Disp. Lang		Bit SW	
	Adds language available in user choice. (Only the languages registered in the machine)			
	Refer to the displayed language list to set in the way showed below.			
	List Num.	Assigned Bit Switch		
	No.1~8	BIT1 to 8 (SP5009-201)		
201,202,2	No.9~16	BIT1 to 8 (SP5009-202)		
03,204	No.17~24	BIT1 to 8 (SP5009-203)		
	No.25~32	BIT1 to 8 (SP500	9-204)	
	Example: To add American(No.3 in the list) or Czech (No.15)			
	Turn Bit 3 of "SP5009-201" 0 to 1 for American.			
	Turn Bit 7 of "SP5009-202" 0 to 1 for Czech.			
	After setting, turn the main power switch off and on to make the setting valid.			

5024*	mm/inch Display Selection	0: Europe/Asia (mm) 1: North America (inch)
	Selects the unit of measurement. After selection, turn the main power switch off and on.	

	Accounting counter	
	5045*	Selects whether the printer counter is displayed on the LCD.
		[0-1 / 0 / 1]
		0: Displays the total counter only.
		1: Displays both total counter and printer counter.

5047*	Paper Display

Turns on or off the printed paper display on the LCD.
[0 to 1 / 0 / 1]
0: Not displayed, 1: Displayed

5056* Coverage Counter Display	
	Display or does not display the coverage counter on the LCD.
	[0 to 1 / 0 / 1]
	0: Not displayed, 1: Displayed

5061* Toner Remaining Icon Display Change	
	Display or does not display the remaining toner display icon on the LCD.
	[0 to 1 / 0 / 1]
	0: Not display, 1: Display

5074*	Home Screen Login
30/4	Sets the application that appears when the home key is pressed.
	Setting
002	[0 to 11111111 / 0 / 1]
	0: OFF, 1: ON
	Home Key Customization
091	[0 to 2 / 0 / 1]
	0: OFF (Function disabled), 1: SDK, 2: Reserve (Legacy application)
	Product ID
092	Sets the Application product ID.
	[0x00 to 0xffff / 0x00 / 1]
	Application Screen ID
093	Sets the display category of the application that is specified in SP5075-001.
	[0 to 255 / 0 / 1]

	5075*	USB Keyboard	
--	-------	--------------	--

	Function Setting
	[0 to 1 / 0 / 1]
	0: Disabled, 1: Enabled

5083*	LED ON-OFF setting at Toner Near End
	Turns LED yellow lighting ON and OFF at Toner Near End.
001	[0 to 1 / 0 / 1]
	0: OFF, 1: ON

5104* A3/DLT Double Count (SSP)	
	Specifies whether the counter is doubled for A3/DLT. "Yes" counts except from the bypass tray. When "Yes" is selected, A3 and DLT paper are counted twice, that is A4 x2 and LT x2 respectively.

5112*	Non-Std. Paper Sel.
	Non-Standard Paper Selection
	[0 to 1 / 0 / 1]
	0: Not use, 1: Use

	Paper Size Type Selection
	Selects the paper size (type) for both originals and copy paper.
5131*	[0 to 2 / - / 1 step]
0:	0: Japan, 1: North America, 2: Europe
	After changing the setting, turn the copier off and on. If the paper size of the archive files stored on the HDD is different, abnormal copies could result.

Sets up the [0 to 1 / 0 0: Off [Def 1: On. Sets	Bypass Length Setting
	Sets up the by-pass tray for long paper.
	[0 to 1 / 0 / 1]
	0: Off [Default]
	1: On. Sets the tray for feeding paper up to 600 mm long.
	With this SP selected on, paper jams are not detected in the paper path.

5166*	Lump Delete Form Setting	
	Last Deleted Time	
021	Displays the last delete time.	
	[0 to 4294967295 / 0 / 1]	

		By-pass Tray Paper Size Error	[0 to 1 / 0 / 1] 0= OFF, 1= ON	
5179*		This SP determines whether a paper size error prompt appears when the machine detects the wrong paper size for the job and during feed from the by-pass tray.		

5101*	Paper Size Setting		
Adjusts the paper siz		for each tray. [0 to 1 / - / 1]	
001	Tray 1: 1	0: A4 LEF, 1: LT LEF	
002	Tray 1: 2	0: A3, 1: DLT	
003	Tray 1: 3	0: B4, 1: LG	
004	Tray 1: 4	O: B5 LEF, 1: Exe LEF	
005	Tray 2: 1	0: A4 LEF, 1: LT LEF	
006	Tray 2: 2	0: A3, 1: DLT	
007	Tray 2: 3	0: B4, 1: LG	
008	Tray 2: 4	O: B5 LEF, 1: Exe LEF	
009	Tray 3: 1 (Tandem)	0: A4 LEF, 1: LT LEF	
010	Tray 3: 2	0: A3, 1: DLT	
011	Tray 3: 3	0: B4, 1: LG	
012	Tray 3: 4	O: B5 LEF, 1: Exe LEF	
013	Tray 4: 1	0: A4 LEF, 1: LT LEF	
014	Tray 4: 2	0: A3, 1: DLT	
015	Tray 4: 3	0: B4, 1: LG	
016	Tray 4: 4	O: B5 LEF, 1: Exe LEF	

017 LCT	[0 to 2 / - / 1] 0: A4 LEF, 1: LT LEF, 2: B5 LEF
---------	---

	RK4: Setting (Japan only)
5186	Enable or distance the prevention for RK4 (Accounting device) Disconnection. If the RK4 is disconnected for 10 seconds when this SP is set to "1 (Enable)", the machine automatically jams a sheet of paper and stops.
	[0 to 1 / 0 / 1]

Paper Exit After Staple End	
This SP determines whether the machine can output paper if staples run out.	
[0 to 1 / 0 / 1]	
0: OFF. Paper cannot exit if no staples are available.	
1: ON. Paper can exit with no staples.	
	This SP determines whether the machine can output paper if staples run out. [0 to 1 / 0 / 1] 0: OFF. Paper cannot exit if no staples are available.

5302*	Set Time	
	Time Difference	
	Sets the time clock for the local time. This setting is done at the factory before delivery. The setting is GMT expressed in minutes.	
	[-1440 to 1440 / - / 1 min.]	
	Japan: +540 (Tokyo)	
002	NA: -300 (NY)	
	EU: +60 (Paris)	
	CH: +480 (Peking)	
	TW: +480 (Taipei)	
	AS: +480 (Hong Kong)	
	KO: +540 (Korea)	

5305-101 RTB 5a

307 Summer Time

	Setting	[0 to 1 / 1 (NA/EU), 0 (ASIA) / 1 /step] 0: Disabled 1: Enabled		
001	Enables or disables the summer time mode.			
	V Note			
	 Make sure that both SP5-307-3 and -4 are correctly set. Otherwise, this SP is not activated even if this SP is set to "1". 			
	Rule Set (Start)			
	Specifies the start setting fo	or the summer time mode.		
		P. For months 1 to 9, the "0" cannot be input in the first digit, or -2 or -3 becomes a seven-digit setting.		
	1st and 2nd digits: The mo	onth. [1 to 12]		
	3rd digit: The week of the	month. [1 to 5]		
003	4th digit: The day of the week. [0 to 6 = Sunday to Saturday]			
	5th and 6th digits: The hour. [00 to 23]			
	7th digit: The length of the advanced time. [0 to 9 / 1 hour /step]			
	8th digit: The length of the advanced time. [0 to 5 / 10 minutes /step]			
	For example: 3500010			
	The timer is advanced by 1 hour at am 0:00 on the 5th Sunday in March.			
	The digits are counted from the left.			
	Make sure that SP5-307-1 is set to "1".			
	Rule Set (End)			
	Specifies the end setting for the summer time mode.			
	There are 8 digits in this SP.			
	1st and 2nd digits: The month. [1 to 12]			
004	3rd digit: The week of the month. [0 to 5]			
	4th digit: The day of the week. [0 to 7 = Sunday to Saturday]			
	5th and 6th digits: The hour. [00 to 23]			
	The 7th and 8 digits must be set to "00".			
	The digits are counted from the left.			
	Make sure that SP5-307-1 is set to "1".			

F 401	Access Control (DFU)		
5401	This SP stores the settings that limit uses access to SDK application data.		
		Whenever a new login user is added to the address book in external certification mode (for Windows, LDAP, RDH), the default document ACL is updated according to this SP setting.	
		[0 to 3 / 0 / 1/step]	
103	Default Document ACL	0: View	
		1: Edit	
		2: Edit/Delete	
		3: Full control	
		Note: This SP setting is ignored on a machine that is not using document server.	
104	Authentication Time	Specifies the timeout of the authentication. [0 to 255 / 0 / 1 sec./step] 0: 60 seconds 1 to 250 seconds	
162	Extend Certification Detail	Selects the log out type for the extend authentication device. Bit 0: Log-out without an IC card 0: Not allowed (default) 1: Allowed	
200	SDK1 Unique ID		
201	SDK1 Certification Method		
210	SDK2 Unique ID	"SDK" is the "Software Development Kit". This	
211		data can be converted from SAS (VAS) when	
220		installed or uninstalled. (DFU)	
221	SDK3 Certification Method		
230	SDK certification device		

240	Detail Option	Enables or disables the log out confirmation option. Bit 0: Log out confirmation option 0: Enable (default), 1: Disable Selects the automatic log out time. Bit 1 and 2: Automatic log out timer reduction
	00: 60 seconds (default), 01: 10 seconds,	
		10: 20 seconds, 11: 30 seconds

5402	Access Control (DFU)		
3402	Sets limited uses for SDKJ application data.		
		[/0x00/0x01/step]	
		bit0: SDKJ Authentication	
		-0: Panel Type	
		-1: Remote Type	
		bit 1 : Using user code setup	
		-0: OFF, 1: ON	
	SDKJ1 Limit Setting SDKJ30 Limit Setting	bit2: Using key-counter setup	
		-0: OFF, 1: ON	
101 to 130		bit3: Using billing external device setup	
10110100		-0: OFF, 1: ON	
		bit3: Using external billing device setup	
		-0: OFF, 1: ON	
		bit4: Using extended external billing device setup	
		-0: OFF, 1: ON	
		bit5~6: Not used	
		bit7: Using extended function J limit users	
		-0: OFF, 1: ON	
141 to 170	SDKJ1 Product ID SDKJ30 Product ID	[O to Oxfffffff / O / 1/step]	

	User Code Count Clear	
5404	Clears the counts of the user codes assigned by the key operator to restrict the use of the machine. Press [Execute] to clear.	

5411	LDAP-Certification	
004	Simplified Certification	Turns simple authentication on or off for LDAP. [0 or 1 / 1 / 1/step] 0: OFF 1: ON
005	Password Null Not Permit	This SP is enabled only when SP5411-4 is set to "1" (ON). [0 or 1 / 1 / 1/step] 0: Password null is permitted. 1: Password null is not permitted.
006	Detail Option	Determines whether LDAP option (anonymous certification) is turned on or off. [0 or 11111111 / 0 / 1/step] 0: OFF, 1: ON

5412	Krb-Certification	
100	Encrypt Mode	Sets the level of Kerberos Certification. [0x01:AES256-CTS-HMAC-SHA1-96 / 0x02:AES128-CTS-HMAC-SHA1-96 / 0x04:DES3-CBC-SHA / 0x08:RC4-HMAC / 0x10:DES-CBC-MD5 / 0xFF:ALL / 0xFF / 1bit]

5413	Lockout Setting	
001	Lockout On/Off	[0 or 1 / 0 / 1/step] 0: OFF, 1:ON
	Turns on or off the account lock for the local address book account.	

000	Lockout Threshold	[1 to 10 / 5 / 1/step]
002	Sets the maximum trial times for accessing the address book account.	
003	Cancellation On/Off	[0 or 1 / 0 / 1/step] 0: OFF (Lockout is not cancelled.) 1: ON (Lockout is cancelled if a user ID and password are correctly entered after the lockout function has been executed and a specific time has passed.)
	Turns on or off the cancellation function of the account lockout.	
	Cancellation Time	[1 to 9999 / 60 / 1 min]
OO4 Sets the interval of the retry for accessin lockout function has been executed. This setting is enabled only if SP5413-3		ng the local address book account after the B is set to "1" (ON).

5414	Access Mitigation
	Mitigation ON/OFF
	Permits or does not permit consecutive access to the machine with the same ID and password.
001	[0 or 1 / 0 / 1/step]
	0: OFF (Permitted)
	1: ON (Not permitted)
	Mitigation Time
002	Sets the prohibiting time for consecutive access to the machine with the same ID and password.
	[0 to 60 / 15 / 1 min]

5415	Password Attack		
	Permissible Number	[0 to 100 / 30 / 1 times]	
001	Sets the threshold number of attempts to gain illegal access to the system.	attack the system with random passwords to	

003	Detect Time	[1 to 10 / 5 / 1 sec]		
	002	Sets a detection time to count a passwo	etection time to count a password attack.	

5416	Access Information	
	Access User Max Num	[50 to 200 / 200 / 1/step]
001	Sets the number of users for the access exclusion and password attack detection function.	
Access Password Num [50		[50 to 200 / 200 / 1/step]
002	Sets the number of passwords for the access exclusion and password attack detection function.	
002	Monitor interval	[1 to 10 / 3 / 1 sec]
003	Sets the interval of watching out for user information and passwords.	

5417	Access Attack	
001	Access Permissible number	[0 to 500 / 100 / 1/step]
001	Sets a limit on access attempts to preve	nt password cracking.
002	Access Detect Time	[10 to 30 / 10 / 1 sec]
002	Sets a detection time to count password cracking.	
	Productivity Fall Weight	[0 to 9 / 3 / 1 sec]
003	Sets the wait time to slow down the speed of certification when an excessive number of access attempts have been detected.	
	Attack Max Num	[50 to 200 / 200 / 1/step]
004	Sets a limit on the number of requests received for certification in order to slow down the certification speed when an excessive number of access attempts have been detected.	

	User Authentication	
5420	These settings should be done with the System Administrator.	
	U Note	
	These functions are enabled only after the user access feature has been enabled.	
041	Printer	[0 or 1/0/1/step] 0: ON. 1: OFF Determines whether certification is required before a user can use the printer application.
051	SDK1	[0 or 1/ 0 /1/step] 0: ON. 1: OFF
061	SDK2	Determines whether certification is required
071	SDK3	before a user can use the SDK application.

5430	Auth Dialog Message Change	
001	Message Change On/Off	Turns on or off the displayed message change for the authentication. [0 or 1 / 0 / 1/step] 0: Off, 1: On
002	Message Text Download	Executes the message download for the authentication.
003	Message Text ID	Inputs message text for the authentication.

5481	Authentication Error Code			
	These SP codes determine how the authentication failures are displayed.			
	001	System Log Disp	[0 or 1 / 0 / 1/step] 0: OFF [Default], 1: ON Determines whether an error code appears in the system log after a user authentication failure occurs.	

the operation panel after a user authentication failure occurs.

5501*	PM Alarm	
PM Alarm Level OO1 Sets the PM alarm level.		
	0: No PM alarm	
Original Count Alarm (DFU)		
002	Selects whether the PM alarm for the number of scans is enabled or not.	
002	If this is "1", the PM alarm function is enabled.	
	[0 = No / 1 = Yes]	

	Jam Alarm
	Sets the alarm to sound for the specified jam level (document misfeeds are not included).
5504*	[0 to 3 / 3 / 1 step]
3304	0: Zero (Off)
	1: Low (2.5K jams)
	2: Medium (3K jams)
	3: High (6K jams)

	Error Alarm
	Sets the number of sheets to clear the error alarm counter.
5505*	The error alarm counter counts "1" when any SC is detected. However, the error alarm counter decreases by "1" when an SC is not detected during a set number of copied sheets (for example, default 5000 (C1b) or 10000 (C1c) sheets). The error alarm occurs when the SC error alarm counter reaches "5".
	[0 to 255 / 60 / 100 copies / step]

5507*	Supply Alarm	
		Switches the control call on/off for the paper supply. (DFU)
	Paper supply Alarm	0: Off, 1: On
001	(0:Off 1:On)	0: No alarm.
		1: Sets the alarm to sound for the specified number transfer sheets for each paper size (A3, A4, B4, B5, DLT, LG, LT, HLT)
	Staple Supply Alarm	Switches the control call on/off for the stapler installed in the finisher. (DFU)
002	(0:Off 1:On)	0: Off, 1: On
		0: No alarm
		1: Alarm goes off for every 1K of staples used.
003	Toner Supply Alarm (0:Off 1:On)	Switches the control call on/off for the toner end. (DFU)
		0: Off, 1: On
		If you select "1" the alarm will sound when the copier detects toner end.
006	Waste Toner Bottle Alarm	0: Off, 1: On
080	Toner Call Timing	Changes the timing of the "Toner Supply Call" via the @Remote, when the following conditions occur. 0: At replacement
		1: At near end

128	Interval: Others	
132	Interval: A3	
134	Interval: A5	
141	Interval: B4	The "Paper Supply Call Level: nn" SPs specify
142	Interval: B5	the paper control call interval for the referenced paper sizes. (DFU)
160	Interval: DLT	[250 to 10000 / 1000 / 1 Step]
164	Interval: LG	
166	Interval: LT	
172	Interval: HLT	

5508	CC Call	
001	Jam Remains	Enables/disables initiating a call.
002	Continuous Jams	[0 to 1 / 1 / 1]
003	Continuous Door Open	0: Disable 1: Enable
011	Jam Detection: Time Length	Sets the length of time to determine the length of an unattended paper jam. [3 to 30 / 10 / 1 minute]
012	Jam Detection Continuous	Sets the number of continuous paper jams required to initiate a call. [2 to 10 / 5 / 1 time]
013	Door Open: Time Length	Sets the length of time the remains opens to determine when to initiate a call. [3 to 30/10/1 minute]

SC/Alarm Setting
With @Remote in use, these SP codes can be set to issue an SC call when an SC error occurs. If this SP is switched off, the SC call is not issued when an SC error occurs.

001	SC Call	
002	Service Parts Near End Call	
003	Service Parts End Call	
004	User Call	
006	Communication Information Test Call	[0 or 1 / 1 / 1]
007	Machine Information Notice	0: OFF
008	Alarm Notice	1: ON
009	Non-genuine Toner Alarm	
010	Supply Automatic Ordering Call	
011	Supply Management Report Call	
012	Jam/Door Open Call	

	Individual PM Part Alarm Call		
5516	With @Remote in use, these SP codes can be set to issue an PM alarm call when one of SP parts reaches its yield.		
001	Disable/Enable Setting (0: Not send, 1: Send)	[0 or 1 / 1 / -] 0: Not send, 1: Send	
004	Percent yield for triggering PM alert	[1 to 255 / 75 / 1 %/step]	

5730	Extend Function Setting		
3/30	Expiration Prior Alarm Set	[0 to 999 / 20 / 1/step]	

5721	[Counter Effect]		
3/31	Charge MK1 Cnt (Paper >Combine)	[0 or 1 / 0 / 1/step]	

5745	EcoCountTime	
3743	-	[0 to 1439 / 0 / -/step]

5746	BMLinkS (Japan only)
------	----------------------

3

SP5749 RTB 15

001	available	Displays or enables the BMLinkS feature. [0 or 1 / 1 / -/step]
002	interval:mon	Displays the polling interval when the BMLinsS monitor service monitors the machine status. [10 to 3600 / 60 / 1 sec./step]
004	Available:log	Displays the sending feature status of the BMLinkS log service. [0 or 1 / 1 / -/step] 0:Disable, 1: Enable

5749	Input/Output
3749	DFU

5750	Job Access Log			
	Changes the capacity of log storage.			
	SP7-750-001	Job Log	Access Log	Eco Log
	0:OFF (Default)	2000	6000	2000
	1:ON	8000	1000	1000

	Memory Clear		
Resets NVRAM data to the default settings. Before executing any of these print an SMC Report.		he default settings. Before executing any of these SP codes,	
001	All Clear Initializes items 2 to 19 below.		
002	Engine	Initializes all registration settings for the engine and copy process settings.	
003	SCS	Initializes default system settings, SCS (System Control Service) settings, operation display coordinates, and ROM update information.	
008	Printer Application	Initializes the printer defaults, programs registered, the printer SP bit switches, and the printer CSS counter.	

010	Web Service	Deletes the Netfile (NFA) management files and thumbnails, and initializes the Job login ID.
		Netfiles: Jobs to be printed from the document server using a PC and the DeskTopBinder software
011	NCS	Initializes the system defaults and interface settings (IP addresses also), the SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin settings, WebStatusMonitor settings, and the TELNET settings. (NCS: Network Control Service)
014	Clear DCS Setting	Initializes the DCS (Delivery Control Service) settings.
015	Clear UCS Setting	Initializes the UCS (User Information Control Service) settings.
016	MIRS Setting	Initializes the MIRS (Machine Information Report Service) settings.
018	SRM Memory Clr	Initializes the SRM (System Resource Manager) settings.
019	LCS	Initializes the LCS (Log Count Service) settings.

	FreeRun	
5802*	Performs a free run on the copier engine. The correct paper should be loaded in the 1st tray or 2nd tray, but paper is not fed. The main switch has to be turned off and on after using the free run mode for a test.	
001	TRAY1:A4LEF	-
002	TRAY2:A3	-
003	TRAY2:A4SEF	-

5803	Input Check
3603	Displays the signals received from sensors and switches. (Fr. p. 181)

5804	Output Check
3604	Turns on the electrical components individually for test purposes. (**p.190)

	Anti-Condensation Heater
5805	[0 or 1 / 0 / -]
	0:OFF / 1:ON

5810 SC Reset			
	001	Fusing SC Reset	Resets all level A service call conditions, such as fusing errors. To clear the service call, touch "Execute" on the LCD, then turn the main power switch off/on.

5811	MachineSerial	
002	Display	Displays the machine serial number.
004	BCU	Inputs the serial number.

5812*	Service Tel. No. Setting		
001	Service	Inputs the telephone number of the CE (displayed when a service call condition occurs.)	
002	Facsimile Use this to input the fax number of the CE printed on the Counter R (UP mode).		
003	Supply	Inputs the telephone number of the supplier displayed on the user mode screen.	
004	Allows the service center contact telephone number to be disp the user mode screen.		
101	DispInquiry	Allows the inquiry display to be displayed on the user mode screen. 0: Displayed 1: Not displayed	

	I/F Setting
	Selects the remote service setting.
001	[0 to 2 / 2 / 1 /step]
001	O: Remote service off
	1: CSS remote service on
	2: @Remote service on
	CE Call
	Performs the CE Call at the start or end of the service.
002	[0 or 1 / 1 / 1 /step]
	O: Start of the service
	1: End of the service
	NOTE: This SP is activated only when SP 5816-001 is set to "2".
	Function Flag
	Enables or disables the remote service function.
003	[0 to 1 / 0 / 1 /step]
	0: Disabled, 1: Enabled
	NOTE: This SP setting is changed to "1" after @Remote registration has been completed.
	SSL Disable
	Uses or does not use the RCG certification by SSL when calling the RCG.
007	[0 to 1 / 0 / 1 /step]
	0: Uses the RCG certification
	1: Does no use the RCG certification
	RCG Connect Timeout
008	Specifies the connect timeout interval when calling the RCG.
	[1 to 90 / 30 / 1 second /step]
	RCG Write Timeout
009	Specifies the write timeout interval when calling the RCG.
	[0 to 100 / 60 / 1 second /step]

	RCG Read Timeout
010	Specifies the read timeout interval when calling the RCG.
	[0 to 100 / 60 / 1 second /step]
	Port 80 Enable
011	Enables/disables access via port 80 to the SOAP method.
	[0 or 1 / 0 / –]
	0: Disabled, 1: Enabled
	RFU (Remote Firmware Update) Timing
	Selects the RFU timing.
013	[0 or 1 / 1 / -]
	0: RFU is executed whenever update request is received.
	1: RFU is executed only when the machine is in the sleep mode.
	RCG Error Cause
	[0 or 1 / 0 / -]
014	0: Normal
	1: Fails to reflect the client/server certificate settings by network failure to reboot. Transitions to 0 on restarting the machine.
	RCG-C Registed
021	This SP displays the Embedded RC Gate installation end flag.
021	0: Installation not completed
	1: Installation completed
	Connect Type (N/M)
	This SP displays and selects the Embedded RC Gate connection method.
023	[0 or 1 / 0 / 1 /step
	0: Internet connection
	1: Dial-up connection
061	Cert. Expire Timing DFU
001	Proximity of the expiration of the certification.

	Use Proxy
062	This SP setting determines if the proxy server is used when the machine communicates with the service center.
	Proxy Host
063	This SP sets the address of the proxy server used for communication between Embedded RC Gate-N and the gateway. Use this SP to set up or display the customer proxy server address. The address is necessary to set up Embedded RC Gate-N.
003	♦ Note
	 The address display is limited to 128 characters. Characters beyond the 128 character are ignored.
	This address is customer information and is not printed in the SMC report.
	Proxy Port Number
064	This SP sets the port number of the proxy server used for communication between Embedded RC Gate-N and the gateway. This setting is necessary to set up Embedded RC Gate-N.
	UNote
	This port number is customer information and is not printed in the SMC report.
	Proxy User Name
	This SP sets the HTTP proxy certification user name.
065	UNote
	 The length of the name is limited to 31 characters. Any character beyond the 31st character is ignored.
	This name is customer information and is not printed in the SMC report.
	Proxy Password
	This SP sets the HTTP proxy certification password.
066	U Note
	• The length of the password is limited to 31 characters. Any character beyond the 31st character is ignored.
	This name is customer information and is not printed in the SMC report.

	CERT: Up State			
	Displays the status of the certification update.			
	0	The certification used by Embedded RC Gate is set correctly.		
	1	The certification request (setAuthKey) for update has been received from the GW URL and certification is presently being updated.		
	2	The certification update is completed and the GW URL is being notified of the successful update.		
	3	The certification update failed, and the GW URL is being notified of the failed update.		
	4	The period of the certification has expired and new request for an update is being sent to the GW URL.		
	11	A rescue update for certification has been issued and a rescue certification setting is in progress for the rescue GW connection.		
067	12	The rescue certification setting is completed and the GW URL is being notified of the certification update request.		
	13	The notification of the request for certification update has completed successfully, and the system is waiting for the certification update request from the rescue GW URL.		
	14	The notification of the certification request has been received from the rescue GW controller, and the certification is being stored.		
	15	The certification has been stored, and the GW URL is being notified of the successful completion of this event.		
	16	The storing of the certification has failed, and the GW URL is being notified of the failure of this event.		
	17	The certification update request has been received from the GW URL, the GW URL was notified of the results of the update after it was completed, but a certification error has been received, and the rescue certification is being recorded.		
	18	The rescue certification of No. 17 has been recorded, and the GW URL is being notified of the failure of the certification update.		

	CERT	T: Error		
	Displays a number code that describes the reason for the request for update of the certification.			
	0	Normal. There is no request for certification update in progress.		
	1	Request for certification	update in progress. The current certification has expired.	
068	2	An SSL error notificatio	An SSL error notification has been issued. Issued after the certification has expired.	
	3	Notification of shift from a common authentication to an individual certification.		
	4	Notification of a comm	on certification without ID2.	
	5	Notification that no cer	tification was issued.	
	6	Notification that GW U	IRL does not exist.	
069	069 CERT: Up ID		The ID of the request for certification.	
083	Firm	Up Status	Displays the status of the firmware update.	
085	085 Firm Up User Check 086 Firmware Size		This SP setting determines if the operator can confirm the previous version of the firmware before the firmware update execution. If the option to confirm the previous version is selected, a notification is sent to the system manager and the firmware update is done with the firmware files from the URL.	
086			Allows the service technician to confirm the size of the firmware data files during the firmware update execution.	
087	CERT	T: Macro Ver.	Displays the macro version of the @Remote certification.	
088	CERT	T: PAC Ver.	Displays the PAC version of the @Remote certification.	
089	CERT: ID2 Code		Displays ID2 for the @Remote certification. Spaces are displayed as underscores (_). Asteriskes (*) indicate that no @Remote certification exists. "000000" indicates "Common certification".	
090	CERT: Subject		Displays the common name of the @Remote certification subject. CN = the following 17 bytes. Spaces are displayed as underscores (_). Asterisks (*) indicate that no @Remote certification exists. "000000" indicates "Common certification".	

091	CERT: SerialNo.	Displays serial number for the @Remote certification. Asterisks (*) indicate that no @Remote certification exists.	
092	CERT: Issuer	Displays the common name of the issuer of the @Remote certification. CN = the following 30 bytes. Asteriskes () indicate that no @Remote certification exists.	
093	CERT: Valid Start	Displays the start time of the period for which the current @Remote certification is enabled.	
094	CERT: Valid End	Displays the end time of the period for which the current @Remote certification is enabled.	
095	Server CN Check		
093	Not used		
096	GW Host		
090	Not used		
097	GW URL Path		
097	Not used		
000	Debug RescueG/WURL Set		
099	Not used		
102*	CERT: Encrypt Level		
	Displays the encryption level f	for the NRS certificate.	
1: Indicates that the certificate encryption level is 512-bit.			
	2: Indicates that the certificate encryption level is 2048-bit.		
200	Manual Polling		
200	Executes the manual polling.		

	Regist Status				
	Displays a number that indicates the status of the @Remote service device.				
	0: Neither the @Remote device nor Embedded RCG Gate is set.				
201	1: The Embedded RCG Gate is being set. Only Box registration is completed. In this status, @Remote device cannot communicate with this device.				
	2: The Embedded RCG Gat communicate with this device	re is set. In this status, the @Remote device cannot e.			
	3: The @Remote device is b	eing set. In this status the Embedded RCG Gate cannot be set.			
	4: The @Remote module ha	s not started.			
202	Letter Number	Allows entry of the request number needed for the Embedded RCG Gate.			
203	Confirm Execute	Executes the confirmation request to the @Remote Gateway.			
204	Confirm Result				
	Displays a number that indicates the result of the confirmation executed with SP5816-203.				
	0: Succeeded				
	1: Confirmation number erro	or			
	2: Registration in progress				
	3: Proxy error (proxy enable	ed)			
	4: Proxy error (proxy disabl	ed)			
	5: Proxy error (Illegal user r	ame or password)			
	6: Communication error				
	7: Certification update error	-			
	8: Other error				
	9: Confirmation executing				
	Confirm Place				
205	Displays the result of the notification sent to the device from the Gateway in answer to the confirmation request. Displayed only when the result is registered at the Gateway.				
206	Register Execute Executes "Embedded RCG Registration".				

Register Result

Displays a number that indicates the registration result.

- 0: Succeeded
- 2: Registration in progress
- 3: Proxy error (proxy enabled)
- 207 4: Proxy error (proxy disabled)
 - 5: Proxy error (Illegal user name or password)
 - 6: Communication error
 - 7: Certification update error
 - 8: Other error
 - 9: Registration executing

	Error Code				
	Displays a number that describes the error code that was issued when either SP5816-204 or SP5816-207 was executed.				
	Cause	Code	Meaning		
		-11001	Chat parameter error		
	Illegal Modem Parameter	-11002	Chat execution error		
		-11003	Unexpected error		
		-12002	Inquiry, registration attempted without acquiring device status.		
	Operation Error, Incorrect Setting	-12003	Attempted registration without execution of an inquiry and no previous registration.		
208		-12004	Attempted setting with illegal entries for certification and ID2.		
		-12005	@Remote communication is prohibited. The device has an Embedded RC gate-related problem.		
		-12006	A confirmation request was made after the confirmation had been already completed.		
		-12007	The request number used at registration was different from the one used at confirmation.		
		-12008	Update certification failed because mainframe was in use.		
		-12009	ID2 mismatch between an individual certification and NVRAM		
		-12010	Certification area is not initialized.		

		-2385	Attempted dial up overseas without the correct international prefix for the telephone number.	
		-2387	Not supported at the Service Center	
	Error Caused by	-2389	Database out of service	
	Response from GW URL	-2390	Program out of service	
		-2391	Two registrations for same device	
		-2392	Parameter error	
		-2393	RCG device not managed	
		-2394	Device not managed	
		-2395	Box ID for RCG device is illegal	
		-2396	Device ID for RCG device is illegal	
		-2397	Incorrect ID2 format	
		-2398	Incorrect request number format	
		Releases the machine from its Embedded RCG Gate setup.		
209	Instl Clear	NOTE: Turn off and on the main power switch after this setting has been changed.		
250	CommLog Print	Prints the communication log.		

5821*	Remote Service Address	
002	RCG IP Address	Sets the IP address of the RCG (Remote Communication Gate) destination for call processing at the remote service center. [00000000h to FFFFFFFh / 0000000h / 1]
003	RCG Port	Sets the port number of the RCG (Remote Communication Gate) destination for call processing at the remote service center. [0 to 65535 / 443 / 1]

004	RCG URL Path	Sets the URL path of the RCG (Remote Communication Gate) destination for call processing at the remote service center. [O to 16 characters / /RCG/services/ /-]
-----	--------------	--

	NV-RAM Data Upload
5824	Uploads the NVRAM data to an SD card. Push Execute.
Note: When uploading data in this SP mode, the front door must be open.	

	NV-RAM Data Download	
5825	Downloads data from an SD card to the NVRAM in the machine. After downloading is completed, remove the card and turn the machine power off and on.	

5828	Network Setting		
	IPv4 Address (Ethernet/IEEE 802.11)		
001	This SP allows you to check and reset the IPv4 address for Ethernet and wireless LAN (802.11): aaa.bbb.ccc.ddd		
050	Enables and disables bi-directional communication the parallel connection between the machine and a computer. [0 to 1 / 1 / 1] 0:Off, 1: On		
052	ECP (Centro)	Disables and enables the ECP feature (1284 Mode) for data transfer. [0 to 1 / 1 / 1] 0: Disabled, 1: Enabled	
065	Job Spooling	Switches the job spooling on and off. [0 to 1 / 0 / 1] 0: No spooling, 1: Spooling enabled	

066	Job Spooling Clear: Start Time		power operate [0 to 1 1: OFF	off is es or / 1 Resu	ermines whether the job interrupted at resumed at the next power on. This SP ally when SP5828-065 is set to "1". / 1] umes printing spooled jog. ars spooled job.
	Job Spooling (Protocol)		disable [0 to 1	d fo	ermines whether job spooling is enabled or reach protocol. This is a 8-bit setting. / 1] ling, 1: Spooling enabled
069	0	LPR	0.110	4	BMLinks (Japan Only)
	1	FTP (Not Used)		5	DIPRINT
	-	IPP		6	SFTP
				7	WSPRND
	3	SMB			WOLKIND
084	Delete Passward				
	Executes NCS related parame		ter list pri	ntine	9
087	@Remote Protocol Cnt (DFU)				
	TELNET (0:OFF 1:ON)		Disables or enables Telnet operation. If this SP is disabled, the Telnet port is closed.		
090			[0 to 1 / 1 / 1]		
			0: Disable, 1: Enable		
	Web (0:OFF 1:ON)		Disables or enables the Web operation.		
091			[0 to 1 / 1 / 1]		
			0: Disable, 1: Enable		
145	Active IPvó Link Local Address		Etherne	t or	Vob local address referenced on the wireless LAN (802.11) in the format: "Linkess" + "Prefix Length"
			in 8 blc	cks	ldress consists of a total 128 bits configured of 16 bits each. These notations can be d. See "Note: IPV6 Addresses " below this

147	Active IPv6 Stateless Address		
149	Active IPv6 Stateless Address	These SPs are the IPv6 stateless addresses (1 to 5) referenced on the Ethernet or wireless LAN (802.11) in	
151	Active IPv6 Stateless Address	the format: "Stateless Address" + "Prefix Length"	
153	Active IPv6 Stateless Address 4	The IPv6 address consists of a total 128 bits configured in 8 blocks of 16 bits each.	
155	Active IPv6 Stateless Address 5		
	IPv6 Manual Address		
156	This SP is the IPv6 manually set address referenced on the Ethernet or wireless LAN (802.11) in the format:		
	"Manual Set Address" + "Prefix Length"		
	The IPv6 address consists of a total 128 bits configured in 8 blocks of 16 bits each. These notations can be abbreviated. See "Note: IPV6 Addresses" below this table.		
	IPv6 Gateway Address		
158	This SP is the IPv6 gateway address referenced on the Ethernet or wireless LAN (802.11). The IPv6 address consists of a total 128 bits configured in 8 blocks of 16 bits each. These notations can be abbreviated. See "Note: IPV6 Addresses" below this table.		

Note: IPV6 Addresses

Ethernet and the Wireless LAN (802.11) reference the IPV6 "Link-Local address + Prefix Length". The IPV6 address consists of 128 bits divided into 8 blocks of 16 bits: aaaa:bbbb:cccc:ddd:eeee:ffff:gggg:hhhh:

The prefix length is inserted at the 17th byte (Prefix Range: 0x0 to 0x80). The initial setting is 0x40 (64).

For example, the data: "2001123456789012abcdef012345678940h" is expressed:

"2001:1234:5678:9012:abcd:ef01:2345:6789": prefixlen 64

However, the actual IPV6 address display is abbreviated according to the following rules.

Rules for Abbreviating IPV6 Addresses

1. The IPV6 address is expressed in hexadecimal delimited by colons (:) with the following characters:

0123456789abcdefABCDEF

2. A colon is inserted as a delimiter every 4th hexadecimal character.

fe80:0000:0000:0000:0207:40ff:0000:340e

3. The notations can be abbreviated by eliminating zeros where the MSB and digits following the MSB are zero. The example in "2" above, then, becomes

fe80:0:0:0207:40ff:0:340e

4. Sections where only zeros exist can be abbreviated with double colons (::). This abbreviation can be done also where succeeding sections contain only zeros (but this can be done only at one point in the address). The example in "2" and "3" above then becomes:

fe80::207:40ff:0:340e (only the first null sets zero digits are abbreviated as "::")

-or-

fe80:0:0:0:207:40ff::340e (only the last null set before "340e" is abbreviated as "::")

161	IPv6 Stateless Auto Setting	Enable or disables the automatic setting for IPv6 stateless. [O or 1 / 1 / 1] 1: Enable, O: Disable	
	Web Item visible		
236	Displays or does not display the Web system items. [0 x 0000 to 0 x ffff / 0 x ffff] 0: Not displayed, 1: Displayed bit0: Net RICOH bit1: Consumable Supplier bit2-15: Reserved (all)		
	Web shopping link visible		
Displays or does not display the link to Net RICOH on the top page and link page the web system. [0 to 1 / 1 / 1] 0: Not display, 1:Display		e link to Net RICOH on the top page and link page of	

	Web supplies Link visible		
238	Displays or does not display the link to Consumable Supplier on the top page and link page of the web system.		
	[0 to 1 / 1 / 1]		
	0: Not display, 1:Display		
	Web Link1 Name		
239	This SP confirms or changes the maximum characters for the UR	e URL1 name on the link page of the web system. The RL name are 31 characters.	
	Web Link1 URL		
240	his SP confirms or changes the link to URL1 on the link page of the web syste maximum characters for the URL are 127 characters.		
	Web Link 1 visible		
241	Displays or does not display the link to URL1 on the top page of the web system.		
241	[0 to 1 / 1 / 1]		
	0: Not display, 1:Display		
242	Web Link2 Name	Same as "-239"	
243	Web Link2 URL	Same as "-240"	
244	Web Link2 visible	Same as "-241"	
	DHCPv6 DUID		
249	Sets DHCPv6 DUID.		
247	[0000000000000000000000000000000000000		
	FFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFF / 000000000000000		
251	UUID		
251	DFU		
	Compatible ID		
252	[0 to 1 / 1 / 1/step]		
	0= Disabled , 1= Enabled		

	HDD	
5832	Enter the SP number for the partition to initialize, then press #. When the execution ends, cycle the machine off and on.	
001	HDD Formatting (All)	
002	HDD Formatting (IMH)	
003	HDD Formatting (Thumbnail)	
004	HDD Formatting (Job Log)	
005	HDD Formatting (Printer Fonts)	
006	HDD Formatting (User Info)	
007	Mail RX Data	
008	Mail TX Data	
009	HDD Formatting (Data for Design)	
010	HDD Formatting (Log)	
011	HDD Formatting (Ridoc I/F) (for Ridoc Desk Top Binder)	

5834	Operation Panel Image Exposure Function	
	DFU	

5840*	IEEE 802.11			
	Channel MAX			
006	Sets the maximum range of the bandwidth for the wireless LAN. This bandwidth setting varies for different countries.			
	[1 to 14 / 11 (NA), 13 (EU), 14 (JPN) / 1]			
	JPN: 1 to 14, NA: 1 to 11, EU: 1 to 13			
	Channel MIN			
007	Sets the minimum range of the bandwidth for operation of the wireless LAN. This bandwidth setting varies for different countries.			
	[1 to 14 / 1 / 1]			
	JPN: 1 to 14, NA: 1 to 11, EU: 1 to 13			

	Transmission speed	[0 x 00 to 0 x FF / 0 x FF to Auto / -]	
	0 x FF to Auto [Default]		
	0 x 11 - 55M Fix	0 x 07 - 11M Fix	
	0 x 10 - 48M Fix	0 x 05 - 5.5M Fix	
800	0 x 0F - 36M Fix	0 x 08 - 1 M Fix	
	0 x 0E - 18M Fix	0 x 13 - 0 x FE (reserved)	
	0 x 0D - 12M Fix	0 x 12 - 72M (reserved)	
	0 x 0B - 9M Fix	0 x 09 - 22M (reserved)	
	0 x 0A - 6M Fix		
	WEP Key Select		
	Selects the WEP key.		
011	Bit 1 and 0		
011	00: Key1, 01: Key2 (Reserved),		
	10: Key3 (Reserved), 11: Key4(Reserved)		
	This SP is displayed only when the IEEE802.11 card is installed.		
	RTS/CTS Thresh		
013	Adjusts the RTS/CTS threshold for the IEEE802.11 card.		
010	[0 to 3000 / 2432 / 1]		
	This SP is displayed only when the IEEE802.11 card is installed.		
	Fragment Thresh		
042	Adjusts the fragment threshold for the IEEE802.11 card.		
042	[256 to 2346 / 2346 / 1]		
	This SP is displayed only when the IEEE802.11 card is installed.		
	11g CTS to Self		
043	Determines whether the CTS self function is turned on or off.		
043	[0 to 1 / 1 / 1] 0: Off, 1: On		
	This SP is displayed only when the IEEE802.11 card is installed.		

044	1 1g Slot Time
	Selects the slot time for IEEE802.11.
	[0 to 1 / 0 / 1] 0: 20 µm, 1: 9 µm
	This SP is displayed only when the IEEE802.11 card is installed.
	WPA Debug Lvl
045	Selects the debug level for WPA authentication application.
	[1 to 3 / 3 / 1] 1: Info, 2: warning, 3: error
	This SP is displayed only when the IEEE802.11 card is installed.

5841*	Supply Name Setting
	Press the User Tools key. These names appear when the user presses the Inquiry button on the User Tools screen.
001	Toner Name Setting: Black
007	OrgStamp
011	StapleStd1
012	StapleStd2
013	StapleStd3
014	StapleStd4
021	StapleBind 1
022	StapleBind2
023	StapleBind3

	GWWS Analysis (DFU)		
	This is a debugging tool. It sets the debugging output mode of each Net File process. Bit SW 0011 1111	Bit	Groups
		0	System & other groups (LSB)
		1	Capture related
5842*		2	Certification related
		3	Address book related
		4	Machine management related
		5	Output related (printing, delivery)
		6	Repository related
		Defa	ult: 00000000 – do not change
001	Setting 1		les: Jobs to be printed from the document server a PC and the DeskTopBinder software
		Adjus	sts the debug program mode setting.
	Setting 2	Bit7:	5682 mmseg-log setting
002		0: Date/Hour/Minute/Second	
		1: Minute/Second/Msec.	
		0 to 6	5: Not used

5844	USB		
	Transfer Rate		
001	Sets the speed for USB data transmission.		
	[0 x 01 or 0 x 04 / 0 x 04 /-]		
	0 x 01 [Full Speed], 0 x 04 [Auto Change]		
	Vendor ID		
002	Sets the vendor ID:		
	Initial Setting: 0x05A Ricoh Company		
	[0x0000 to 0xFFFF/1] (DFU)		

	Product ID
003	Sets the product ID.
	[0x0000 to 0xFFFF/1] (DFU)
	Device Release No.
	Sets the device release number of the BCD (binary coded decimal) display.
004	[0000 to 9999 / 100 / 1] (DFU)
	Enter as a decimal number. NCS converts the number to hexadecimal number
	recognized as the BCD.
005	Fixed USB Port
	This SP standardizes for common use the model name and serial number for USB PnP (Plug & Play). It determines whether the driver requires re-installation.
	[0 to 2 / 0 / 1]
	0: OFF
	1: Level 1
	2: Level 2
006	PnP Model Name
	This SP sets the model name to be used by the USB PnP when "Function Enable (Level
	2) is set so the USB Serial No. can have a common name (SP5844-5).
	Default: Laser Printer (up to 20 characters allowed).
007	PnP Serial Number
	This SP sets the serial number to be used by the USB PnP when "Function Enable (Level 2)
	set so the USB Serial No. can have a common name (SP5844-5).
	Default: None (up to 12 characters allowed for entry).
	Make sure that this entry is the same as the serial number in use.
	 At initialization the serial number generated from the model name is used, not the setting of this SP code.
	At times other than initialization, the value set for this SP code is used.
100	Notify Unsupport

This SP determines whether an alert message appears on the control panel when a USB device (unsupported device) that cannot use an A-connector is connected.

[0 to 1 / 1 / 1]

0: Function enable

1: Function disable

- An unsupported device is a device that cannot use the functions of the USB device. For example, a USB mouse cannot be used even if it connected.
- If the PictBridge option is not mounted, even if a digital camera is connected it cannot be used because it is an unsupported device.

5845*	Delivery Server Setting		
	These are delivery server settings.		
	Delivery Retry Interval		
003	[60 to 900 / 300 / 1 /step] Sets the wait time from the error action to the retry.		
	Delivery Retry times		
004	[0 to 99 / 3 / 1 time(s) /step] Sets how many times to retry.		
022	Rapid Sending Control	[0 to 1 / 1 / -]	
		0: Disable, 1: Enable	
	Enables or disables the prevention function	for the continuous data sending error.	

5846*	UCS Setting			
	LDAP Search Timeout			
010	Sets the length of the time-out for the search of the LDAP server.			
	[1 to 255 / 60 / 1 step]			
022	Initial Value of Upper Limit Count			
022	[0 to 999999 / 500 / 1]			
O41 Fill Addr Acl Info.				

This SP must be executed immediately after installation of an HDD unit in a basic machine that previously had no HDD. The first time the machine is powered on with the new HDD installed, the system automatically takes the address book from the NVRAM and writes it onto the new HDD. However, the new address book on the HDD can be accessed only by the system administrator at this stage. Executing this SP by the service technician immediately after power on grants full address book access to all users. **Procedure** 1. Turn the machine off. 2. Install the new HDD. 3. Turn the machine on. 4. The address book and its initial data are created on the HDD automatically. However, at this point the address book can be accessed by only the system administrator or key operator. 5. Enter the SP mode and do SP5846 041. After this SP executes successfully, any user can access the address book. Addr Book Media Displays the slot number where an address book data is in. [0 to 30 / - /1]043 0: Unconfirmed 1: SD Slot 1 20: HDD 2: SD Slot 2 30: Nothing 4: USB Flash ROM Initialize All Setting & Addr Book 046 Initializes all settings and the address book. Initialize Local Address Book 047 Clears all of the address information from the local address book of a machine managed with UCS. Initialize LDAP Addr Book 049 Push [Execute] to delete all items (this does not include user codes) in the LDAP address

book that is controlled by UCS.

	Initial	ize All Addr Book		
050	Clears everything (including users codes) in the directory information managed by UCS. However, the accounts and passwords of the system administrators are not deleted.			
	Backı	up All Addr Book		
051	Copies all directory information to the SD card. Do this SP before replacing the controller board or HDD. The operation may not succeed if the controller board or HDD is damaged.			
	Resto	re All Addr Book		
052	Copies back all directory information from the SD card to the flash ROM or HDD. Upload the address book from the old flash ROM or HDD with SP5846-51 before removing it. Do SP5846 52 after installing the new HDD.			
	Clear	Backup Info		
053	Deletes the address book uploaded from the SD card in the slot 2. Deletes only the files uploaded for that machine. This feature does not work if the card is write-protected.			
	Note: After you do this SP, go out of the SP mode, turn the power off. Do not remove the SD card until the Power LED stops flashing.			
	Search Option			
	This SP uses bit switches to set up the fuzzy search options for the UCS local address book.			
	Bit	Meaning		
	0	Checks both upper/lower case characters		
	1			
060	2	Japan Only		
	3			
	4	Not Used		
	5	Not Used		
	6	Not Used		
	7	Not Used		

Complexity Option 1

Use this SP to set the conditions for password entry to access the local address book. Specifically, this SP limits the password entry to upper case and sets the length of the password.

062 [0 to 32 / **0** / 1 step]



- This SP does not normally require adjustment.
- This SP is enabled only after the system administrator has set up a group password policy to control access to the address book.

Complexity Option 2

Use this SP to set the conditions for password entry to access the local address book. Specifically, this SP limits the password entry to lower case and defines the length of the password.

063 [0 to 32 / **0** / 1 step]



- This SP does not normally require adjustment.
- This SP is enabled only after the system administrator has set up a group password policy to control access to the address book.

Complexity Option 3

Use this SP to set the conditions for password entry to access the local address book. Specifically, this SP limits the password entry to numbers and defines the length of the password.

064 [0 to 32 / **0** / 1 step]



- This SP does not normally require adjustment.
- This SP is enabled only after the system administrator has set up a group password policy to control access to the address book.

	Complexity Option 4
	Use this SP to set the conditions for password entry to access the local address book. Specifically, this SP limits the password entry to symbols and defines the length of the password.
065	[0 to 32 / 0 / 1 step]
	↓ Note
	This SP does not normally require adjustment.
	This SP is enabled only after the system administrator has set up a group password policy to control access to the address book.
	Encryption Start
094	Shows the status of the encryption function of the address book on the LDAP server. [0 to 255 / 1] No default
1	

	Web Service	
5848-2 sets the 4-bit switch assignment for the access control setting. Setting of has no effect on access and delivery from Scan Router. 5848-100 sets the maximum size of images that can be downloaded. The definition		·.
	equal to 1 gigabyte.	
004	Acc. Ctrl.: User Directory (Lower 4 Bits)	
009	Acc. Ctrl.: Job Control (Lower 4 Bits)	Switches access control on and off.
011	Acc. Ctrl: Device Management (Lower 4 Bits)	0000: OFF, 0001: ON
022	Acc. Ctrl: User Administration (Lower 4 Bits)	
210	Setting: Log Type: Job 1	
210	No information is available at this time.	
211	Setting: Log Type: Job 2	
211	No information is available at this time.	
212	Setting: Log Type: Access	
212	No information is available at this time.	

213	Setting: Primary Srv
	No information is available at this time.
214	Setting: Secondary Srv
	No information is available at this time.
215	Setting: Start Time
	No information is available at this time.
216	Setting: Interval Time
	No information is available at this time.
217	Setting: Timing
	No information is available at this time.

5849	Installation Date	
3049	Displays or prints the installation date of the machine.	
001	Display The "Counter Clear Day" has been changed to "Installation Date" or "Inst. Date".	
		Determines whether the installation date is printed on the printout for the total counter.
002	Switch to Print	[0 to 1 / 1 / -]
		0: OFF (No Print)
		1: ON (Print)
003	Total Counter	When the total number of pages that are made reaches this value, the current date becomes the 'official' installation date for this machine. [0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1]

	Bluetooth
5851*	Sets the operation mode for the Bluetooth Unit. Press either key.
	[0: Public] / [1: Private]

5856	Remote ROM Update
------	-------------------

	When set to "1" allows reception of firmware data via the local port (IEEE 1284) during a remote ROM update. This setting is reset to zero after the machine is cycled off and on. Allows the technician to upgrade the firmware using a parallel cable	
002	[0 to 1 / 0 / 1 step]	
	0: Not allowed	
	1: Allowed	

5857	Save Debug Log
	On/Off (1:ON 0:OFF)
001	Switches on the debug log feature. The debug log cannot be captured until this feature is switched on.
	[0 to 1 / 0 / 1]
	0: OFF, 1: ON
	Target (2: HDD 3: SD)
002	Selects the destination where the debugging information generated by the event selected by SP5858 will be stored if an error is generated
	[2 to 3 / 2 / 1]
	2: HDD, 3: SD Card
005	Save to HDD
003	Specifies the decimal key number of the log to be written to the hard disk.
006	Save to SD Card
000	Specifies the decimal key number of the log to be written to the SD Card.
	Copy HDD to SD Card (Latest 4 MB)
009	Takes the most recent 4 MB of the log written to the hard disk and copies them to the SD Card.
	A unique file name is generated to avoid overwriting existing file names on the SD Card. Up to 4MB can be copied to an SD Card. 4 MB segments can be copied one by one to each SD Card.

010	Copy HDD to SD Card Latest 4 MB Any Key)
	Takes the log of the specified key from the log on the hard disk and copies it to the SD Card.
	A unique file name is generated to avoid overwriting existing file names on the SD Card. Up to 4 MB can be copied to an SD Card. 4 MB segments can be copied one by one to each SD Card. This SP does not execute if there is no log on the HDD with no key specified.
011	Erase HDD Debug Data
011	Erases all debug logs on the HDD
	Erase SD Card Debug Data
012	Erases all debug logs on the SD Card. If the card contains only debugging files generated by an event specified by SP5858, the files are erased when SP5857 010 or 011 is executed.
	To enable this SP, the machine must be cycled off and on.
013	Free Space on SD Card
	Displays the amount of space available on the SD card.

	Debug Save When	
These SPs select the content of the debugging information to be saved to the destination selected by SP5857-002.		
	SP5858-003 stores one SC specified by number.	
001*	Engine SC Error (0:OFF 1:ON)	Stores SC codes generated by copier engine errors.
002*	Controller SC Error (0:OFF 1:ON)	Stores SC codes generated by GW controller errors.
003*	Any SC Error	[0 to 65535 / 0 / 1step]
004*	Jam (0:OFF 1:ON)	Stores jam errors.

5859*	Debug Save Key No.
-------	--------------------

001	Key 1	
002	Key 2	
003	Key 3	
004	Key 4	These SPs allow you to set up to 10 keys for log files for functions that use common memory on the controller board. [0 to 9999999 / 0 / 1]
005	Key 5	
006	Key 6	
007	Key 7	
008	Key 8	
009	Key 9	
010	Key 10	

5860*	SMTP/POP3/IMAP4		
	Partial Mail Receive Timeout		
020	[1 to 168 / 72 / 1 hour] Sets the amount of time to wait before saving a mail that breaks up during reception. The received mail is discarded if the remaining portion of the mail is not received during this prescribed time.		
	MDN Response RFC2298 Compliance		
021	Determines whether RFC2298 compliance is switched on for MDN reply mail. [0 to 1 / 1 / 1] 0: No, 1: Yes		
	SMTP Auth. From Field Replacement		
022	Determines whether the FROM item of the mail header is switched to the validated account after the SMTP server is validated. [0 to 1 / 0 / 1] 0: No. "From" item not switched. 1: Yes. "From" item switched.		

	SMTP Auth Direct Sending
	Select the authentication method for SMPT.
	Bit 0: LOGIN
	Bit 1: PLAIN
025	Bit 2: CRAM_MD5
	Bit 3: DIGEST_MD5
	Bit 4 to Bit 7: Not Used
	◆ Note
	This SP is activated only when SMTP authentication is enabled by UP mode.
	S/MIME: MIME Header Setting
	Selects the MIME header type of an E-mail sent by S/MIME.
026	[0 to 2 / 0 / 1]
020	0: Microsoft Outlook Express standard
	1: Internet Draft standard
	2: RFC standard
	S/MIME: Authentication Check
028	When sending S/MIME mail, specifies whether to check the destination authentication.
	[0 to 1 / 0 / 1]
	0: Not checked
	1: Checked

5866	E-Mail Report	
001	Report Validity	Enables or disables the E-mail alert function. [0 or 1 / 0 / -] 0: Enabled, 1: Disabled
005	Add Date Field	Adds or does not add the date field to the header of the alert mail. [O or 1 / 0 / -] O: Not added, 1: Added

5869 RAM Disk Setting

001	Mail Function	Enables or disables the Mail function.
001		[0 or 1 / 0 / –] 0: Enabled, 1: Disabled

5870	Common Key Info Writing	
001	Writing	Writes to flash ROM the common proof for validating the device for @Remote specifications.
003	Initialize	Initializes the data area of the common proof for validating.

	SD Card Appli.	Move
Allows you to move applications from one SD card another. For more, see "SD Appli Move" in the chapter "System Maintenance (Main Chapters).		
001	Move Exec	Executes the move from one SD card to another.
002	Undo Exec	This is an undo function. It cancels the previous execution.

5878	Option Setup		
001	Data Overwrite Security	Press [Execute] to initialize the Data Overwrite Security option for the copier. For more, see "DataOverwriteSecurity Unit" in the chapter "Installation".	

5001	Fixed Phase Block Erasing
5881	Detects the Fixed phrase.

5887	SD Get Counter
	This SP determines whether the ROM can be updated.
001	This SP sends a text file to an SD card inserted in SD card Slot 2 (lower slot). The operation stores. The file is stored in a folder created in the root directory of the SD card called SD_COUNTER. The file is saved as a text file (*.txt) prefixed with the number of the machine.
	1. Insert the SD card in SD card Slot 2 (lower slot).
	2. Select SP5887 then touch [EXECUTE].
	Touch [Execute] in the message when you are prompted.

	Personal Information Protect
	Selects the protection level for logs.
5888*	[0 to 1 / 0 / 1]
	0: No authentication, No protection for logs
	1: No authentication, Protected logs (only an administrator can see the logs)

5893	SDK Application Counter
3693	Displays the counter name of each SDK application.
001	SDK-1
002	SDK-2
003	SDK-3
004	SDK-4
005	SDK-5
006	SDK-6

	Plug & Play Maker/Model Name
5907	Selects the brand name and the production name for Windows Plug & Play. This information is stored in the NVRAM. If the NVRAM is defective, these names should be registered again.
	After selecting, press the "Original Type" key and "#" key at the same time. When the setting is completed, the beeper sounds five times.

5919*	HDD Encryption	
	Display Operation State	
	Shows the status of the encryption function for the HDD.	
001	[0 or 1 / 0 / -] 0: Not Activated	
	0: Not Activated	
	1: Activated	

5930	Meter Charge			
------	--------------	--	--	--

	Display Operation State
001	0: OFF
	1: ON

	Device Setting	
5985	The NIC and USB support features are built into the GW controller. Use this SP to enable and disable these features. In order to use the NIC and USB functions built into the controller board, these SP codes must be set to "1".	
		[0 to 2 / 0 / 1 /step] 0: Disable, 1: Enable, 2: Function limitation
001	On Board NIC	When the "Function limitation" is set, "On board NIC" is limited only for the NRS or LDAP/NT authentication.
	Oli Bodia INIC	 Other network applications than @Remote or LDAP/NT authentication are not available when this SP is set to "2". Even though you can change the initial settings of those network applications, the settings do not work
002	On Board USB	[0 or 1 / 0 / 1/step] 0: Disable, 1: Enable

5990	SP Print Mode
3990	Prints out the SMC sheets.
001	All (Data List)
002	SP (Mode Data List)
003	User Program
004	Logging Data
005	Diagnostic Report
006	Non-Default
007	NIB Summary
008	Capture Log

021	Copier User Program
022	Scanner SP
023	Scanner User Program
024	SDK/J Summary
025	SDK/J Application Info

5992	SP Text Mode
	Writes the SMC sheets into the SD card.
001	All (Data List)
002	SP (Mode Data List)
003	User Program
004	Logging Data
005	Diagnostic Report
006	Non-Default
007	NIB Summary
008	Capture Log
021	Copier User Program
022	Scanner SP
023	Scanner User Program
024	SDK/J Summary
025	SDK/J Application Info
026	Print SP

Engine SP Tables-6

SP6-xxx: Peripherals

6128	Punch Position: Sub Scan		
0128	Adjusts the punching position in the sub scan direction. (For D636/D637)		
001	2-Hole: DOM (Japan)		
002	3-Hole: NA		
003	4-Hole: EU	[-7.5 to 7.5 / 0 / 0.5 mm]	
004	5-Hole: SCAN		
005	2-Hole: NA		

6129	Punch Position: Main Scan		
0129	Adjusts the punching position in the main scan direction. (For D636/D637)		
001	2-Hole: DOM (Japan)		
002	3-Hole: NA		
003	4-Hole: EU	[-2 to 2 / 0 / 0.4 mm]	
004	4-Hole: SCAN		
005	2-Hole: NA		

	Skew Correction: Buckle Adj.
6130*	Adjusts the paper buckle at the punch unit for each paper size. (For D636/D637)

001	A3 SEF	
002	B4 SEF	
003	A4 SEF	
004	A4 LEF	
005	B5 SEF	
006	B5 LEF	[-5 to 5 / 0 / 0.25 mm]
007	DLT SEF	[-5 10 5 / 0 / 0.25 mm]
008	LG SEF	
009	LT SEF	
010	LT LEF	
011	12" x 18"	
012	Other	

6131*	Skew Correction Control
	Selects the skew correction control for each paper size. (For D636/D637)

001	A3 SEF	
002	B4 SEF	
003	A4 SEF	
004	A4 LEF	
005	B5 SEF	
006	B5 LEF	[0 to 1 / 1 / 1 mm]
007	DLT SEF	
008	LG SEF	
009	LT SEF	
010	LT LEF	
011	12" x 18"	
012	Other	

	Jogger Fence Fine Adj.	
	6132*	This SP adjusts the distance between the jogger fences and the sides of the stack on the finisher stapling tray in the (Booklet) Finisher D636/D637. The adjustment is done perpendicular to the direction of paper feed.

001	A3 SEF	
002	B4 SEF	
003	A4 SEF	
004	A4 LEF	
005	B5 SEF	
006	B5 LEF	[-1.5 to 1.5 / 0 / 0.5 mm]
007	DLT SEF	[-1.5 to 1.5 / 0 / 0.5 mm]
008	LG SEF	
009	LT SEF	
010	LT LEF	
011	12" x 18"	
012	Other	

	Staple Position Adjustment
6133*	Adjusts the staple position for each finisher (D636/D637). + Value: Moves the staple position to the rear side.
	- Value: Moves the staple position to the front side.
	[-3.5 to 3.5 / 0 / 0.5 mm]

6134*	Saddle Stitch Position Adj.	
	Use this SP to adjust the stapling position of the booklet stapler when paper is stapled and folded in the Booklet Finisher (D637).	

001	A3 SEF	
002	B4 SEF	[-3 to 3 / 0 / 0.2 mm]
003	A4 SEF	+ Value: Shifts staple position toward the crease.
004	B5 SEF	- Value: Shifts staple position away from the crease
005	DLT SEF	Feed Out
006	LG SEF	J
007	LT SEF	
008	12" x 18"	$\bigoplus \longleftarrow \rightarrow \bigcirc$
009	Other	

	Folder Position Adj.	
6135* This SP correct Finisher D633		e folding position when paper is stapled and folded in the Booklet
001	A3 SEF	
002	B4 SEF	[-3 to 3 / 0 / 0.2 mm]
003	A4 SEF	+ Value: Shifts staple position toward the crease.
004	B5 SEF	- Value: Shifts staple position away from the crease.
005	DLT SEF	Feed Out
006	LG SEF	
007	LT SEF	$\begin{array}{c} \oplus & \leftarrow & \rightarrow & \ominus \\ \hline \end{array}$
008	12" x 18"	
009	Other	

	Book Fold Repeat
6136*	Sets the number of times that folding is done in the Booklet Finisher D637.
	[2 to 30 / 2 / 1 time/step]

4107	Finisher Free Run	
6137	These SPs are used for the D588 or D636/D637.	
001	Free Run 1	D588: System free run D636/D637: Free run for paper edge stapling.
002	Free Run 2	D588: Free run for durability testing D636/D637: Not used
003	Free Run 3	Not used
004	Free Run 4	Not used

	Entrance Sensor	
6139	Display the signals received from sensors and switches of the (booklet) finisher. (D588) (Pp.181)	

	FIN (EUP) INPUT Check	
6140	Display the signals received from sensors and switches of the (booklet) finisher. (D636/D637) (**p.181)	

	FIN (KIN) OUPUT Check
6144	Display the signals received from sensors and switches of the (booklet) finisher. (D588) (p.190)

	FIN (EUP) OUPUT Check	
6145	Display the signals received from sensors and switches of the (booklet) finisher. (D636/D637) (**p.190)	

6148	Jogger Fine Adj.
------	------------------

001	АЗТ	
002	B4T	
003	A4T	
004	A4Y	
005	B5Y	
006	A5Y	Adjusts the jogger location [Horizontal direction]
007	DLT-T	[-1.5 to 1.5 / 0 / 0.5 /mm] *Jogger is optional equipment.
008	LG-T	
009	LT-T	
010	LT-Y	
011	HLT-Y	
012	Other	

	Max. Pre-Stack Sheet	[0 to 3 / 3 / 1 sheets step]
6149*	This SP sets the number of sheets sent Note You may need to adjust this setti paper.	to the pre-stack tray. ng or switch it off when feeding thick or slick

	6150	Jogger Control	
001	Enables or disables the jogger.		
		[0 to 1 / 0 / 1 /step]	

	Extra Staples
	More than the standard number of sheets can be stapled. This SP sets the additional number of sheets (This Setting + Standard Number = maximum number of sheets).
6830*	 If the number of the maximum for staples is increased, and the mechanical warranty of the unit can be guaranteed, then the setting can take effect without changing the controller software.
	 However, assurance that mechanical performance can be guaranteed is required before changing the setting to increase the staple load for more than the maximum in the feed/exit specifications. Raising this setting without quality assurance could damage the machine.
1	Staple positions other than booklet stapling
	[0 to 50 / 0 / 1]
2	2 Booklet stapling
	[0 to 50 / 0 / 1]

Engine SP Tables-7

SP7-xxx: Data Log

7401*	Total SC Counter	
	SC Counter	
001	Displays the total number of service calls that have occurred. This SC counter can be reset by executing SP7807 (SC/Jam Counter Reset).	
	Total SC Counter	
002	Displays the cumulative sum of service calls that have occurred. This SC counter cannot be reset by executing SP7807 (SC/Jam Counter Reset).	

7403*	SC History	
001	Latest	
002	Latest 1	
003	Latest 2	
004	Latest 3	Displays the most recent 10 service calls.
005	Latest 4	
006	Latest 5	
007	Latest 6	
008	Latest 7	
009	Latest 8	
010	Latest 9	

7404*	SC991 History
-------	---------------

001	Latest		
002	Latest 1	Displays the 10 most recently detected SC991 codes.	
003	Latest 2		
004	Latest 3		
005	Latest 4		
006	Latest 5		
007	Latest 6		
008	Latest 7		
009	Latest 8		
010	Latest 9		

7502*	Total Paper Jam
	Jam Counter
001	Displays the total number of paper jams. This SC counter can be reset by executing SP7807 (SC/Jam Counter Reset).
	Total Jam Counter
002	Displays the cumulative sum of paper jams.
	This SC counter cannot be reset by executing SP7807 (SC/Jam Counter Reset).

	Total Jams Location
7504*	These SPs display the total number of paper jams by location. A "Check-in" (paper late) error occurs when the paper fails to activate the sensor at the precise time. A "Checkout" ("paper lag") paper jam occurs when the paper remains at the sensor for longer than the prescribed time.
001	At power On
003	Tray 1: On
004	Tray 2: On
005	Tray 3: On

006	Tray 4: On
007	LCT: On
800	Bypass: On
009	Duplex: On
011	Vertical Transport 1: On
012	Vertical Transport 2: On
013	Bank: Transport Sn 1: On
014	Bank: Transport Sn 2: On
017	Registration: On
019	Fusing Exit: On
020	Paper Exit: On
021	Bridge Exit On
022	Bridge Transport: On
024	Junction Gate Sensor: On
025	Duplex Exit: On
026	Duplex Entrance: On (In)
027	Duplex Entrance: On (Out)
051	Vertical Transport 1: Off
052	Vertical Transport 2: Off
053	Bank Transport 1: Off
054	Bank Transport 2: Off
057	Registration Sensor: Off
058	LCT Feed Sensor: Off
060	Paper Exit: Off
061	Bridge: Exit: Off
062	Bridge: Transport: Off

064	Junction Gate Sensor: Off
065	Duplex Exit: Off
066	Duplex Entrance: Off (In)
067	Duplex Entrance: Off (Out)
100	Finisher Entrance: KIN
101	Finisher Shift Tray Exit: KIN
102	Finisher Staple: KIN
103	Finisher Exit: KIN
105	Finisher Tray Lift Motor: KIN
106	Finisher Jogger Motor: KIN
107	Finisher Shift Motor: KIN
108	Finisher Staple Motor: KIN
109	Finisher Exit Motor: KIN
191	Finisher Entrance: EUP
192	Finisher Proof Exit: EUP
193	Finisher Shift Tray Exit: EUP
194	Finisher Staple Exit: EUP
195	Finisher Exit: EUP
198	Finisher Folder: EUP
199	Finisher Tray Motor: EUP
200	Finisher Jogger Motor: EUP
201	Finisher Shift Motor: EUP
202	Finisher Staple Moving Motor: EUP
203	Finisher Staple Motor: EUP
204	Finisher Folder Motor: EUP
206	Finisher Punch Motor: EUP

7506*	Jam Count by	Paper Size
005	A4 LEF	
006	A5 LEF	
014	B5 LEF	
038	LT LEF	
044	HLT LEF	
132	A3 SEF	
133	A4 SEF	
134	A5 SEF	Displays the total number of copy jams by paper size.
141	B4 SEF	
142	B5 SEF	
160	DLT SEF	
164	LG SEF	
166	LT SEF	
172	HLT SEF	
255	Others	

7507*

001	Last				
002	Latest 1	Displays the copy jam history (the most recent 10 jams)			
003	Latest 2	Sample Display:			
004	Latest 3	SIZE:05h	CODE:007 SIZE:0.5h		
005	Latest 4	TOTAL:0000334			
006	Latest 5	DATE: Mon Mar	15 11:44:5	0 2000	
		where:			
007	Latest 6	CODE is the SP7504-*** number (see above.			
008	Latest 7	SIZE is the ASAP paper size code in hex. TOTAL is the total jam error count (SP7502)			
009	Latest 8	DATE is the date the jams occurred.			
010	Latest 9	1			
Size	Code	Size	Code	Size	Code
A4 (S)	05	A3 (L)	84	DLT (L)	A0
A5 (S)	06	A4 (L)	85	LG (L)	A4
B5 (S)	OE	A5 (L)	86	LT (L)	A6
LT (S)	26	B4 (L)	8D	HLT (L)	AC
HLT (S)	2C	B5 (L)	8E	Others	FF

	ROM No./Firmware Version
7801	This SP code displays the firmware versions of all ROMs in the system, including the mainframe, the ARDF, and peripheral devices.

7803*	PM Counter Display		
	Displays the PM counter since the last PM.		
001	Paper	[0 to 999999 / 0 / 1 page]	
001	Displays the paper counter (pages)		
002	Page: PCD	[0 to 999999 / 0 / 1 page]	
	Displays the PCD (Drum and Develop	ment unit) counter (pages)	

002	Page: Transfer	[0 to 999999 / 0 / 1 page]	
003	Displays the transfer unit counter (pages).		
00.4	Page: Fuser	[0 to 999999 / 0 / 1 page]	
004	Displays the fusing unit counter (page	es).	
005	Rotation: PCD	[0 to 999999999 / 0 / 1 mm]	
003	Displays the PCD rotation counter (di	stance).	
006	Rotation: Transfer	[0 to 999999999 / 0 / 1 mm]	
008	Displays the transfer unit rotation counter (distance).		
007	Rotation: Fuser	[0 to 999999999 / 0 / 1 mm]	
007	Displays the fuser unit rotation counter (distance).		
008	Rotation(%): PCD	[0 to 255 / 0 / 1 %]	
008	Displays the PCD (%) rotation counter (Distance/PM).		
009	Rotation(%):Transfer	[0 to 255 / 0 / 1 %]	
009	Displays the transfer unit (%) rotation counter (distance/PM).		
010	Rotation(%):Fuser	[0 to 255 / 0 / 1 %]	
	Displays the fuser unit (%) rotation counter (distance/PM).		
011	Rotation(%):Web	[0 to 255 / 0 / 1 %]	
OTT	Displays the web unit (%) rotation counter (distance/PM).		

	PM Counter Reset
7804	Resets the PM counter. Touch [Execute] two times > "Completed" > [Exit]
001	Рарег
	Resets the PM counter of the paper.
002	PCD
	Resets the PM counter of the PCD (Drum and Development unit except developer).

003	Transfer
	Resets the PM counter of the transfer unit.
004	Fuser
004	Resets the PM counter of the fuser unit.
005	Web
	Reset the PM counter of the web unit.
006	All Clear
	Resets all PM counter

7805	Parts Counter	
001	Page: OPC	[0 to 999999 / 0 / 1 page]
001	Displays the parts counter (pages) of the OPC.	
002	Page: Charge Roller	[0 to 999999 / 0 / 1 page]
002	Displays the parts counter (pages) of	the charge roller.
003	Page: Developer	[0 to 999999 / 0 / 1 page]
003	Displays the parts counter (pages) of the developer.	
004	Page: Belt Blade	[0 to 999999 / 0 / 1 page]
004	Displays the parts counter (pages) of the transfer belt cleaning blade.	
005	Page: Heat Roller	[0 to 999999 / 0 / 1 page]
003	Displays the parts counter (pages) of the hot roller.	
006	Page: Pressure Roller	[0 to 999999 / 0 / 1 page]
008	Displays the parts counter (pages) of the pressure roller.	
007	Page: Cleaning Roller	[0 to 999999 / 0 / 1 page]
Displays the parts counter (pages) of the clean		the cleaning roller.
008	Page: Thermistor	[0 to 999999 / 0 / 1 page]
008	Displays the parts counter (pages) of the thermistors.	

	Page: Stripper	[0 to 999999 / 0 / 1 page]
009	Displays the parts counter (pages) of the strippers.	
010	Rotation: OPC	[0 to 999999999 / 0 / 1 mm]
010	Displays the parts counter (rotations)	of the OPC.
011	Rotation: Charge Roller	[0 to 999999999 / 0 / 1 mm]
011	Displays the parts counter (rotations) of the charge roller.	
012	Rotation: Developer	[0 to 999999999 / 0 / 1 mm]
012	Displays the parts counter (rotations)	of the developer.
013	Rotation: Belt Blade	[0 to 999999999 / 0 / 1 mm]
013	Displays the parts counter (rotations)	of the transfer belt, blade.
014	Rotation: Heat Roller	[0 to 999999999 / 0 / 1 mm]
014	Displays the parts counter (rotations)	of the hot roller.
015	Rotation: Pressure Roller	[0 to 999999999 / 0 / 1 mm]
013	Displays the parts counter (rotations)	of the pressure roller.
016	Rotation: Cleaning Roller	[0 to 999999999 / 0 / 1 mm]
010	Displays the parts counter (rotations)	of the cleaning roller.
017	Rotation: Thermistor	[0 to 999999999 / 0 / 1 mm]
017	Displays the parts counter (rotations)	of the thermistors.
018	Rotation: Stripper	[0 to 999999999 / 0 / 1 mm]
018	Displays the parts counter (rotations) of the strippers.	
019	Page(%): Web	[0 to 255 / 0 / 1 %]
Displays the parts counter (rotations/PI		PM %) of the cleaning web.

7806	Counter Clear	
001	OPC	
	Resets the parts counter of the OPC.	

000	Charge Roller	
002	Resets the parts counter of the charge roller.	
003	Developer	
003	Resets the parts counter of the developer.	
004	Belt: Blade	
004	Resets the parts counter of the transfer belt cleaning blade.	
005	Heat Roller	
003	Resets the parts counter of the hot rolle	ır.
006	Pressure Roller	
008	Resets the parts counter of the pressure roller.	
007	Cleaning Roller	
007	Resets the parts counter of the cleaning	g roller.
008	Web	
008	Resets the parts counter of the cleaning web.	
009	Thermistor	
009	Resets the parts counter of the thermistors.	
010	Stripper	
010	Resets the parts counter of the strippers	3.
011	All Clear	
011	Resets all parts counters.	

	SC/Jam Counter Reset
7807	Resets the SC and jam counters. To reset, press Execute on the touch panel.
	This SP does not reset the jam history counters: SP7507, SP7508.

	Self-Diagnose Result Display
7832	Execute to open the "Self-Diagnostics Result Display" to view details about errors. Use the keys in the display on the touch-panel to scroll through all the information. If no errors have occurred, you will see the "No Error" message on the screen.

7836	Total Memory Size
	Displays the memory capacity of the controller system.

7853	Replacement Counter	
001	PCD	[0 to 255 / 0 / 1]
001	Displays the replacement counter of the PCD (Drum and Development unit).	
000	Transfer	[0 to 255 / 0 / 1]
002	Displays the replacement counter of the transfer unit.	
002	Fuser	[0 to 255 / 0 / 1]
003	Displays the replacement counter of the fusing unit.	
004	Web	[0 to 255 / 0 / 1]
004	Displays the replacement counter o	f the cleaning web.

	zero cross	[0 to 255 / 60 / 1]
7856*	Stores and displays the detected zero from the wall socket.	cross frequency of the main ac power supply

	Assert Info. DFU		
7901	These SP numbers display generated by the machine	bers display the results of the occurrence of the most recent SC code the machine.	
001*	File Name	Module name	
002*	Number of Lines	Number of the lines where error occurred.	
003*	Location	Value	

7904	Near End Setting
------	------------------

7906	Prev Counter	
001	Page: PCD	[0 to 999999 / 0 / 1 page]
001	Displays the counter (pages) of the p	revious PCD
002	Page: Transfer	[0 to 999999 / 0 / 1 page]
002	Displays the previous counter (pages) of the previous transfer unit.
003	Page: Fuser	[0 to 999999 / 0 / 1 page]
003	Displays the previous counter (pages) of the previous fusing unit.
004	Rotation: PCD	[0 to 999999999 / 0 / 1 mm]
004	Displays the previous counter (rotations) of the previous PCD	
005	Rotation: Transfer	[0 to 999999999 / 0 / 1 mm]
003	Displays the previous counter (rotations) of the previous transfer unit.	
006	Rotation: Fuser	[0 to 999999999 / 0 / 1 mm]
008	Displays the previous counter (rotations/PM %) of the previous fusing unit.	
007	Rotation(%):PCD	[0 to 255 / 0 / 1 mm]
007	Displays the previous counter (rotations/PM %) of the previous PCD	
008	Rotation(%):Transfer	[0 to 255 / 0 / 1 mm]
008	Displays the previous counter (rotations/PM %) of the previous transfer unit.	
009	Rotation(%):Fuser	[0 to 255 / 0 / 1 mm]
009	Displays the previous counter (rotations/PM %) of the previous fusing unit.	
010	Rotation(%):Web	[0 to 255 / 0 / 1 %]
010	Displays the previous counter (rotations/PM %) of the previous cleaning web.	

7950	Replacement Date	
001	PCD	
001	Displays the replacement date of the PCD.	
000	Transfer	
002	Displays the replacement date of the transfer unit.	
000	Fuser	
003	Displays the replacement date of the fusing unit.	
004	Web	
004	Displays the replacement date of the web unit.	

7951	Remaining Counter	
001	PCD(Page)	[0 to 255 / 255 / 1 days]
001	Displays the remaining counter (page	es) of the PCD.
002	Transfer(Page)	[0 to 255 / 255 / 1 days]
002	Displays the remaining counter (page	es) of the transfer unit.
003	Fuser(Page)	[0 to 255 / 255 / 1 days]
003	Displays the remaining counter (pages) of the fusing unit.	
005	PCD(Rotation)	[0 to 255 / 255 / 1 days]
003	Displays the remaining counter (rotations) of the PCD.	
006	Transfer(Rotation)	[0 to 255 / 255 / 1 days]
008	Displays the remaining counter (rotations) of the transfer unit.	
007	Fuser(Rotation)	[0 to 255 / 255 / 1 days]
007	Displays the remaining counter (rotations) of the fusing unit.	
009	PCD (%)	[0 to 255 / 100 / 1 %]
007	Displays the remaining counter (%) of the PCD.	

010	Transfer (%)	[0 to 255 / 100 / 1 %]
	Displays the remaining counter (%) of the transfer unit.	
011	Fuser (%)	[0 to 255 / 100 / 1 %]
011	Displays the remaining counter (%) of the fusing unit.	
012	Web (%)	[0 to 255 / 100 / 1 %]
013	Displays the remaining counter (%) of the cleaning web.	

7952	PM Yield Setting		
7,432	Sets the each yield of the following.		
	PCD(Page)	[0 to 99999999/ 160000 / 1 sheet]	
001	Sets the PM yield of the PCD (Pages)		
000	Transfer(Page)	[0 to 9999999 / 160000 / 1 sheet]	
002	Sets the PM yield of the transfer unit (Pages).	
003	Fuser(Page)	[0 to 9999999 / 160000 / 1 sheet]	
003	Sets the PM yield of the fusing unit (Pages).		
	PCD(Rotation)	C2b: [0 to 999999999 / 71990000 / 1 mm]	
005		C2c: [0 to 999999999 / 75500000 / 1 mm]	
	Sets the PM yield of the PCD (Rotations).		
	Transfer(Rotation)	C2b: [0 to 999999999 / 62770000 / 1 mm]	
006		C2c: [0 to 999999999 / 65420000 / 1 mm]	
	Sets the PM yield of the transfer unit (Rotations).		
	Fuser(Rotation)	C2b: [0 to 999999999 / 54880000 / 1 mm]	
007		C2b: [0 to 999999999 / 55800000 / 1 mm]	
	Sets the PM yield of the fusing unit (Rotations).		
009	Web (%)	[0 to 255 / 92 / 1 %]	
009	Sets the PM yield (%) of the web unit.		

7953	Operation Env Log	
001	T<10	[0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1 mm]
001	Displays the PCU rotation distance in	the environment: T<10°C
002	10<=T<=17	[0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1 mm]
002	Displays the PCU rotation distance in the environment: 10°C<=T<=17°C	
003	17 <t<23< td=""><td>[0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1 mm]</td></t<23<>	[0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1 mm]
003	Displays the PCU rotation distance in the environment: 17<=T<=23	
00.4	23<=T<=27	[0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1 mm]
004	Displays the PCU rotation distance of the environment: 23<=T<=27	
005	27<=T<=32	[0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1 mm]
005	Displays the PCU rotation distance of the environment: 27<=T<=32	
006	32 <t< td=""><td>[0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1 mm]</td></t<>	[0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1 mm]
	Displays the PCU rotation distance of the environment: 32 <t< td=""></t<>	

ſ.	7954	Env Log Clear
'	7934	Resets the environment logs (SP7953).

SP8-XXX: Data Log2

Many of these counters are provided for features that are currently not available, such as sending color faxes, and so on. However, here are some Group 8 codes that when used in combination with others, can provide useful information.

SP Numbers	What They Do
SP8211 to SP8216	The number of pages scanned to the document server.
SP8401 to SP8406	The number of pages printed from the document server
SP8691 to SP8696	The number of pages sent from the document server

Specifically, the following questions can be answered:

- How is the document server actually being used?
- What application is using the document server most frequently?
- What data in the document server is being reused?

Most of the SPs in this group are prefixed with a letter that indicates the mode of operation (the mode of operation is referred to as an "application"). Before reading the Group 8 Service Table, make sure that you understand what these prefixes mean.

Prefixes	What it means	
T:	Total: (Grand Total).	Grand total of the items counted for all applications (C, F, P, etc.).
P:	Print application.	
O:	Other applications (external network applications, for example)	Refers to network applications such as Web Image Monitor. Utilities developed with the SDK (Software Development Kit) will also be counted with this group in the future.

The Group 8 SP codes are limited to 17 characters, forced by the necessity of displaying them on the small LCDs of printers and faxes that also use these SPs. Read over the list of abbreviations below and refer to it again if you see the name of an SP that you do not understand.

Key for Abbreviations

3

Abbreviation	What it means
/	"By", e.g. "T:Jobs/Apl" = Total Jobs "by" Application
>	More (2> "2 or more", 4> "4 or more"
AddBook	Address Book
Apl	Application
B/W	Black & White
Bk	Black
С	Cyan
ColCr	Color Create
ColMode	Color Mode
Comb	Combine
Comp	Compression
Deliv	Delivery
DesApl	Designated Application. The application (Copy, Fax, Scan, Print) used to store the job on the document server, for example.
Dev Counter	Development Count, no. of pages developed.
Dup, Duplex	Duplex, printing on both sides
Emul	Emulation
FC	Full Color
FIN	Post-print processing, i.e. finishing (punching, stapling, etc.)
Full Bleed	No Margins
GenCopy	Generation Copy Mode
GPC	Get Print Counter. For jobs 10 pages or less, this counter does not count up. For jobs larger than 10 pages, this counter counts up by the number that is in excess of 10 (e.g., for an 11-page job, the counter counts up 11-10 =1)
lFax	Internet Fax

Abbreviation	What it means	
ImgEdt	Image Edit performed on the original with the copier GUI, e.g. border removal, adding stamps, page numbers, etc.	
К	Black (YMCK)	
LS	Local Storage. Refers to the document server.	
LSize	Large (paper) Size	
Mag	Magnification	
МС	One color (monochrome)	
NRS	New Remote Service, which allows a service center to monitor machines remotely. "NRS" is used overseas, "CSS" is used in Japan.	
Org	Original for scanning	
OrgJam	Original Jam	
Palm 2	Print Job Manager/Desk Top Editor: A pair of utilities that allows print jobs to be distributed evenly among the printers on the network, and allows files to moved around, combined, and converted to different formats.	
PC	Personal Computer	
PGS	Pages. A page is the total scanned surface of the original. Duplex pages count as two pages, and A3 simplex count as two pages if the A3/DLT counter SP is switched ON.	
PJob	Print Jobs	
Ppr	Paper	
PrtJam	Printer (plotter) Jam	
PrtPGS	Print Pages	
R	Red (Toner Remaining). Applies to the wide format model A2 only. This machine is under development and currently not available.	
Rez	Resolution	
SC	Service Code (Error SC code displayed)	
Scn	Scan	

Abbreviation	What it means
Sim, Simplex	Simplex, printing on 1 side.
S-to-Email	Scan-to-E-mail
SMC	SMC report printed with SP5990. All of the Group 8 counters are recorded in the SMC report.
Svr	Server
TonEnd	Toner End
TonSave	Toner Save
TXJob	Send, Transmission
YMC	Yellow, Magenta, Cyan
YMCK	Yellow, Magenta, Cyan, Black



• All of the Group 8 SPs are able to reset by "SP5 801 1 Memory All Clear".

80	001	T:Total Jobs	*CTL	These SPs count the number of times each application is used to do a job.
80	004	P:Total Jobs	*CTL	[0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1]

- These SPs reveal the number of times an application is used, not the number of pages processed.
- When an application is opened for image input or output, this counts as one job.
- Interrupted jobs (paper jams, etc.) are counted, even though they do not finish.
- Only jobs executed by the customer are counted. Jobs executed by the customer engineer using the SP modes are not counted.
- When using secure printing (when a password is required to start the print job), the job is counted at the time when either "Delete Data" or "Specify Output" is specified.
- When the customer prints a report (user code list, for example), the O: counter increments.

	T:FIN Jobs	*CTL	[0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1]
8061	These SPs total the finishing methods. The finishing method is specified by the application.		

	P:FIN Jobs	*CTL	[0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1]		
8064	These SPs total finishing methods for print jobs only. The finishing method is specified by the application.				
	O:FIN Jobs	*CTL	[0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1]		
8067	These SPs total finishing methods for jobs executed by an external application, over the network. The finishing method is specified by the application.				
Number of jobs started in Sort mode. When copy job is set for Sort and then stored on the server, the L: counter increments. (See SP8-0					
806x 2	Stack	Number of jobs started out of Sort mode.			
806x 3	Staple	Number	of jobs started in Staple mode.		
800x 4 Booklet			of jobs started in Booklet mode. If the machine e mode, the Staple counter also increments.		
8 06x 5	Z-Fold	Number of jobs started In any mode other than the Booklet mode and set for folding (Z-fold).			
806x 6	Punch	Number of jobs started in Punch mode. When Punch is set for a print job, the P: counter increments. (See SP8-064-6.)			
806x 7	806x 7 Other (Reserved)				
806x 8	Inside-Flod	Not used			
806x 9	Three-In-Fold	Not used			
806x 10	Three-OUT-Fold	Not used			
806x 11	Four-Fold	Not used			
806x 12	KANNON-Fold	Not used			
806x 13 Perfect-Bind		Not used			
806x 14	Ring-Bind	Not used			
	T:Jobs/PGS	*CTL	[0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1]		
8071	These SPs count the number of jobs broken down by the number of pages in the job, regardless of which application was used.				

	P:Jobs/PGS	*CTL	[0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1]			
8074	These SPs count and calculate the number of print jobs by size based on the number of pages in the job.					
	O:Jobs/PGS	*CTL	[0 to 99	9999999 / 0 / 1]		
8077	These SPs count and calculate the number of "Other" application jobs (Web Image Monitor, Palm 2, etc.) by size based on the number of pages in the job.					
807x 1	1 Page	8 07x 8		21 to 50 Pages		
807x 2	807x 2 2 Pages 8 07x 9		x 9	51 to 100 Pages		
807x 3	3 Pages	8 07x 10		101 to 300 Pages		
807x 4	4 Pages	8 07x 11		301 to 500 Pages		
807x 5	5 Pages	8 07x 12		501 to 700 Pages		
807x 6	6 to 10 Pages	8 07x 13		701 to 1000 Pages		
807x 7	11 to 20 Pages	8 07>	(14	1001 to Pages		

- Interrupted jobs (paper jam, etc.) are counted, even though they do not finish.
- If a job is paused and re-started, it counts as one job.
- If the finisher runs out of staples during a print and staple job, then the job is counted at the time the error occurs.
- When printing the first page of a job from within the document server screen, the page is counted.

8381	T:Total PrtPGS	*CTL	These SPs count the number of pages printed
8384	P:Total PrtPGS	*CTL	by the customer. The counter for the application used for storing the pages
8387	O:Total PrtPGS	*CTL	increments. [O to 99999999 / O / 1] The L: counter counts the number of pages stored from within the document server mode screen at the operation panel. Pages stored with the Store File button from within the Copy mode screen go to the C: counter.

• When the A3/DLT double count function is switched on with SP5104, 1 A3/DLT page is counted as 2.

- When several documents are merged for a print job, the number of pages stored are counted for the application that stored them.
- These counters are used primarily to calculate charges on use of the machine, so the following pages are not counted as printed pages:
 - Blank pages in a duplex printing job.
 - Blank pages inserted as document covers, chapter title sheets, and slip sheets.
 - Reports printed to confirm counts.
 - All reports done in the service mode (service summaries, engine maintenance reports, etc.)
 - Test prints for machine image adjustment.
 - Error notification reports.
 - Partially printed pages as the result of a copier jam.

	LSize PrtPGS	*CTL	[0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1]	
8391	These SPs count pages printed on paper sizes A3/DLT and larger.			
	Note : In addition to being displayed in the SMC Report, these counters are also displayed in the User Tools display on the copy machine.			

8411	Prints/Duplex	*CTL	This SP counts the amount of paper (front/back counted as 1 page) used for duplex printing. Last pages printed only on one side are not counted. [0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1]
------	---------------	------	---

	T:PrtPGS/Dup Comb	*CTL	[0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1]	
8421	These SPs count by binding and combine, and n-Up settings the number of pages processed for printing. This is the total for all applications.			
	P:PrtPGS/Dup Comb	*CTL	[0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1]	
8424	These SPs count by binding and combine, and n-Up settings the number of pages processed for printing by the printer application.			
	O:PrtPGS/Dup Comb	*CTL	[0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1]	
8427	These SPs count by binding and combine, and n-Up settings the number of pages processed for printing by Other applications			
842x 1	Simplex> Duplex			

842x 4	Simplex Combine	
842x 5	Duplex Combine	
842x 6	2in1	2 pages on 1 side (2-Up)
842x 7	4 in 1	4 pages on 1 side (4-Up)
842x 8	6 in 1	6 pages on 1 side (6-Up)
842x 9	8 in 1	8 pages on 1 side (8-Up)
842x 10	9 in 1	9 pages on 1 side (9-Up)
842x 11	16 in 1	16 pages on 1 side (16-Up)
842x 12	Booklet	
842x 13	Magazine	
842x 14	2-in-1 + Booklet	
842x 15	4-in-1 + Booklet	
842x 16	6-in-1 + Booklet	
842x 17	8-in-1 + Booklet	
842x 18	9-in-1 + Booklet	
842x 19	2-in-1 + Magazine	
842x 20	4-in-1 + Magazine	
842x 21	6-in-1 + Magazine	
842x 22	8-in-1 + Magazine	
842x 23	9-in-1 + Magazine	
842x 24	16-in-1 + Magazine	

- These counts (SP8 421 to SP8 427) are especially useful for customers who need to improve their compliance with ISO standards for the reduction of paper consumption.
- Pages that are only partially printed with the n-Up functions are counted as 1 page.
- Here is a summary of how the counters work for Booklet and Magazine modes:

Booklet	Magazine
---------	----------

Original Pages	Count	Original Pages	Count
1	1	1	1
2	2	2	2
3	2	3	2
4	2	4	2
5	3	5	4
6	4	6	4
7	4	7	4
8	4	8	4

	T:PrtPGS/ImgEdt	*CTL	[0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1]	
8431	These SPs count the total number of pages output with the three features below, regardless of which application was used.			
	P:PrtPGS/ImgEdt	*CTL	[0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1]	
8434	These SPs count the total nuthe print application.	al number of pages output with the three features below with		
	O:PrtPGS/ImgEdt	*CTL	[0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1]	
8437	These SPs count the total number of pages output with the three feature. Other applications.		ages output with the three features below with	
843x 1	Cover/Slip Sheet	Total number of covers or slip sheets inserted. The count for a cover printed on both sides counts 2.		
843x 2	Series/Book	The number of pages printed in series (one side) or printed as a book with booklet right/left pagination.		
843x 3	User Stamp	The number of pages printed where stamps were applied, including page numbering and date stamping.		
0.4.4.1	T:PrtPGS/Ppr Size	*CTL	[0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1]	
0441	These SPs count by print pa		e number of pages printed by all applications.	

	P:PrtPGS/Ppr Size	*CTL	[0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1]	
8444	These SPs count by print paper size the number of pages printed by the printer application.			
	O:PrtPGS/Ppr Size	*CTL	[0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1]	
8447	These SPs count by print paper size the number of pages printed by Other applications.			
844x 1	A3			
844x 2	A4			
844x 3	A5			
844x 4	B4			
844x 5	B5			
844x 6	DLT			
844x 7	LG			
844x 8	LT			
844x 9	HLT			
844x 10	Full Bleed			
844x 254	Other (Standard)			
844x 255	Other (Custom)			

• These counters do not distinguish between LEF and SEF.

8451	PrtPGS/Ppr Tray		
6431	These SPs count the number of sheets fed from each paper feed station.		
001	Bypass Tray	*CTL	Bypass Tray [0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1]
002	Tray 1	*CTL	Copier
003	Tray 2	*CTL	[0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1]

004	Tray 3	*CTL	Paper Tray Unit (Option)
005	Tray 4	*CTL	[0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1]
006	Tray 5	*CTL	LCT (Option) [0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1]
007	Tray 6	*CTL	Currently not used.
008	Tray 7	*CTL	Currently not used.
009	Tray 8	*CTL	Currently not used.
010	Tray 9	*CTL	Currently not used.
011	Tray 10	*CTL	Currently not used.
012	Tray 11	*CTL	Currently not used.
013	Tray 12	*CTL	Currently not used.
014	Tray 13	*CTL	Currently not used.
015	Tray 14	*CTL	Currently not used.
016	Tray 15	*CTL	Currently not used.

	T:PrtPGS/Ppr Type	[0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1]		
	These SPs count by paper type the number pages printed by all applications.			
8461	These counters are not the same as the PM counter. The PM counter is based on feed timing to accurately measure the service life of the feed rollers. However, these counts are based on output timing.			
	Blank sheets (covers, covers, covers)	chapter cov	vers, slip sheets) are also counted.	
	 During duplex printing, pages printed on both sides count as 1, and a page printed on one side counts as 1. 			
0.44.4	P:PrtPGS/Ppr Type	*CTL	[0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1]	
8404	These SPs count by paper type the number pages printed by the pages page		mber pages printed by the printer application.	
846x 1	Normal			
846x 2	Recycled			
846x 3	Special			

846x 4	Thick
846x 5	Normal (Back)
846x 6	Thick (Back)
846x 7	OHP
846x 8	Other

8471	PrtPGS/Mag			
04/1	These SPs count by magnification rate the number of pages printed.			
001	< 49%	*CTL		
002	50% to 99%	*CTL		
003	100%	*CTL	[0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1]	
004	101% to 200%	*CTL		
005	201% <	*CTL		

- Counts are done for magnification adjusted for pages, not only on the operation panel but performed remotely with an external network application capable of performing magnification adjustment as well.
- Magnification adjustments done with printer drivers with PC applications such as Excel are also counted.
- Magnification adjustments done for adjustments after they have been stored on the document server are not counted.
- Magnification adjustments performed automatically during Auto Reduce/Enlarge copying are counted.
- The magnification rates of blank cover sheets, slip sheets, etc. are automatically assigned a rate of 100%.

8481	T:PrtPGS/TonSave	*CTL	[0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1]
8484	P:PrtPGS/TonSave	*CTL	[0 10 44444444 / 0 / 1]
	These SPs count the number of pages printed with the Toner Save feature switched on. Note: These SPs return the same results as this SP is limited to the Print application.		

8511	T:PrtPGS/Emul	*CTL	[0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1]
0311	These SPs count by printer emulation mode the total number of pages printed.		
8514	P:PrtPGS/Emul	*CTL	[0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1]
0314	These SPs count by printer (emulation r	node the total number of pages printed.
8 51x 1	RPCS		
8 51x 2	RPDL		
8 51x 3	PS3		
8 51x 4	R98		
8 51x 5	R16		
8 51x 6	GL/GL2		
8 51x 7	R55		
8 51x 8	RTIFF		
8 51x 9	PDF		
8 51x 10	PCL5e/5c		
8 51x 11	PCL XL		
8 51x 12	IPDL-C		
8 51x 13	BM-Links	Japan Or	nly
8 51x 14	Other		
8 51x 15	IPDS		

- \bullet SP8 511 and SP8 514 return the same results as they are both limited to the Print application.
- Print jobs output to the document server are not counted.

	T:PrtPGS/FIN	*CTL	[0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1]
8521	These SPs count by finishing applications.	g mode the	total number of pages printed by all

	P:PrtPGS/FIN	*CTL	[0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1]		
8524	These SPs count by finishing application.	g mode the total number of pages printed by the Print			
8 52x 1	Sort	Sort			
8 52x 2	Stack				
8 52x 3	Staple				
8 52x 4	Booklet	Booklet			
8 52x 5	Z-Fold				
8 52x 6	Punch				
8 52x 7	Other				
8 52x 8	Inside Fold	Half-Fold	(FM2) (Multi Fold Unit)		
8 52x 9	Three-IN-Fold	Letter Fold	d-in (FM4) (Multi Fold Unit)		
8 52x 10	Three-OUT-Fold	Letter Fol	d-out (FM3) (Multi Fold Unit)		
8 52x 11	Four Fold	Four Fold Double Parallel Fold (FM5) (Multi Fold Unit)			
8 52x 12	KANNON-Fold Gate Fold (FM6) (Multi Fold Unit)				
8 52x 13	Perfect-Bind Perfect Binder				
8 52x 14	Ring-Bind Ring Binder				

U Note

- If stapling is selected for finishing and the stack is too large for stapling, the unstapled pages are still counted.
- The counts for staple finishing are based on output to the staple tray, so jam recoveries are counted.

8531	Staples	*CTL	This SP counts the amount of staples used by the machine. [0 to 9999999 / 0 / 1]	
------	---------	------	---	--

8551	T:FIN Books
------	-------------

001	Perfect-Bind	*CTL			
002	Ring-Bind	*CTL	Not used		
8554	8554 T:FIN Books				
001	Perfect-Bind	*CTL			
002	Ring-Bind	*CTL	Not used		
8561	T:A Sheet Of Paper				
001	Total: Over A3/DLT	*CTL			
002	Total: Under A3/DLT	*CTL			
003	Duplex: Over A3/DLT	*CTL	[0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1]		
004	Duplex: Under A3/DLT	*CTL			
8564	P:A Sheet Of Paper				
001	Total: Over A3/DLT	*CTL			
002	Total: Under A3/DLT	*CTL			
003	Duplex: Over A3/DLT	*CTL	[0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1]		
004	Duplex: Under A3/DLT	*CTL			
8567	O:A Sheet Of Paper				
	Total: Over A3/DLT	*CTL			
002	Total: Under A3/DLT	*CTL			
003	Duplex: Over A3/DLT	*CTL	[0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1]		
004	Duplex: Under A3/DLT	*CTL			
	T:Counter	I	1		
		11. 1			
8581	These SPs count the total output broken down by color output, regardless of the application used. In addition to being displayed in the SMC Report, these counters are also displayed in the User Tools display on the copy machine.				

001 Total	*CTL [0 to 99999999 /	0 / 1]
-----------	-----------------------	--------

	O:Counter		
8591	These SPs count the totals for A3/DLT paper use, number of duplex pages printed, and the number of staples used. These totals are for Other (O:) applications only.		
001	A3/DLT	*CTL	[0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1]
002	Duplex	*CTL	[0 0 7777777 0 1]

	T: Coverage Counter			
8601	These SPs count the total coverage for each color and the total printout pages for each printing mode.			
001	B/W	*CTL	[0 to 2147483647 / 0 / 1% /step]	
011	B/W Printing Pages	*CTL	[0 to 9999999 / 0 / 1]	

P:Coverage Counter			
8004	-		
001	B/W	*CTL	[0 to 2147483647 / 0 / 1% /step]

8617	SDK Apli Counter				
8017	These SPs count the total printout pages for each SDK application.				
001	SDK-1	*CTL			
002	SDK-2	*CTL			
003	SDK-3	*CTL	[0.4-00000000 / 0 / 1]		
004	SDK-4	*CTL	[0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1]		
005	SDK-5	*CTL			
006	SDK-6	*CTL			

8621	Func Use Counter	
0021	-	

001	Function-001	*CTL	
002	Function-002	*CTL	
003	Function-003	*CTL	
004	Function-004	*CTL	
005	Function-005	*CTL	[0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1]
006	Function-006	*CTL	[0 10 4444444
007	Function-007	*CTL	
008	Function-008	*CTL	
009	Function-009	*CTL	
010	Function-010	*CTL	
011	Function-011	*CTL	
012	Function-012	*CTL	
013	Function-013	*CTL	
014	Function-014	*CTL	
015	Function-015	*CTL	[0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1]
016	Function-016	*CTL	[0 10 77777777 0 1]
017	Function-017	*CTL	
018	Function-018	*CTL	
019	Function-019	*CTL	
020	Function-020	*CTL	

021	Function-021	*CTL	
022	Function-022	*CTL	
023	Function-023	*CTL	
024	Function-024	*CTL	
025	Function-025	*CTL	[0+,00000000 / 0 / 1]
026	Function-026	*CTL	[0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1]
027	Function-027	*CTL	
028	Function-028	*CTL	
029	Function-029	*CTL	
030	Function-030	*CTL	
031	Function-031	*CTL	
032	Function-032	*CTL	
033	Function-033	*CTL	
034	Function-034	*CTL	
035	Function-035	*CTL	[0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1]
036	Function-036	*CTL	[0 0
037	Function-037	*CTL	
038	Function-038	*CTL	
039	Function-039	*CTL	
040	Function-040	*CTL	

041	Function-041	*CTL	
042	Function-042	*CTL	
043	Function-043	*CTL	
044	Function-044	*CTL	
045	Function-045	*CTL	[0.1.00000000 / 0./1]
046	Function-046	*CTL	[0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1]
047	Function-047	*CTL	
048	Function-048	*CTL	
049	Function-049	*CTL	
050	Function-050	*CTL	
051	Function-051	*CTL	
052	Function-052	*CTL	
053	Function-053	*CTL	
054	Function-054	*CTL	
055	Function-055	*CTL	[0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1]
056	Function-056	*CTL	[0 10 4444444
057	Function-057	*CTL	
058	Function-058	*CTL	
059	Function-059	*CTL	
060	Function-060	*CTL	
061	Function-061	*CTL	
062	Function-062	*CTL	[0 to 00000000 / 0 / 1]
063	Function-063	*CTL	[0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1]
064	Function-064	*CTL	

	Dev Counter			
These SPs count the frequency of use (nur black and other color toners.			ber of rotations of the development rollers) for	
001	Total *CTL [0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1]			
	Toner_Bottle_Info.	*ENG	[0 to 9999999 / 0 / 1]	
8781	These SPs display the number of already replaced toner bottles. NOTE: Currently, the data in SP7-833-011 through 014 and the data in SP8-781-001 through 004 are the same.			
001	Toner: BK The number of black-toner bottles			

	Toner Remain			
These SPs display the percent of toner remaining for each color. This SP allows check the toner supply at any time.			aining for each color. This SP allows the user to	
	· '	•	maining toner supply (1% steps) is better than measure in increments of 10 (10% steps).	
001	К	*CTL	[0 to 100 / 0 / 1% /step]	

8811	Eco Counter				
0011	-				
001	Eco Total	*CTL			
004	Duplex	*CTL			
005	Combine	*CTL	[0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1]		
008	Duplex (%)	*CTL	[0 10 4444444 / 0 / 1]		
009	Combine (%)	*CTL			
010	Paper Cut (%)	*CTL			
101	Eco Totalr:Last	*CTL			
104	Duplex:Last	*CTL	[0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1]		
105	Combine:Last	*CTL			

10	8 Duplex (%):Last	*CTL	
10	9 Combine (%):Last	*CTL	[0 to 100 / 0 / 1% /step]
1	O Paper Cut (%):Last	*CTL	

	Cvr Cnt: 0-10%				
These SPs display the number of from 0% to 10%.		f scanned sheets on which the coverage of each color is			
011	0 to 2%: BK *ENG [0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1]				
021	3 to 4%: BK	*ENG	[0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1]		
031	5 to 7%: BK	*ENG	[0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1]		
041	8 to 10%: BK	*ENG	[0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1]		

	CVr Cnt: 11-20%				
8861	These SPs display the number of scanned sheets on which the coverage of each color is from 11% to 20%.				
001	ВК	*ENG	[0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1]		

		CVr Cnt: 21-30%				
8871		These SPs display the number of scanned sheets on which the coverage of each color is from 21% to 30%.				
	001	BK *ENG [0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1]				

	CVr Cnt: 31%-					
8881	These SPs display the number of scanned sheets on which the coverage of each color is 31% or higher.					
001	BK *ENG [0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1]					

8891	Page/Toner Bottle			
0071	These SPs display the amount of the remaining current toner for each color.			
001	ВК	*ENG	[0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1]	

8901	Page/Toner_prev1			
8901	These SPs display the amount of the remaining previous toner for each color.			
001	1 BK *ENG [0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1]		[0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1]	

	8911	Page/Toner_prev2			
	8911	These SPs display the amount of the remaining 2nd previous toner for each color.			
	001	ВК	*ENG	[0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1]	

8921	Cvr Cnt/Total		
8921	Displays the total coverage and total printout number for each color.		
001	Coverage (%) Bk	*CTL	[0 to 2147483647 / 0 / 1% /step]
011	Coverage /P: Bk	*CTL	[0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1]

	Machine Status	*CTL	[0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1]	
8941	These SPs count the amount of time the machine spends in each operation mode. These SPs are useful for customers who need to investigate machine operation for improvement in their compliance with ISO Standards.			
001	Operation Time	Engine operation time. Does not include time while controller is saving data to HDD (while engine is not operating).		
002	Standby Time	Engine not operating. Includes time while controller saves data to HDD. Does not include time spent in Energy Save, Low Power, or Off modes.		
003	Energy Save Time	Includes time while the machine is performing background printing.		
004	Low Power Time	Includes time in Energy Save mode with Engi Includes time while machine is performing ba printing.		
005	Off Mode Time	Includes time while machine is performing backgroup rinting. Does not include time machine remains powered off with the power switches.		

006	SC	Total time when SC errors have been staying.
007	PrtJam	Total time when paper jams have been staying during printing.
008	OrgJam	Total time when original jams have been staying during scanning.
009	Supply PM Unit End	Total time when toner end has been staying

8961	Electricity Status			
8901	-			
001	Ctrl Standby Time	Time *CTL		
002	STR Time	*CTL	[0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1]	
003	Main Power Off Time	*CTL	[0 10 99999999 / 0 / 1]	
004	Reading and Printing Time	*CTL		
005	Printing Time	*CTL		
006	Reading Time	*CTL		
007	Eng Waiting Time	*CTL	[0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1]	
008	Low Power State Time	*CTL		
009	Silent State Time	*CTL		

8999	Admin. Counter List	
0777	-	
001	Total	
007	Printer: BW	[0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1]
012	A3/DLT	[0 0 7777777 0 1]
013	Duplex	
027	Printer: BW(%)	[0 to 2147483647 / 0 / 1]

Input Check

Copier

When entering the Input Check mode, 8 digits display the result for a section. Each digit corresponds to a different device as shown in the table.

Bit No.	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Result	0 or 1							

	Input Check				
5803	D	Reading			
	Description	0	1		
001	Tray 1: Paper Size Sensor	See the table 1 following	this table.		
002	Tray 1: Tray Set Sensor	Set	Not set		
003	Tray 1: Paper Lift Sensor	Not upper limit	Upper limit		
004	Tray 1: Paper End Sensor	No paper	Paper remaining		
005	Tray 1: Paper Height Sensor 1				
006	Tray 1: Paper Height Sensor 2	See the table 2 following this table.			
007	Tray 2: Paper Size Sensor	See the table 1 following	this table.		
008	Tray 2: Tray Set Sensor	Set	Not set		
009	Tray 2: Paper Lift Sensor	Not upper limit	Upper limit		
010	Tray 2: Paper End Sensor	No paper	Paper remaining		
011	Tray 2: Paper Height Sensor 1				
012	Tray 2: Paper Height Sensor 2	See the table 2 following	this table.		

013	Tray 1: Paper Feed Sensor	Paper detected	No paper detected		
014	Tray 2: Paper Feed Sensor	Paper detected	No paper detected		
015	Tray 3: Paper Feed Sensor	Paper detected	No paper detected		
016	Tray 4: Paper Feed Sensor	Paper detected	No paper detected		
017	LCT: Paper Feed Sensor	No paper detected	Paper detected		
018	Relay Sensor 1	Paper detected	No paper detected		
019	Relay Sensor 2	Paper detected	No paper detected		
020	Relay Sensor 3	No paper detected	Paper detected		
021	Relay Sensor 4	No paper detected	Paper detected		
022	Relay Sensor: LCT	No paper detected	Paper detected		
023	By-pass: Paper End Sensor	Not end	Paper end		
024	By-pass: Paper Size Sensor	See the table 3 following	ing this table.		
025	Registration Sensor	Paper detected	No paper detected		
026	Fusing Exit Sensor	No paper detected	Paper detected		
027	Fusing Entrance Sensor	Paper detected	No paper detected		
028	Junction Gate Relay Sensor	Paper detected	No paper detected		
029	Exit Sensor	Paper detected	No paper detected		
030	Paper Overflow Sensor	Not full	Full		
031	Right Cover Open/Close	Close	Open		
032	Duplex Unit Open/Close	Open	Close		
033	Duplex Entrance Sensor	Paper detected	No paper detected		
034	Duplex Exit Sensor	Paper detected	No paper detected		
035	Bank Right Cover Open/Close	Close	Open		
036	Tray Cover Open/Close	Close	Open		
037	LCT Set	Set	Not set		
038	Bridge/Exit Tray: Exit Sensor	Paper detected	No paper detected		

039	Bridge/Exit Tray: Relay Sensor	Paper detected	No paper detected
040	Bridge/Exit/Shift: Set Detection	Set	Not set
041	Bridge/Exit Tray: Left Guide Open/ Close	Close	Open
042	Bridge/Exit Tray: Right Guide Open/Close	Close	Open
043	Transfer Belt Unit HP Sensor	Not HP	HP
046	Fusing Unit Set	Set (Bit1)	Not set (Bit1)
047	Toner Overflow Sensor	Not full	Full
048	Interlock Detection 1	Right or front door is open.	Right or front door is close.
049	Interlock Detection 2	Right or front door is open.	Right or front door is close.
055	New U. Det. :PCDU		
057	Cleaning Web End	Not end	End
058	Punch Switch		
065	Bypass Tray Paper Length Detection	Paper detected	No paper detected
200	Scanner HP Sensor	Not HP	HP
201	Platen Cover Sensor	Open	Close

Table 1: Paper Height Sensor

0: Deactivated, 1: Activated (actuator inside sensor)

Remaining paper	Paper height sensor 1	Paper height sensor 2
Full	0	0
Nearly full	1	0
Near end	1	1
Almost empty	0	1

Table 2: Paper Size Switch

Switch 1 is used for the tray set detection.

0: Pushed, 1: Not pushed

Мо	Models			on
North America	Europe/Asia	4	3	2
11" x 17" SEF*1 (A3 SEF)	A3 SEF*1 (11" x 17" SEF)	0	0	1
8.5" x 14" SEF *2 (B4 SEF)	B4 SEF *2 (8.5" x 14" SEF)	0	0	0
A4 SEF	A4 SEF	1	1	0
8.5" x 11" SEF	8.5" x 11" SEF	1	1	1
B5 SEF	B5 SEF	0	1	1
11" x 81/2" LEF*3 (A4 LEF)	A4 LEF*3 (11" x 81/2" LEF)	1	0	0
10.5" × 7.25" LEF*4 (B5 LEF)	B5 LEF*4 (10.5" x 7.25" LEF)	0	1	0
A5 LEF	A5 LEF	1	0	1

 $^{^*}$ 1: The machine detects either 11" x 17" SEF or A3 SEF, depending on the setting of SP 5-181-002 (Tray 1) or -006 (Tray 2).

Table 3: Paper Size (By-pass Table)

0: Pushed, 1: Not pushed

Models	Bit No.
--------	---------

 $^{^*}$ 2: The machine detects either 8.5" x 14" SEF or B4 SEF, depending on the setting of SP 5-181-003 (Tray 1) or -007 (Tray 2).

^{*3}: The machine detects either 11" x 81/2" LEF or A4 LEF, depending on the setting of SP 5-181-001 (Tray 1) or -005 (Tray 2).

 $^{^*}$ 4: The machine detects either B5 LEF or 10.5" x 7.25" LEF, depending on the setting of SP 5-181-004 (Tray 1) or -008 (Tray 2)..

North America	Europe/Asia	3	2	1	0
11" x 17" SEF*1	A3 SEF*1	1	1	1	0
(11" x 8.5" LEF)	(A4 LEF)	'	•	'	0
11" x 17" SEF*1	A3 SEF*1	1	1	0	0
(11" x 8.5" LEF)	(A4 LEF)	'	•	0	0
8.5" x 11" SEF*1	A4 SEF* 1	1	1	0	1
(8.5" x 11" SEF*2)	(A5 LEF)	'	•	0	
8.5" x 11" SEF*1	A4 SEF* 1	1	0	0	1
(8.5" x 11" SEF*2)	(B5 LEF)	'			'
5.5" x 8.5" SEF	A5 SEF	1	0	1	1
5.5" x 8.5" SEF	A5 SEF	0	0	1	1
5.5" x 8.5" SEF	A6 SEF	0	1	1	1
5.5" x 8.5" SEF	A6 SEF	1	1	1	1



• *1: When the machine determines that the paper feed direction is "LEF", it considers that the paper size is bracketed size.

APS Original Size Detection

Original S	Length Sensor		Width Sensor		SP4-301 display		
Metric version	Inch version	L3	L2	L1	W1	W2	aispiay
A3	11" x 17"	0	0	0	0	0	00011111
B4	10" x 14"	0	0	0	0	Х	00011110
F4 8.5" x 13", 8.25" x 13", or 8" x 13" SP 5126 controls the size that is detected	8.5" x 14"	0	0	0	Х	Х	00011100
A4 LEF	8.5" x 11"	Х	Х	Х	0	0	00000011

B5 LEF	-	Х	Х	Х	0	Х	00000010
A4 SEF	11" x 8.5"	Х	0	0	Х	Х	00001100
B5 SEF	-	Х	Х	0	Х	Х	00000100
A5 LEF/ SEF	5.5" x 8.5", 8.5" x 5.5"	Х	Х	Х	Х	Х	00000000

Options

3000/2000-Sheet (Booklet) Finisher (D636/D637)

6140	Bit	Description	Read	ing
0140	DIT	Description	0	1
001	Entro	ince Sensor	No paper detected	Paper detected
002	Proo	f Exit Sensor	No paper detected	Paper detected
003	Proo	f Full Detection Sensor	Not Full	Full
004	Uppe	er Tray Exit Sensor	No paper detected*1	Paper detected* 1
005	Staple Exit Sensor		No paper detected	Paper detected
006	Shift Roller HP Sensor		Not HP	HP
007	Shift Exit Sensor		No paper detected	Paper detected
008	Exit (Guide Plate HP Sensor	Not HP	HP
009	Lowe	er Tray Height Sensor	No paper detected	Paper detected
010	Upp	er Tray Height Sensor	No paper detected	Paper detected
011	Upper Tray Full Sensor		Not Full	Full
012	Stack Roller HP Sensor		Not HP	HP
013	Jogger HP Sensor		Not HP	HP
014	Feed	Out Belt HP Sensor	HP	Not HP

3

.1.40	D.		Read	ling	
6140	Bit	Description	0	1	
015	Stapl	ing Tray Paper Sensor	No paper detected	Paper detected	
016	Corn	er Stapler HP Sensor	Not HP	HP	
017	Stapl	er Rotation HP Sensor	Not HP	HP	
018	Uppe	er Tray Limit SW	Not Limit	Limit	
019	Door	Switch	Closed	Open	
020	Corn	er Stapler Operation	Not HP	HP	
021	Stapl	e Detection	No staple detected	Staple detected	
022	Stapl	e Dip Detection	No staple detected	Staple detected	
023	Punc	h Movement HP Sensor	Not HP	HP	
024	Pape	r Position Slide HP Sensor	Not HP	HP	
025	Pape	r Position Sensor	No paper detected	Paper detected	
026	Punc	h Full Sensor	Not Full	Full	
027	Punc	h HP Sensor	Not HP	HP	
028	Punc	h DIP SW 1	See * 1		
029	Punc	h DIP SW 2	See * 1		
030	Stack	Junction Gate HP Sensor	Not HP	HP	
031	Stack	Present Sensor	No paper detected	Paper detected	
032	Clam	p Roller HP Sensor	Not HP	HP	
033	Fold	Entrance Sensor	No paper detected	Paper detected	
034	Botto	m Fence HP Sensor	Not HP	HP	
035	Fold	Cam HP Sensor	Not HP	HP	
036	Fold	Plate HP Sensor	Not HP	HP	
037	Fold	Unit Exit Sensor	No paper detected	Paper detected	

/1/0	D.		Read	ing		
6140	Bit	Description	0	1		
038	Lowe	er Tray Full Sensor: Front	No paper detected*2	Paper detected*2		
039	Lowe	er Tray Full Sensor: Rear	No paper detected*2	Paper detected*2		
040	Book	let Stapler 1: Operation	Not HP	HP		
041	Book	let Stapler 1: Staple In (Front)	No staple detected	Staple detected		
042	Booklet Stapler 1: Staple In (Leading Edge)		No staple detected	Staple detected		
043	Booklet Stapler 1: Operation (Rotation/ Rear)		Not HP	HP		
044	Book	let Stapler 1: Staple In (Rear)	No staple detected	Staple detected		
045	Booklet Stapler 1: Staple In (Leading Edge/Rear)		No staple detected	Staple detected		
046	Upper Tray Full Sensor: 3000		046 Upper Tray Full Sensor: 3000		Not Full	Full
047	Exit Jogger HP Sensor: Front		-	-		
048	Exit Jogger HP Sensor: Rear		-	-		
049	Exit J	ogger HP Sensor: Upper	-	-		

* 1: Combination of DIP SW 1 and SW 2

DIP SW 1	DIP SW 2	Punch Type
0	0	Japan
1	0	Europe
0	1	North America
1	1	North Europe

 $^{^*}$ 2: Please refer to "Lower Tray (D637 Only)" in the Service Manual for the "3000/2000 (Booklet) Finisher".

1000-Sheet Finisher (D588)

4100	D'i	D	Read	ling
6139	Bit	Description	0	1
001	Entra	nce Sensor	Paper detected	No paper detected
002		Exit Sensor er Tray Exit Sensor)	No paper detected	Paper detected
003		le Entrance Sensor bler Tray Entrance Sensor)	Paper detected	No paper detected
004		le Moving HP Sensor bler HP Sensor)	Not HP	HP
005	Jogger HP Sensor (Jogger Fence HP Sensor)		Not HP	HP
006	Stack	c Feed-out Belt HP Sensor	HP	Not HP
007	Stap	le Tray Paper Sensor	No paper detected	Paper detected
008		le Rotation Sensor ble Rotation HP Sensor)	Not HP	HP
009	Stap	e Sensor	Staple detected	No staple detected
010	Stap	le READY Detection	Staple detected	No staple detected
011		Guide Plate HP Guide Plate HP Sensor)	Not HP	HP
012	Shift	HP Sensor	Not HP	HP
013		r Sensor k Height Sensor)	No output tray detected	Output tray detected
014		Lower Sensor er Tray Lower Limit Sensor)	Lower limit	Not lower limit
015		f Full Sensor er Limit Sensor)	Not full	Full

Output Check

Copier

5804	Output Check				
001	Exit Motor: 350				
002	Exit Motor: 175				
003	Exit Motor: 230	David and a sistem of the sist			
004	Exit Motor: 180	Paper exit motor (Mainframe)			
005	Exit Motor: 154				
006	Exit Motor: 90				
007	Feed Motor: 300				
008	Feed Motor: 255				
009	Feed Motor: 230				
010	Feed Motor: 215	Paper feed motor (Mainframe)			
011	Feed Motor: 180				
012	Feed Motor: 154				
013	Feed Motor: 90				
014	Bank: Feed Motor: 300				
015	Bank: Feed Motor: 255				
016	Bank: Feed Motor: 230				
017	Bank: Feed Motor: 215	Paper feed motor (Optional paper feed unit)			
018					
019	Bank: Feed Motor: 154				
020	Bank: Feed Motor: 90				

3

5804	Output Check	
021	LCT: Feed Motor: 300	
022	LCT: Feed Motor: 255	
023	LCT: Feed Motor: 230	
024	LCT: Feed Motor: 215	Paper feed motor (Optional LCT)
025	LCT: Feed Motor: 180	
026	LCT: Feed Motor: 154	
027	LCT: Feed Motor: 90	
028	Paper Feed Clutch 1	D
029	Paper Feed Clutch 2	Paper feed clutch 1/2 (Mainframe)
030	Bank: Paper Feed Clutch 3	Paper feed clutch 3/4 (Optional paper
031	Bank: Paper Feed Clutch 4	feed unit)
032	LCT: Paper Feed Clutch	Paper feed clutch (Optional LCT)
033	Pick-up Solenoid 1	Dialous Salamaid 1 /2 /Adminfanna)
034	Pick-up Solenoid 2	Pick-up Solenoid 1/2 (Mainframe)
035	Bank: Pick-up Solenoid 3	Pick-up Solenoid 3/4 (Optional paper
036	Bank: Pick-up Solenoid 4	feed unit)
037	LCT: Pick-up Solenoid	Pick-up Solenoid (LCT)
038	Tray Lift Motor 1: Up	
039	Tray Lift Motor 1: Down	
040	Tray Lift Motor 2: Up	-
041	Tray Lift Motor 2: Down	
042	Paper Tray Lock Solenoid	Not used
043	Bank: Paper Tray Lock Solenoid	Tray lock solenoid (Optional paper feed unit)

5804	Output Check	
044	Registration Motor: 230	
045	Registration Motor: 180	
046	Registration Motor: 154	1 -
047	Registration Motor: 90	
048	Exit: Junction Gate Solenoid	Junction gate 1 solenoid
049	Duplex: Inverter Gate Solenoid	Not used
050	Duplex Inverter Motor: Fwd: 230	
051	Duplex Inverter Motor: Fwd: 180	
052	Duplex Inverter Motor: Fwd: 154	
053	Duplex Inverter Motor: Fwd: 90	
054	Duplex Inverter Motor: Rev: 230	-
055	Duplex Inverter Motor: Rev: 180	
056	Duplex Inverter Motor: Rev: 154	
057	Duplex Inverter Motor: Rev: 90	
058	Duplex/By-pass Motor: Fwd: 230	
059	Duplex/By-pass Motor: Fwd: 180	
060	Duplex/By-pass Motor: Fwd: 154	
061	Duplex/By-pass Motor: Fwd: 90	
062	Duplex/By-pass Motor: Rev: 230	-
063	Duplex/By-pass Motor: Rev: 180	
064	Duplex/By-pass Motor: Rev: 154	
065	Duplex/By-pass Motor: Rev: 90	
066	By-pass Feed Clutch	-
067	By-pass Pick-up Solenoid	-

5804	Output Check	
068	Bridge/Exit Tray: Drive Motor: 230	
069	Bridge/Exit Tray: Drive Motor: 180	
070	Bridge/Exit Tray: Drive Motor: 154	Drive motor (Bridge unit)
071	Bridge/Exit Tray: Drive Motor: 90	
072	Bridge/Exit Tray: Junction Gate Solenoid	Junction Gate Solenoid (Bridge unit)
073	Bridge/Exit Tray: Drive Motor: Reset	-
074	Bridge/Exit Tray: Drive Motor: Enable	-
075	Bridge: Cooling Fan Motor	Not used
076	Transfer Belt Contact Motor	-
077	OPC Motor: 230	
078	OPC Motor: 180	
079	OPC Motor: 154	Drum motor
080	OPC Motor: 90	
081	Transfer/Development Motor: 230	
082	Transfer/Development Motor: 180	
083	Transfer/Development Motor: 154	-
084	Transfer/Development Motor: 90	
085	Fusing Motor: 230	
086	Fusing Motor: 180	
087	Fusing Motor: 154	-
088	Fusing Motor: 90	
089	Development Puddle Motor	-
090	PTL Control	-
091	Fusing Fan Motor: High	Furing a lambfung i
092	Fusing Fan Motor: Low	Fusing exhaust fan motor

5804	Output Check	
093	Exhaust Fan Motor: High	Exhaust fan motor
094	Exhaust Fan Motor: Low	Exhausi ian moior
095	Duct Fan Motor	Cooling fan motor
096	Exit Fan Motor: High	D
097	Exit Fan Motor: Low	Paper exit cooling fan motor
098	PSU Fan Motor	-
100	Polygon Motor: 230	
101	Polygon Motor: 180	
102	Polygon Motor: 154	-
103	Polygon Motor: 90	
104	LD 1	
105	LD 2	-
106	Toner Bottle Motor: Fwd	Toner supply motor
107	Quenching Lamp	-
108	Charge Bias	-
109	Development Bias	-
110	Transfer Belt Voltage	-
111	ID Sensor LED	-
115	Cleaning Web Motor	Web motor
117	CTL Cooling FAN	Controller fan

1000-Sheet Finisher (D588)

6144	Output Check		
	Display	Description	

001	Upper Relay Motor	Upper Transport Motor
002	Lower Relay Motor	Lower Transport Motor
003	Exit Motor	-
004	Proof Junction Gate SOL	Tray Junction Gate Solenoid
005	Lower Tray Lift Motor	-
006	Jogger Fence Motor	-
007	Stapler Motor	-
008	Stapler Hammer	-
009	Stapler Junction Gate Solenoid	-
010	Positioning Roller Solenoid	-
011	Stack Feed-out Motor	-
012	Shift Motor	-
013	Exit Guide Plate Motor	-

3000 / 2000-Sheet (Booklet) Finisher (D636/D637)

6145	Output		
0143	Display	Description	
001	Entrance Motor	-	
002	Upper Transport Motor	-	
003	Lower Transport Motor	-	
004	Upper/Proof Tray Exit Motor	-	
005	Clamp Roller Retraction Motor	-	
006	Shift Roller Motor	-	
007	Exit Guide Plate Motor	-	
008	Upper Tray Lift Motor	-	

010 Jogger Fence Motor - 011 Feed Out Belt Motor - 012 Corner Stapler Movement Motor - 013 Corner Stapler Rotation Motor - 014 Corner Stapler - 015 Proof Junction Gate Solenoid -	
012 Corner Stapler Movement Motor - 013 Corner Stapler Rotation Motor - 014 Corner Stapler -	
O13 Corner Stapler Rotation Motor - O14 Corner Stapler -	
014 Corner Stapler -	
015 Proof Junction Gate Solenoid -	
016 Stapling Tray Junction Gate Solenoid -	
017 Stapling Edge Pressure Plate Solenoid -	
018 Positioning Roller Solenoid -	
019 Booklet Pressure Roller Solenoid -	
020 Stack Junction Gate Motor -	
O21 Fold Unit Bottom Fence Lift Motor -	
O22 Booklet Stapler: Front -	
O23 Booklet Stapler: Rear -	
O24 Fold Plate Motor -	
025 Fold Roller Motor -	
026 Positioning Roller Motor -	
027 Punch Drive Motor -	
028 Punch Movement Motor -	
029 Paper Position Sensor Slide Motor -	
030 Exit Jogger Motor: Front -	
031 Exit Jogger Motor: Rear -	
032 Exit Jogger Motor Release Motor -	

Test Pattern Printing

Printing Test pattern: SP2-109

Some of these test patterns are used for copy image adjustments but most are used primarily for design testing.



- Do not operate the machine until the test pattern is printed out completely. Otherwise, an SC occurs.
- 1. Enter the SP mode and select SP2-109-003.
- 2. Enter the number for the test pattern that you want to print and press [#].
- 3. When you want to select the single color of Magenta, Yellow or Cyan for printing a test pattern, select the color with SP2-109-005 (2: Magenta, 3: Yellow, 4: Cyan).
- 4. When you want to change the density of printing a test pattern, select the density with SP2-109-006 to -009 for each color.



- If you select "0" with SP2-109-006 to -009, the color to be adjusted to "0" does not come up on a test pattern.
- 5. When you are prompted to confirm your selection, touch "Yes" to select the test pattern for printing.
- 6. Touch "Copy Window" to open the copy window, then select the settings for the test print (paper size etc.).



- If you want to use black and white printing, touch "Black & White" on the LCD. If you want to use color printing, touch "Full Colour" on the LCD.
- 7. Press the "Start" key to start the test print.
- 8. After checking the test pattern, touch "SP Mode" on the LCD to return to the SP mode display.
- 9. Reset all settings to the default values.
- 10. Touch "Exit" twice to exit SP mode.

No.	Pattern	No.	Pattern
0	None	11	Independent Pattern (1-dot)
1	Vertial Line (1 dot)	12	Independent Pattern (2-dot)
2	Vertial Line (2dot)	13	Independent Pattern (4-dot)
3	Horizontal Line (1 dot)	14	Triming Area

4	Horizontal Line (2dot)	16	Tooth Check (Horizontal)
5	Grid Vertical Line	17	Band (Horizontal)
6	Grid Horizontal Line	18	Band (Vertical)
7	Grid Pattern Small	19	Checker Flag Pattern
8	Grid Pattern Large	20	Grayscale (Vertical Margin)
9	Argyle Pattern Small	21	Grayscale (Horizontal Margin)
10	Argyle Pattern Large	23	Full Dot Pattern

MEMO

MEMO

